

Solicitation No. W912PP23R0009

Date: December 2022



U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS

Combat Rescue Helicopter (CRH) Simulator Facility ADAL

Solicitation No. W912PP23R0009

**Kirtland AFB
New Mexico**

**Ready to Advertise
Volume 2—Specifications
Division 02 through Division 08**

PROJECT TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

00 10 00	SOLICITATION, OFFER, AND AWARD, SF 1442; PROPOSAL
00 20 00	SCHEDULE, CORPORATE, PARTNERSHIP, JOINT VENTURE CERTIFICATES
00 21 00	INSTRUCTIONS FOR PROCUREMENT
00 21 00	INSTRUCTIONS
00 22 16	SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS TO PROPOSERS
00 45 00	REPRESENTATIONS AND CERTIFICATIONS
00 50 00	CONTRACTING FORMS AND SUPPLEMENTS - Wage Determination
00 70 00	CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 01 01	SPECIAL CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS
01 11 00	SUMMARY OF WORK
01 14 00	WORK RESTRICTIONS
01 20 00	INTERFACE WITH OTHER WORK
01 22 00.00 10	PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES
01 30 00	ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS
01 32 01.00 10	PROJECT SCHEDULE
01 33 00	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
01 33 29	SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING
01 35 26	GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS
01 42 00	SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS
01 45 00.00 10	QUALITY CONTROL
01 45 00.15 10	RESIDENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CONTRACTOR MODE (RMS CM)
01 45 35	SPECIAL INSPECTIONS
01 50 00	TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
01 54 00	SECURITY
01 57 19	TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS
01 58 00	PROJECT IDENTIFICATION
01 62 35	RECYCLED / RECOVERED MATERIALS
01 72 80	TRANSFER AND ACCEPTANCE OF MILITARY REAL PROPERTY
01 74 19	CONSTRUCTION AND DEMOLITION WASTE MANAGEMENT
01 78 00	CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
01 78 23	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA
01 78 24.00 10	FACILITY DATA REQUIREMENTS
01 91 00.15	TOTAL BUILDING COMMISSIONING

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

02 41 00	DEMOLITION
02 82 00	ASBESTOS REMEDIATION
02 83 00	LEAD REMEDIATION

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

03 30 00	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
----------	------------------------

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

04 20 00	UNIT MASONRY
----------	--------------

DIVISION 05 - METALS

05 05 23.16	STRUCTURAL WELDING
-------------	--------------------

05 12 00	STRUCTURAL STEEL
05 21 00	STEEL JOIST FRAMING
05 30 00	STEEL DECKS
05 40 00	COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING
05 50 13	MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS
05 51 33	METAL LADDERS
05 52 00	METAL RAILINGS
05 72 00	DECORATIVE METAL SPECIALTIES

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

06 10 00	ROUGH CARPENTRY
06 41 16.00 10	PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS
06 61 16	SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 05 23	PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS
07 14 00	FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING
07 21 13	BOARD AND BLOCK INSULATION
07 21 16	MINERAL FIBER BLANKET INSULATION
07 22 00	ROOF AND DECK INSULATION
07 27 10.00 10	BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM
07 27 19.01	SELF-ADHERING AIR BARRIERS
07 27 26	FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS
07 60 00	FLASHING AND SHEET METAL
07 61 15.00 20	ALUMINUM STANDING SEAM ROOFING
07 84 00	FIRESTOPPING
07 92 00	JOINT SEALANTS

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

08 11 13	STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES
08 11 16	ALUMINUM DOORS AND FRAMES
08 14 00	WOOD DOORS
08 31 00	ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS
08 33 23	OVERHEAD COILING DOORS
08 34 01	FORCED ENTRY RESISTANT COMPONENTS
08 34 73	SOUND CONTROL DOOR ASSEMBLIES
08 41 13	ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS
08 71 00	DOOR HARDWARE
08 81 00	GLAZING
08 91 00	METAL WALL LOUVERS

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

09 22 00	SUPPORTS FOR PLASTER AND GYPSUM BOARD
09 24 23	CEMENT STUCCO
09 29 00	GYPSUM BOARD
09 30 10	PORCELAIN TILING
09 51 00	ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS
09 54 26	WOOD PANEL CEILINGS
09 62 38	STATIC-CONTROL FLOORING
09 65 00	RESILIENT FLOORING
09 68 00	CARPETING
09 69 13	RIGID GRID ACCESS FLOORING
09 90 00	PAINTS AND COATINGS

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

10 11 00	VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS
10 14 00.10	EXTERIOR SIGNAGE
10 14 00.20	INTERIOR SIGNAGE
10 21 13	TOILET COMPARTMENTS
10 22 39	FOLDING PANEL PARTITIONS
10 26 00	WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION
10 28 13	TOILET ACCESSORIES
10 56 13	STEEL SHELVING

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

12 24 13	ROLLER WINDOW SHADES
12 48 13	ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES

DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION

21 13 13.00 10	WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEM, FIRE PROTECTION
21 22 00.00 40	CLEAN AGENT FIRE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

22 00 00	PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE
22 31 00	WATER SOFTENERS, CATION-EXCHANGE (SODIUM CYCLE)

DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)

23 00 00	AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS
23 05 15	COMMON PIPING FOR HVAC
23 05 48.19	SEISMIC BRACING FOR HVAC
23 05 93	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
23 07 00	THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS
23 09 00	INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC
23 09 13	INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL DEVICES FOR HVAC
23 09 23.02	BACNET DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC AND OTHER BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS
23 11 25	FACILITY GAS PIPING
23 23 00	REFRIGERANT PIPING
23 25 00	CHEMICAL TREATMENT OF WATER FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS
23 52 46.00 20	LOW PRESSURE WATER HEATING BOILERS (OVER 800,000 BTU/HR OUTPUT)
23 64 10	WATER CHILLERS, VAPOR COMPRESSION TYPE
23 64 26	CHILLED, CHILLED-HOT, AND CONDENSER WATER PIPING SYSTEMS
23 81 23.00 20	COMPUTER ROOM AIR CONDITIONING UNITS

DIVISION 25 - INTEGRATED AUTOMATION

25 05 11.21	CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS FIRE AND LIFE SAFETY
25 05 11.23 01	CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS UTILITY MONITORING CONTROL SYSTEM (UMCS) TO INCLUDE HVAC
25 05 11.26 01	CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS UTILITY CONTROL SYSTEMS INCLUDING ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION AND UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (UPS)
25 05 11.26 02	CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS BUILDING CONTROL SYSTEMS INCLUDING ELECTRICAL AND LIGHTING CONTROLS

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

26 20 00	INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM
26 28 01.00 10	COORDINATED POWER SYSTEM PROTECTION
26 29 23	VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE SYSTEMS UNDER 600 VOLTS
26 41 00	LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM
26 51 00	INTERIOR LIGHTING
26 56 00	EXTERIOR LIGHTING

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

27 10 00	BUILDING TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABLING SYSTEM
----------	--

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

28 08 10	ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE TESTING
28 10 05	ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEMS (ESS)
28 31 76	INTERIOR FIRE ALARM AND MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

31 00 00	EARTHWORK
31 05 19	GEOTEXTILE
31 11 00	CLEARING AND GRUBBING

DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

32 01 19	FIELD MOLDED SEALANTS FOR SEALING JOINTS IN RIGID PAVEMENTS
32 05 33	LANDSCAPE ESTABLISHMENT
32 11 20	BASE COURSE FOR RIGID PAVING
32 11 23	AGGREGATE BASE COURSES
32 12 13	BITUMINOUS TACK AND PRIME COATS
32 12 16	HOT-MIX ASPHALT (HMA) FOR ROADS
32 13 13.06	PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT FOR ROADS AND SITE FACILITIES
32 13 73	COMPRESSION JOINT SEALS FOR CONCRETE PAVEMENTS
32 16 19	CONCRETE CURBS, GUTTERS AND SIDEWALKS
32 17 23	PAVEMENT MARKINGS
32 31 13	CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES
32 93 00	EXTERIOR PLANTS

DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES

33 11 00	WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING
33 11 23	NATURAL GAS AND LIQUID PETROLEUM PIPING
33 30 00	SANITARY SEWERAGE
33 40 00	STORM DRAINAGE UTILITIES
33 71 02	UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION
33 82 00	TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTSIDE PLANT (OSP)

DIVISION 41 - MATERIAL PROCESSING AND HANDLING EQUIPMENT

41 22 13.14	BRIDGE CRANES, OVERHEAD ELECTRIC, TOP RUNNING
-------------	---

-- End of Project Table of Contents --

SECTION 02 41 00

DEMOLITION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR-CONDITIONING, HEATING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (AHRI)

AHRI Guideline K (2009) Guideline for Containers for Recovered Non-Flammable Fluorocarbon Refrigerants

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS (AASHTO)

AASHTO M 145 (1991; R 2012) Standard Specification for Classification of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures for Highway Construction Purposes

AASHTO T 180 (2017) Standard Method of Test for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm (18-in.) Drop

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY PROFESSIONALS (ASSP)

ASSP A10.6 (2006) Safety & Health Program Requirements for Demolition Operations - American National Standard for Construction and Demolition Operations

CARPET AND RUG INSTITUTE (CRI)

CRI 104 (2015) Carpet Installation Standard for Commercial Carpet

CRI 105 (2015) Carpet Installation Standard for Residential Carpet

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual

U.S. DEFENSE LOGISTICS AGENCY (DLA)

DLA 4145.25 (Jun 2000; Reaffirmed Oct 2010) Storage and Handling of Liquefied and Gaseous Compressed Gases and Their Full and Empty Cylinders

<http://www.aviation.dla.mil/UserWeb/aviationengineerir>

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DOD 4000.25-1-M

(2006) MILSTRIP - Military Standard
Requisitioning and Issue Procedures

MIL-STD-129

(2014; Rev R; Change 1 2018; Change 2
2019) Military Marking for Shipment and
Storage

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 61

National Emission Standards for Hazardous
Air Pollutants

40 CFR 82

Protection of Stratospheric Ozone

49 CFR 173.301

Shipment of Compressed Gases in Cylinders
and Spherical Pressure Vessels

1.2 PROJECT DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 Definitions

1.2.1.1 Demolition

Demolition is the process of wrecking or taking out any load-supporting structural member of a facility together with any related handling and disposal operations.

1.2.1.2 Demolition Plan

Demolition Plan is the planned steps and processes for managing demolition activities and identifying the required sequencing activities and disposal mechanisms.

1.2.2 Demolition Plan

Prepare a [Demolition Plan](#) and submit proposed salvage, demolition, and removal procedures for approval before work is started. Include in the plan procedures for careful removal and disposition of materials specified to be salvaged, coordination with other work in progress, a disconnection schedule of utility services, a detailed description of methods and equipment to be used for each operation and of the sequence of operations. [Identify components and materials to be salvaged for reuse or recycling with reference to paragraph Existing Facilities to be Removed.](#) [Append tracking forms for all removed materials indicating type, quantities, condition, destination, and end use.](#) Coordinate with Waste Management Plan in accordance with Section [01 74 19 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL](#). Include statements affirming Contractor inspection of the existing roof deck and its suitability to perform as a safe working platform or if inspection reveals a safety hazard to workers, state provisions for securing the safety of the workers throughout the performance of the work. Provide procedures for safe conduct of the work in accordance with [EM 385-1-1](#). Plan shall be approved by Contracting Officer prior to work beginning.

1.2.3 General Requirements

Do not begin demolition until authorization is received from the Contracting Officer. The work of this section is to be performed in a manner that maximizes the value derived from the salvage and recycling of materials. Remove rubbish and debris from the project site; do not allow accumulations inside or outside the buildings. The work includes demolition, salvage of identified items and materials, and removal of resulting rubbish and debris. Remove rubbish and debris from Government property daily, unless otherwise directed. Store materials that cannot be removed daily in areas specified by the Contracting Officer. In the interest of occupational safety and health, perform the work in accordance with EM 385-1-1, Section 23, Demolition, and other applicable Sections.

1.3 ITEMS TO REMAIN IN PLACE

Take necessary precautions to avoid damage to existing items to remain in place, to be reused, or to remain the property of the Government. Repair or replace damaged items as approved by the Contracting Officer. Coordinate the work of this section with all other work indicated. Construct and maintain shoring, bracing, and supports as required. Ensure that structural elements are not overloaded. Increase structural supports or add new supports as may be required as a result of any cutting, removal, or demolition work performed under this contract. Do not overload pavements to remain. Provide new supports and reinforcement for existing construction weakened by demolition, or removal work. Repairs, reinforcement, or structural replacement require approval by the Contracting Officer prior to performing such work.

1.3.1 Existing Construction Limits and Protection

Do not disturb existing construction beyond the extent indicated or necessary for installation of new construction. Provide temporary shoring and bracing for support of building components to prevent settlement or other movement. Provide protective measures to control accumulation and migration of dust and dirt in all work areas. Remove snow, dust, dirt, and debris from work areas daily.

1.3.2 Weather Protection

For portions of the building to remain, protect building interior and materials and equipment from the weather at all times. Where removal of existing roofing is necessary to accomplish work, have materials and workmen ready to provide adequate and temporary covering of exposed areas.

1.3.3 Trees

Protect trees within the project site which might be damaged during demolition, and which are indicated to be left in place, by a 6 foot high fence. Erect and secure fence a minimum of 5 feet from the trunk of individual trees or follow the outer perimeter of branches or clumps of trees. Replace any tree designated to remain that is damaged during the work under this contract with like-kind or as approved by the Contracting Officer.

1.3.4 Utility Service

Maintain existing utilities indicated to stay in service and protect against damage during demolition operations. Prior to start of work,

utilities serving each area of alteration or removal will be shut off by the Government and disconnected and sealed by the Contractor.

1.3.5 Facilities

Protect electrical and mechanical services and utilities. Where removal of existing utilities and pavement is specified or indicated, provide approved barricades, temporary covering of exposed areas, and temporary services or connections for electrical and mechanical utilities. Floors, roofs, walls, columns, pilasters, and other structural components that are designed and constructed to stand without lateral support or shoring, and are determined to be in stable condition, must remain standing without additional bracing, shoring, or lateral support until demolished, unless directed otherwise by the Contracting Officer. Ensure that no elements determined to be unstable are left unsupported and place and secure bracing, shoring, or lateral supports as may be required as a result of any cutting, removal, or demolition work performed under this contract.

1.4 BURNING

The use of burning at the project site for the disposal of refuse and debris will not be permitted.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Demolition Plan; G, S

Existing Conditions; S

SD-07 Certificates

Notification; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Receipts; S

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Submit timely notification of demolition and renovation projects to Federal, State, regional, and local authorities in accordance with 40 CFR 61, Subpart M. Notify the Regional Office of the United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA), State's environmental protection agency, and the Contracting Officer in writing 10 working days prior to the commencement of work in accordance with 40 CFR 61, Subpart M. Comply with federal, state, and local hauling and disposal regulations. In addition to the requirements of the "Contract Clauses," conform to the safety requirements contained in ASSP A10.6. Comply with the Environmental Protection Agency requirements specified. Use of explosives will not be permitted.

1.6.1 Dust and Debris Control

Prevent the spread of dust and debris to occupied portions of the building and avoid the creation of a nuisance or hazard in the surrounding area. Do not use water if it results in hazardous or objectionable conditions such as, but not limited to, ice, flooding, or pollution. Vacuum and dust the work area daily. Sweep pavements as often as necessary to control the spread of debris that may result in foreign object damage potential to aircraft.

1.7 PROTECTION

1.7.1 Traffic Control Signs

Where pedestrian and driver safety is endangered in the area of removal work, use traffic barricades with flashing lights. Notify the Contracting Officer prior to beginning such work.

1.7.2 Protection of Personnel

Before, during and after the demolition work continuously evaluate the condition of the structure being demolished and take immediate action to protect all personnel working in and around the project site. No area, section, or component of floors, roofs, walls, columns, pilasters, or other structural element will be allowed to be left standing without sufficient bracing, shoring, or lateral support to prevent collapse or failure while workmen remove debris or perform other work in the immediate area.

1.8 RELOCATIONS

Perform the removal and reinstallation of relocated items as indicated with workmen skilled in the trades involved. Repair or replace items to be relocated which are damaged by the Contractor with new undamaged items as approved by the Contracting Officer.

1.9 EXISTING CONDITIONS

Before beginning any demolition work, survey the site and examine the drawings and specifications to determine the extent of the work. Record existing conditions in the presence of the Contracting Officer showing the condition of structures and other facilities adjacent to areas of alteration or removal. Photographs sized 4 inch will be acceptable as a record of existing conditions. Include in the record the elevation of the top of foundation walls, finish floor elevations, possible conflicting electrical conduits, plumbing lines, alarms systems, the location and extent of existing cracks and other damage and description of surface conditions that exist prior to before starting work. It is the Contractor's responsibility to verify and document all required outages which will be required during the course of work, and to note these outages on the record document. Submit survey results.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FILL MATERIAL

- a. Comply with excavating, backfilling, and compacting procedures for soils used as backfill material to fill basements, voids, depressions

or excavations resulting from demolition of structures.

- b. Fill material shall conform to the definition of satisfactory soil material as defined in [AASHTO M 145](#), Soil Classification Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5 and A-3. In addition, fill material shall be free from roots and other organic matter, trash, debris, frozen materials, and stones larger than [2 inches](#) in any dimension.
- c. Proposed fill material must be sampled and tested by an approved soil testing laboratory, as follows:

Soil classification	AASHTO M 145
Moisture-density relations	AASHTO T 180 , Method B or D

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXISTING FACILITIES TO BE REMOVED

Inspect and evaluate existing structures onsite for reuse. Existing construction scheduled to be removed for reuse shall be disassembled. Dismantled and removed materials are to be separated, set aside, and prepared as specified, and stored or delivered to a collection point for reuse, remanufacture, recycling, or other disposal, as specified. Materials shall be designated for reuse onsite whenever possible.

3.1.1 Structures

- a. Remove existing structures indicated to be removed, including foundations. Interior walls, other than retaining walls and partitions, shall be removed to top of concrete slab on ground. Break up basement slabs to permit drainage. Remove sidewalks, curbs, gutters and street light bases as indicated.
- b. Demolish structures in a systematic manner from the top of the structure to the ground. Complete demolition work above each tier or floor before the supporting members on the lower level are disturbed. Demolish concrete and masonry walls in small sections. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by means of derricks, platforms hoists, or other suitable methods as approved by the Contracting Officer.
- c. Locate demolition equipment throughout the structure and remove materials so as to not impose excessive loads to supporting walls, floors, or framing.
- d. Building, or the remaining portions thereof, not exceeding [80 feet](#) in height may be demolished by the mechanical method of demolition.

3.1.2 Utilities and Related Equipment

3.1.2.1 General Requirements

Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or used facilities, except when authorized in writing by the Contracting Officer. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied and used by the Government except when approved in writing and then only after temporary utility services have been approved and provided. Do not begin demolition

work until all utility disconnections have been made. Shut off and cap utilities for future use, as indicated.

3.1.2.2 Disconnecting Existing Utilities

Remove existing utilities, as indicated and terminate in a manner conforming to the nationally recognized code covering the specific utility and approved by the Contracting Officer. When utility lines are encountered but are not indicated on the drawings, notify the Contracting Officer prior to further work in that area. Remove meters and related equipment and deliver to a location on the station in accordance with instructions of the Contracting Officer.

3.1.3 Chain Link Fencing

Remove chain link fencing, gates and other related salvaged items scheduled for removal and transport to designated areas. Remove gates as whole units. Cut chain link fabric to 25 foot lengths and store in rolls off the ground.

3.1.4 Paving and Slabs

Remove sawcut concrete and asphaltic concrete paving and slabs including aggregate base as indicated to a depth of 6 inches below existing adjacent or new finish grade. Provide neat sawcuts at limits of pavement removal as indicated. Pavement and slabs designated to be recycled and utilized in this project shall be moved, ground and stored as directed by the Contracting Officer. Pavement and slabs not to be used in this project shall be removed from the Installation at Contractor's expense.

3.1.5 Roofing

Remove existing roof system and associated components in their entirety down to existing roof deck. Where built-up or single-ply roofing exists, remove to effect the connections with new flashing or roofing. Where gravel exists, remove gravel surfacing from existing roofing felts for a minimum distance of 18 inches back from the cut. Remove gravel without damaging felts. Salvage asphalt roofing materials. Cut existing felts, membrane, and insulation along straight lines. Remove roofing system and insulation without damaging the roof deck. Sequence work to minimize building exposure between demolition and new roof materials installation.

3.1.5.1 Temporary Roofing

Install temporary roofing and flashing as necessary to maintain a watertight condition throughout the course of the work. Remove temporary work prior to installation of permanent roof system materials unless approved otherwise by the Contracting Officer. The existing deck and support structure deterioration is unknown, such that ability to support foot traffic and construction loads is unknown. Make provisions for worker safety during demolition, and installation of new materials as described in paragraphs entitled "Statements" and "Regulatory and Safety Requirements."

3.1.5.2 Reroofing

When removing the existing roofing system from the roof deck, remove only as much roofing as can be recovered by the end of the work day, unless approved otherwise by the Contracting Officer. Do not attempt to open the

roof covering system in threatening weather. Reseal all openings prior to suspension of work the same day.

3.1.6 Masonry

Sawcut and remove masonry so as to prevent damage to surfaces to remain, to removed materials being salvaged and to facilitate the installation of new work. Where new masonry adjoins existing, the new work shall abut or tie into the existing construction as indicated and specified for the new work. Provide square, straight edges and corners where existing masonry adjoins new work and other locations. Masonry removed in whole blocks shall be salvaged and stored for reuse. Masonry removed in pieces shall be crushed for use as aggregate.

3.1.7 Concrete

Saw concrete along straight lines to a depth of a minimum 2 inch. Make each cut in walls perpendicular to the face and in alignment with the cut in the opposite face. Break out the remainder of the concrete provided that the broken area is concealed in the finished work, and the remaining concrete is sound. At locations where the broken face cannot be concealed, grind smooth or saw cut entirely through the concrete. Salvage removed concrete.

3.1.8 Structural Steel

Dismantle structural steel at field connections and in a manner that will prevent bending or damage. Salvage for reuse, recycle, or structural steel, steel joists, girders, angles, plates, columns and shapes. Do not use flame-cutting torches. Flame-cutting torches are only permitted when other methods of dismantling are not practical. Transport steel joists and girders as whole units and not dismantled. Transport structural steel shapes to a designated storage area, recycling facility, or an area as directed by the Contracting Officer. Stack structural steel according to size, type of member and length, and store off the ground, protected from the weather.

3.1.9 Miscellaneous Metal

Salvage shop-fabricated items such as access doors and frames, steel gratings, metal ladders, wire mesh partitions, metal railings, metal windows and similar items as whole units. Salvage light-gage and cold-formed metal framing, such as steel studs, steel trusses, metal gutters, roofing and siding, metal toilet partitions, toilet accessories and similar items. Scrap metal shall become the Contractor's property. Recycle scrap metal as part of demolition operation. Provide separate containers to collect scrap metal and transport to a scrap metal collection or recycling facility, in accordance with the Waste Management Plan.

3.1.10 Carpentry

Salvage for reuse or recycle lumber, millwork items, and finished boards, and sort by type and size. Chip or shred and recycle salvaged wood unfit for reuse, except stained, painted, or treated wood. Remove and salvage windows, doors, frames, and cabinets, and similar items as whole units, complete with trim and accessories. Do not remove hardware attached to units, except for door closers. Salvage hardware attached to units for reuse. Brace the open end of door frames to prevent damage.

3.1.11 Carpet

Remove existing carpet for reclamation in accordance with manufacturer recommendations and as follows. Remove used carpet in large pieces, roll tightly, and pack neatly in a container. Remove adhesive according to recommendations of the Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI). Adhesive removal solvents shall comply with [CRI 104](#)/[CRI 105](#). Recycle removed carpet cushion.

3.1.12 Acoustic Ceiling Tile

Remove, neatly stack, and recycle acoustic ceiling tiles. Recycling may be available with manufacturer. Otherwise, priority shall be given to a local recycling organization. Recycling is not required if the tiles contain or may have been exposed to asbestos material.

3.1.13 Patching

Where removals leave holes and damaged surfaces exposed in the finished work, patch and repair these holes and damaged surfaces to match adjacent finished surfaces, using on-site materials when available. Where new work is to be applied to existing surfaces, perform removals and patching in a manner to produce surfaces suitable for receiving new work. Finished surfaces of patched area shall be flush with the adjacent existing surface and shall match the existing adjacent surface as closely as possible as to texture and finish. Patching shall be as specified and indicated, and shall include:

- a. Concrete and Masonry: Completely fill holes and depressions, caused by previous physical damage or left as a result of removals in existing masonry walls to remain, with an approved masonry patching material, applied in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions.
- b. Where existing partitions have been removed leaving damaged or missing resilient tile flooring, patch to match the existing floor tile.
- c. Patch acoustic lay-in ceiling where partitions have been removed. The transition between the different ceiling heights shall be affected by continuing the higher ceiling level over to the first runner on the lower ceiling and closing the vertical opening with a painted sheet metal strip.

3.1.14 Air Conditioning Equipment

If removal or abandonment of equipment is required, remove air conditioning, refrigeration, and other equipment containing refrigerants without releasing chlorofluorocarbon refrigerants to the atmosphere in accordance with the Clean Air Act Amendment of 1990. Recover all refrigerants prior to removing or abandoning air conditioning, refrigeration, and other equipment containing refrigerants and dispose of in accordance with the paragraph entitled "Disposal of Ozone Depleting Substance (ODS)." Turn in salvaged Class I ODS refrigerants as specified in paragraph, "Salvaged Materials and Equipment."

3.1.15 Cylinders and Canisters

Remove all fire suppression system cylinders and canisters and dispose of in accordance with the paragraph entitled "Disposal of Ozone Depleting

Substance (ODS)."

3.1.16 Locksets on Swinging Doors

Remove all locksets from all swinging doors indicated to be removed and disposed of. Deliver the locksets and related items to a designated location for receipt by the Contracting Officer after removal.

3.1.17 Mechanical Equipment and Fixtures

Disconnect mechanical hardware at the nearest connection to existing services to remain, unless otherwise noted. Disconnect mechanical equipment and fixtures at fittings. Remove service valves attached to the unit. Salvage each item of equipment and fixtures as a whole unit; listed, indexed, tagged, and stored. Salvage each unit with its normal operating auxiliary equipment. Transport salvaged equipment and fixtures, including motors and machines, to a designated on station storage area as directed by the Contracting Officer. Do not remove equipment until approved. Do not offer low-efficiency equipment for reuse; provide to recycling service for disassembly and recycling of parts.

3.1.17.1 Preparation for Storage

Remove water, dirt, dust, and foreign matter from units; tanks, piping and fixtures shall be drained; interiors, if previously used to store flammable, explosive, or other dangerous liquids, shall be steam cleaned. Seal openings with caps, plates, or plugs. Secure motors attached by flexible connections to the unit. Change lubricating systems with the proper oil or grease.

3.1.17.2 Piping

Disconnect piping at unions, flanges and valves, and fittings as required to reduce the pipe into straight lengths for practical storage. Store salvaged piping according to size and type. If the piping that remains can become pressurized due to upstream valve failure, end caps, blind flanges, or other types of plugs or fittings with a pressure gage and bleed valve shall be attached to the open end of the pipe to ensure positive leak control. Carefully dismantle piping that previously contained gas, gasoline, oil, or other dangerous fluids, with precautions taken to prevent injury to persons and property. Store piping outdoors until all fumes and residues are removed. Box prefabricated supports, hangers, plates, valves, and specialty items according to size and type. Wrap sprinkler heads individually in plastic bags before boxing. Classify piping not designated for salvage, or not reusable, as scrap metal.

3.1.17.3 Ducts

Classify removed duct work as scrap metal.

3.1.17.4 Fixtures, Motors and Machines

Remove and salvage fixtures, motors and machines associated with plumbing, heating, air conditioning, refrigeration, and other mechanical system installations. Salvage, box and store auxiliary units and accessories with the main motor and machines. Tag salvaged items for identification, storage, and protection from damage. Classify non-porcelain broken, damaged, or otherwise unserviceable units and not caused to be broken, damaged, or otherwise unserviceable as debris to be disposed of by the

Contractor. Salvage and crush porcelain plumbing fixtures unsuitable for reuse.

3.1.18 Electrical Equipment and Fixtures

Provide demolition according to sustainability requirements. Salvage or recycle motors, motor controllers, and operating and control equipment components that are attached to the driven equipment. Salvage or recycle wiring systems and components. Box loose items and tag for identification. Disconnect primary, secondary, control, communication, and signal circuits at the point of attachment to their distribution system.

3.1.18.1 Fixtures

Remove, recycle, or salvage electrical fixtures. Salvage unprotected glassware from the fixture and salvage separately. Salvage incandescent, mercury-vapor, and fluorescent lamps and fluorescent ballasts manufactured prior to 1978, boxed and tagged for identification, and protected from breakage.

3.1.18.2 Electrical Devices

Remove and recycle components or salvage switches, switchgear, transformers, conductors including wire and nonmetallic sheathed and flexible armored cable, regulators, meters, instruments, plates, circuit breakers, panelboards, outlet boxes, and similar items. Box and tag these items for identification according to type and size.

3.1.18.3 Wiring Ducts or Troughs

Remove and recycle or salvage wiring ducts or troughs. Dismantle plug-in ducts and wiring troughs into unit lengths. Remove plug-in or disconnecting devices from the busway and store separately.

3.1.18.4 Conduit and Miscellaneous Items

Remove and recycle or salvage conduit except where embedded in concrete or masonry. Consider corroded, bent, or damaged conduit as scrap metal. Sort straight and undamaged lengths of conduit according to size and type. Classify supports, knobs, tubes, cleats, and straps as debris to be removed and disposed.

3.1.19 Elevators and Hoists

The facilities do not contain elevators or hoists.

3.1.20 Items With Unique/Regulated Disposal Requirements

Remove and dispose of items with unique or regulated disposal requirements in the manner dictated by law or in the most environmentally responsible manner.

3.2 CONCURRENT EARTH-MOVING OPERATIONS

Do not begin excavation, filling, and other earth-moving operations that are sequential to demolition work in areas occupied by structures to be demolished until all demolition in the area has been completed and debris removed. Fill holes, open basements and other hazardous openings.

3.3 DISPOSITION OF MATERIAL

3.3.1 Title to Materials

Except for salvaged items specified in related Sections, and for materials or equipment scheduled for salvage, all materials and equipment removed and not reused or salvaged, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from Government property. Title to materials resulting from demolition, and materials and equipment to be removed, is vested in the Contractor upon approval by the Contracting Officer of the Contractor's demolition, and removal procedures, and authorization by the Contracting Officer to begin demolition. The Government will not be responsible for the condition or loss of, or damage to, such property after contract award. Showing for sale or selling materials and equipment on site is prohibited.

3.3.2 Reuse of Materials and Equipment

Remove and store materials and equipment indicated to be reused or relocated to prevent damage, and reinstall as the work progresses. Coordinate the re-use of materials and equipment with the re-use requirements in accordance with Section 01 74 19 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL. Capture re-use of materials in the diversion calculations for the project.

3.3.3 Salvaged Materials and Equipment

Remove materials and equipment that are indicated and specified to be removed by the Contractor and that are to remain the property of the Government, and deliver to a storage site.

- a. Salvage items and material to the maximum extent possible.
- b. Store all materials salvaged for the Contractor as approved by the Contracting Officer and remove from Government property before completion of the contract. Coordinate the salvaged materials with tracking requirements in accordance with Section 01 74 19 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL. Capture salvaged materials in the diversion calculations for the project.
- c. Remove salvaged items to remain the property of the Government in a manner to prevent damage, and packed or crated to protect the items from damage while in storage or during shipment. Items damaged during removal or storage must be repaired or replaced to match existing items. Properly identify the contents of containers. Deliver the following items reserved as property of the Government to the areas designated by the Contracting Officer.
- d. Remove the following items reserved as property of the using service prior to commencement of work under this contract: furniture, furniture systems, and equipment.
- e. Remove historical items in a manner to prevent damage. Deliver the following historical items to the Government for disposition: Corner stones, contents of corner stones, and document boxes wherever located on the site.

3.3.4 Disposal of Ozone Depleting Substance (ODS)

Class I and Class II ODS are defined in Section, 602(a) and (b), of The Clean Air Act. Prevent discharge of Class I and Class II ODS to the atmosphere. Place recovered ODS in cylinders meeting [AHRI Guideline K](#) suitable for the type ODS (filled to no more than 80 percent capacity) and provide appropriate labeling. Recovered ODS shall be put back into the existing equipment turned over to the Contracting Officer removed from Government property and disposed of in accordance with [40 CFR 82](#). Products, equipment and appliances containing ODS in a sealed, self-contained system (e.g. residential refrigerators and window air conditioners) shall be disposed of in accordance with [40 CFR 82](#). Submit [Receipts](#) or bills of lading, as specified. Submit a shipping receipt or bill of lading for all containers of ozone depleting substance (ODS) shipped to the Defense Depot, Richmond, Virginia.

3.3.4.1 Special Instructions

No more than one type of ODS is permitted in each container. A warning/hazardous label shall be applied to the containers in accordance with Department of Transportation regulations. All cylinders including but not limited to fire extinguishers, spheres, or canisters containing an ODS shall have a tag with the following information:

- a. Activity name and unit identification code
- b. Activity point of contact and phone number
- c. Type of ODS and pounds of ODS contained
- d. Date of shipment
- e. National stock number (for information, call (804) 279-4525).

3.3.4.2 Fire Suppression Containers

Deactivate fire suppression system cylinders and canisters with electrical charges or initiators prior to shipment. Also, safety caps must be used to cover exposed actuation mechanisms and discharge ports on these special cylinders.

3.3.5 Transportation Guidance

Ship all ODS containers in accordance with [MIL-STD-129](#), [DLA 4145.25](#) (also referenced one of the following: Army Regulation 700-68, Naval Supply Instruction 4440.128C, Marine Corps Order 10330.2C, and Air Force Regulation 67-12), [49 CFR 173.301](#), and [DOD 4000.25-1-M](#).

3.3.6 Unsalvageable and Non-Recyclable Material

Dispose of unsalvageable and non-recyclable noncombustible material in the disposal area located off site.

3.4 CLEANUP

Remove debris and rubbish from basement and similar excavations. Remove and transport the debris in a manner that prevents spillage on streets or adjacent areas. Apply local regulations regarding hauling and disposal.

3.5 DISPOSAL OF REMOVED MATERIALS

3.5.1 Regulation of Removed Materials

Dispose of debris, rubbish, scrap, and other nonsalvageable materials resulting from removal operations with all applicable federal, state and local regulations as contractually specified in the Waste Management Plan. Storage of removed materials on the project site is prohibited.

3.5.2 Burning on Government Property

Burning of materials removed from demolished structures will not be permitted on Government property.

3.5.3 Removal from Government Property

Transport waste materials removed from demolished structures, except waste soil, from Government property for legal disposal. Dispose of waste soil as directed.

3.6 REUSE OF SALVAGED ITEMS

Recondition salvaged materials and equipment designated for reuse before installation. Replace items damaged during removal and salvage operations or restore them as necessary to usable condition.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 02 82 00

ASBESTOS REMEDIATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY PROFESSIONALS (ASSP)

ASSP Z9.2 (2018) Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Ventilation Systems

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C732 (2006; R 2012) Aging Effects of Artificial Weathering on Latex Sealants

ASTM D522/D522M (2014) Mandrel Bend Test of Attached Organic Coatings

ASTM D2794 (1993; R 2019) Standard Test Method for Resistance of Organic Coatings to the Effects of Rapid Deformation (Impact)

ASTM D4397 (2016) Standard Specification for Polyethylene Sheeting for Construction, Industrial, and Agricultural Applications

ASTM E84 (2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

ASTM E96/E96M (2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

ASTM E119 (2018c; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials

ASTM E736/E736M (2017) Standard Test Method for Cohesion/Adhesion of Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials Applied to Structural Members

ASTM E1368 (2014) Visual Inspection of Asbestos Abatement Projects

COMPRESSED GAS ASSOCIATION (CGA)

CGA G-7 (2014) Compressed Air for Human Respiration; 6th Edition

INTERNATIONAL SAFETY EQUIPMENT ASSOCIATION (ISEA)

ANSI/ISEA Z87.1 (2015) Occupational and Educational
Personal Eye and Face Protection Devices

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 701 (2019) Standard Methods of Fire Tests for
Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films

NATIONAL INSTITUTE FOR OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH (NIOSH)

NIOSH NMAM (2016; 5th Ed) NIOSH Manual of Analytical
Methods

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety and Health Requirements
Manual

U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA)

EPA 340/1-90/018 (1990) Asbestos/NESHAP Regulated Asbestos
Containing Materials Guidance

EPA 560/5-85-024 (1985) Guidance for Controlling
Asbestos-Containing Materials in Buildings
(Purple Book)

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.147 The Control of Hazardous Energy (Lock
Out/Tag Out)

29 CFR 1926.51 Sanitation

29 CFR 1926.59 Hazard Communication

29 CFR 1926.103 Respiratory Protection

29 CFR 1926.200 Accident Prevention Signs and Tags

29 CFR 1926.1101 Asbestos

40 CFR 61-SUBPART A General Provisions

40 CFR 61-SUBPART M National Emission Standard for Asbestos

40 CFR 763 Asbestos

42 CFR 84 Approval of Respiratory Protective Devices

49 CFR 107 Hazardous Materials Program Procedures

49 CFR 171 General Information, Regulations, and
Definitions

49 CFR 172 Hazardous Materials Table, Special

Provisions, Hazardous Materials
Communications, Emergency Response
Information, and Training Requirements

49 CFR 173

Shippers - General Requirements for
Shipments and Packagings

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 586

(2009; Reprint Dec 2017) UL Standard for
Safety High-Efficiency Particulate, Air
Filter Units

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 ACM

Asbestos Containing Materials.

1.2.2 Amended Water

Water containing a wetting agent or surfactant with a maximum surface
tension of 0.00042 psi.

1.2.3 Area Sampling

Sampling of asbestos fiber concentrations which approximates the
concentrations of asbestos in the theoretical breathing zone but is not
actually collected in the breathing zone of an employee.

1.2.4 Asbestos

The term asbestos includes chrysotile, amosite, crocidolite, tremolite
asbestos, anthophyllite asbestos, and actinolite asbestos and any of these
minerals that has been chemically treated or altered. Materials are
considered to contain asbestos if the asbestos content of the material is
determined to be at least one percent.

1.2.5 Asbestos Control Area

That area where asbestos removal operations are performed which is
isolated by physical boundaries which assist in the prevention of the
uncontrolled release of asbestos dust, fibers, or debris.

1.2.6 Asbestos Fibers

Those fibers having an aspect ratio of at least 3:1 and longer than 5
micrometers as determined by National Institute for Occupational Safety
and Health (NIOSH) Method 7400.

1.2.7 Asbestos Permissible Exposure Limit

0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter of air as an 8-hour time weighted average
measured in the breathing zone as defined by 29 CFR 1926.1101 or other
Federal legislation having legal jurisdiction for the protection of
workers health.

1.2.8 Authorized Person

Any person authorized by the Contractor and required by work duties to be present in the regulated areas.

1.2.9 Background

The ambient airborne asbestos concentration in an uncontaminated area as measured prior to any asbestos hazard abatement efforts. Background concentrations for other (contaminated) areas are measured in similar but asbestos free locations.

1.2.10 Competent Person (CP)

A person meeting the requirements for competent person as specified in 29 CFR 1926.1101 including a person capable of identifying existing asbestos hazards in the workplace and selecting the appropriate control strategy for asbestos exposure, who has the authority to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them, and is specifically trained in a training course which meet the criteria of EPA's Model Accreditation Plan (40 CFR 763) for project designer or supervisor, or its equivalent. The competent person must have a current asbestos contractors or supervisors license.

1.2.11 Contractor

The Contractor is that individual, or entity under contract to perform the herein listed work.

1.2.12 Disposal Bag

A 6 mil thick, leak-tight plastic bag, pre-labeled in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101, used for transporting asbestos waste from containment to disposal site.

1.2.13 Disturbance

Activities that disrupt the matrix of ACM, crumble or pulverize ACM, or generate visible debris from ACM. Disturbance includes cutting away small amounts of ACM, no greater than the amount which can be contained in one standard sized glovebag or waste bag, not larger than 60 inches in length and width in order to access a building component.

1.2.14 Encapsulation

The abatement of an asbestos hazard through the appropriate use of chemical encapsulants.

1.2.15 Encapsulants

Specific materials in various forms used to chemically or physically entrap asbestos fibers in various configurations to prevent these fibers from becoming airborne. There are four types of encapsulants as follows which must comply with performance requirements as specified herein.

- a. Removal Encapsulant (can be used as a wetting agent)
- b. Bridging Encapsulant (used to provide a tough, durable surface coating to asbestos containing material)

- c. Penetrating Encapsulant (used to penetrate the asbestos containing material encapsulating all asbestos fibers and preventing fiber release due to routine mechanical damage)
- d. Lock-Down Encapsulant (used to seal off or "lock-down" minute asbestos fibers left on surfaces from which asbestos containing material has been removed).

1.2.16 Friable Asbestos Material

A term defined in [40 CFR 61-SUBPART M](#) and [EPA 340/1-90/018](#) meaning any material which contains more than 1 percent asbestos, as determined using the method specified in [40 CFR 763](#), Polarized Light Microscopy (PLM), that when dry, can be crumbled, pulverized, or reduced to powder by hand pressure.

1.2.17 Glovebag Technique

Those asbestos removal and control techniques put forth in [29 CFR 1926.1101](#).

1.2.18 Government Consultant (GC)

That qualified person employed directly by the Government to monitor, sample, inspect the work or in some other way advise the Contracting Officer. The GC is normally a private consultant, but can be an employee of the Government.

1.2.19 HEPA Filter Equipment

High efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtered vacuum and exhaust ventilation equipment with a filter system capable of collecting and retaining asbestos fibers. Filters must retain 99.97 percent of particles 0.3 microns or larger as indicated in [UL 586](#).

1.2.20 Model Accreditation Plan (MAP)

USEPA training accreditation requirements for persons who work with asbestos as specified in [40 CFR 763](#).

1.2.21 Negative Pressure Enclosure (NPE)

That engineering control technique described as a negative pressure enclosure in [29 CFR 1926.1101](#).

1.2.22 NESHAP

National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants. The USEPA NESHAP regulation for asbestos is at [40 CFR 61-SUBPART M](#).

1.2.23 Nonfriable Asbestos Material

Material that contains asbestos in which the fibers have been immobilized by a bonding agent, coating, binder, or other material so that the asbestos is well bound and will not normally release asbestos fibers during any appropriate use, handling, storage or transportation. It is understood that asbestos fibers may be released under other conditions such as demolition, removal, or mishap.

1.2.24 Permissible Exposure Limits (PELs)

1.2.24.1 PEL-Time Weighted Average (TWA)

Concentration of asbestos not in excess of 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter of air (f/cc) as an 8-hour time weighted average (TWA).

1.2.24.2 PEL-Excursion Limit

An airborne concentration of asbestos not in excess of 1.0 f/cc of air as averaged over a sampling period of 30 minutes.

1.2.25 Personal Sampling

Air sampling which is performed to determine asbestos fiber concentrations within the breathing zone of a specific employee, as performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101.

1.2.26 Private Qualified Person (PQP)

That qualified person hired by the Contractor to perform the herein listed tasks.

1.2.27 Qualified Person (QP)

A Registered Architect, Professional Engineer, Certified Industrial Hygienist, consultant or other qualified person who has successfully completed training and is therefore accredited under a legitimate State Model Accreditation Plan as described in 40 CFR 763 as a Building Inspector, Contractor/Supervisor Abatement Worker, and Asbestos Project Designer; and has successfully completed the National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) 582 course "Sampling and Evaluating Airborne Asbestos Dust" or equivalent. The QP must be qualified to perform visual inspections as indicated in ASTM E1368. The QP must be appropriately licensed in the State of New Mexico.

1.2.28 TEM

Refers to Transmission Electron Microscopy.

1.2.29 Time Weighted Average (TWA)

The TWA is an 8-hour time weighted average airborne concentration of asbestos fibers.

1.2.30 Transite

A generic name for asbestos cement wallboard and pipe.

1.2.31 Wetting Agent

A chemical added to water to reduce the water's surface tension thereby increasing the water's ability to soak into the material to which it is applied. An equivalent wetting agent must have a surface tension of at most 0.00042 psi.

1.2.32 Worker

Individual (not designated as the Competent Person or a supervisor) who

performs asbestos work and has completed asbestos worker training required by 29 CFR 1926.1101, to include EPA Model Accreditation Plan (MAP) "Worker" training; accreditation, if required by the OSHA Class of work to be performed or by the state where the work is to be performed. The worker must be appropriately licensed.

1.3 REQUIREMENTS

1.3.1 Description of Work

The work covered by this section includes the handling and control of asbestos containing materials and describes some of the resultant procedures and equipment required to protect workers, the environment and occupants of the building or area, or both, from contact with airborne asbestos fibers. The work also includes the disposal of any asbestos containing materials generated by the work. More specific operational procedures must be outlined in the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan called for elsewhere in this specification. The asbestos work includes the demolition and removal of asbestos-containing materials located in Building 954 and identified in 19-105 Kirtland Building 954 Report, and governed by 40 CFR 763. Under normal conditions non-friable or chemically bound materials containing asbestos would not be considered hazardous; however, this material may release airborne asbestos fibers during demolition and removal and therefore must be handled in accordance with the removal and disposal procedures as specified herein. Provide negative pressure enclosure techniques as outlined in this specification. The buildings will be evacuated during the asbestos abatement work. A competent person must supervise asbestos removal work as specified herein.

1.3.2 Unexpected Discovery of Asbestos

Notify the Contracting Officer if any previously untested building components suspected to contain asbestos are impacted by the work.

1.3.3 Medical Requirements

Provide medical requirements including but not limited to medical surveillance and medical record keeping as listed in 29 CFR 1926.1101.

1.3.3.1 Medical Examinations

Before exposure to airborne asbestos fibers, provide workers with a comprehensive medical examination as required by 29 CFR 1926.1101 or other pertinent State or local directives. This requirement must have been satisfied within the 12 months prior to the start of work on this contract. The same medical examination must be given on an annual basis to employees engaged in an occupation involving asbestos and within 30 calendar days before or after the termination of employment in such occupation. Specifically identify x-ray films of asbestos workers to the consulting radiologist and mark medical record jackets with the word "ASBESTOS."

1.3.3.2 Medical Records

Maintain complete and accurate records of employees' medical examinations, medical records, and exposure data for a period of 50 years after termination of employment and make records of the required medical examinations and exposure data available for inspection and copying to: The Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health

(OSHA), or authorized representatives of them, and an employee's physician upon the request of the employee or former employee.

1.3.4 Employee Training

Submit certificates, prior to the start of work but after the main abatement submittal, signed by each employee indicating that the employee has received training in the proper handling of materials and wastes that contain asbestos in accordance with 40 CFR 763; understands the health implications and risks involved, including the illnesses possible from exposure to airborne asbestos fibers; understands the use and limits of the respiratory equipment to be used; and understands the results of monitoring of airborne quantities of asbestos as related to health and respiratory equipment as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.1101 on an initial and annual basis. Organize certificates by individual worker, not grouped by type of certification. Post appropriate evidence of compliance with the training requirements of 40 CFR 763. Train personnel involved in the asbestos control work in accordance with United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA) training criteria or State training criteria whichever is more stringent. Document the training by providing: dates of training, training entity, course outline, names of instructors, and qualifications of instructors upon request by the Contracting Officer. Furnish each employee with respirator training and fit testing administered by the PQP as required by 29 CFR 1926.1101 and 29 CFR 1926.103. Fully cover engineering and other hazard control techniques and procedures. Asbestos workers must have a current asbestos worker's license.

1.3.5 Permits, Licenses, and Notifications

Prior to the start of work, obtain necessary permits and licenses in conjunction with asbestos removal, encapsulation, hauling, and disposition, and furnish notification of such actions required by Federal, State, regional, and local authorities. Notify the New Mexico Environment Department and the Contracting Officer in writing 10 working days prior to commencement of work in accordance with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M. Notify the Contracting Officer and other appropriate Government agencies in writing 20 working days prior to the start of asbestos work as indicated in applicable laws, ordinances, criteria, rules, and regulations. Submit copies of all Notifications to the Contracting Officer.

1.3.6 Environment, Safety and Health Compliance

In addition to detailed requirements of this specification, comply with those applicable laws, ordinances, criteria, rules, and regulations of Federal, State, regional, and local authorities regarding handling, storing, transporting, and disposing of asbestos waste materials. Comply with the applicable requirements of the current issue of EM 385-1-1, 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61-SUBPART A, 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, and 40 CFR 763. Submit matters of interpretation of standards to the appropriate administrative agency for resolution before starting the work. Where the requirements of this specification, applicable laws, rules, criteria, ordinances, regulations, and referenced documents vary, the most stringent requirement as defined by the Government apply.

1.3.7 Respiratory Protection Program

Establish and implement a respirator program as required by 29 CFR 1926.1101, and 29 CFR 1926.103. Submit a written description of

the program to the Contracting Officer. Submit a written program manual or operating procedure including methods of compliance with regulatory statutes.

1.3.7.1 Respirator Program Records

Submit records of the respirator program as required by 29 CFR 1926.103, and 29 CFR 1926.1101.

1.3.7.2 Respirator Fit Testing

The Contractor's PQP must conduct a qualitative or quantitative fit test conforming to 29 CFR 1926.103 for each worker required to wear a respirator, and any authorized visitors who enter a regulated area where respirators are required to be worn. A respirator fit test must be performed prior to initially wearing a respirator and every 12 months thereafter. If physical changes develop that will affect the fit, a new fit test must be performed. Functional fit checks must be performed each time a respirator is put on and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

1.3.7.3 Respirator Selection and Use Requirements

Provide respirators and ensure that they are used as required by 29 CFR 1926.1101 and in accordance with CGA G-7 and the manufacturer's recommendations. Respirators must be approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health NIOSH, under the provisions of 42 CFR 84, for use in environments containing airborne asbestos fibers. For air-purifying respirators, the particulate filter must be high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA)/(N-,R-,P-100). The initial respirator selection and the decisions regarding the upgrading or downgrading of respirator type must be made by the Contractor's Designated IH based on the measured or anticipated airborne asbestos fiber concentrations to be encountered.

1.3.8 Asbestos Hazard Control Supervisor

The Contractor must be represented on site by a supervisor, trained using the model Contractor accreditation plan as indicated in the Federal statutes for all portions of the herein listed work.

1.3.9 Hazard Communication

Adhere to all parts of 29 CFR 1926.59 and provide the Contracting Officer with a copy of the Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for all materials brought to the site.

1.3.10 Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan

Submit a detailed plan of the safety precautions such as lockout, tagout, tryout, fall protection, safety data sheets (SDSs) of any chemicals planned on being used (such as, spray adhesives, chemical strippers, or encapsulants), and confined space entry procedures and equipment and work procedures to be used in the removal and demolition of materials containing asbestos. The plan, not to be combined with other hazard abatement plans, must be prepared, signed, and sealed by the PQP. Provide a Table of Contents for each abatement submittal, which follows the sequence of requirements in the contract. The plan must include but not be limited to the precise personal protective equipment to be used including, but not limited to, respiratory protection, type of whole-body

protection, the location of asbestos control areas including clean and dirty areas, buffer zones, showers, storage areas, change rooms, encapsulation method, interface of trades involved in the construction, sequencing of asbestos related work, disposal plan, type of wetting agent and asbestos sealer to be used, locations of local exhaust equipment, planned air monitoring strategies, and a detailed description of the method to be employed in order to control environmental pollution. The plan must also include (both fire and medical emergency) response plans and an Activity Hazard Analyses (AHAs) in accordance with EM 385-1-1. The Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan must be approved in writing prior to starting any asbestos work. The Contractor, Asbestos Hazard Control Supervisor, CP and PQP must meet with the Contracting Officer prior to beginning work, to discuss in detail the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan, including work procedures and safety precautions. Once approved by the Contracting Officer, the plan will be enforced as if an addition to the specification. Any changes required in the specification as a result of the plan must be identified specifically in the plan to allow for free discussion and approval by the Contracting Officer prior to starting work.

1.3.11 Testing Laboratory

Submit the name, address, and telephone number of each testing laboratory selected for the analysis, and reporting of airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers along with evidence that each laboratory selected holds the appropriate State license and permits and certification that each laboratory is American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) accredited and that persons counting the samples have been judged proficient by current inclusion on the AIHA Asbestos Analysis Registry (AAR) and successful participation of the laboratory in the Proficiency Analytical Testing (PAT) Program. Where analysis to determine asbestos content in bulk materials or transmission electron microscopy is required, submit evidence that the laboratory is accredited by the National Institute of Science and Technology (NIST) under National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) for asbestos analysis. The testing laboratory firm must be independent of the asbestos contractor and must have no employee or employer relationship which could constitute a conflict of interest.

1.3.12 Landfill Approval

Submit written evidence that the landfill is approved for asbestos disposal by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Region 6, New Mexico Environment Department's Air Quality Bureau, and local regulatory agencies. Within three working days after delivery, submit detailed [delivery tickets](#), prepared, signed, and dated by an agent of the landfill, certifying the amount of asbestos materials delivered to the landfill. Submit a copy of the [waste shipment records](#) within one day of the shipment leaving the project site.

1.3.13 Transporter Certification

Submit written evidence that the transporter is approved to transport asbestos waste in accordance with the DOT requirements of [49 CFR 171](#), [49 CFR 172](#) and [49 CFR 173](#) as well as registration requirements of [49 CFR 107](#) and all other State and local regulatory agency requirements.

1.3.14 Medical Certification

Provide a written certification for each worker and supervisor, signed by

a licensed physician indicating that the worker and supervisor has met or exceeded all of the medical prerequisites listed herein and in 29 CFR 1926.1101 and 29 CFR 1926.103 as prescribed by law. Submit certificates prior to the start of work but after the main abatement submittal.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Amended Water; G

Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for All Materials; G, S

Encapsulants; G

Respirators; G

Local Exhaust Equipment; G

Pressure Differential Automatic Recording Instrument; G

Vacuums; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Air Sampling Results; G

Pressure Differential Recordings for Local Exhaust System; G

Clearance Sampling; G

Asbestos Disposal Quantity Report; G

SD-07 Certificates

Employee Training; G

Notifications; G

Respiratory Protection Program; G

Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan; G

Testing Laboratory; G

Landfill Approval; G

Delivery Tickets; G

Waste Shipment Records; G

Transporter Certification; G

Medical Certification; G

Private Qualified Person Documentation; G

Competent Person; G

Worker's License; G

Contractor's License; G

Federal, State or Local Citations on Previous Projects; G

Encapsulants; G

Equipment Used to Contain Airborne Asbestos Fibers; G

Water Filtration Equipment; G

Vacuums; G

Ventilation Systems; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Permits and Licenses; G

Notifications; G

Respirator Program Records; G

Rental Equipment; G

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Private Qualified Person Documentation

Submit the name, address, and telephone number of the Private Qualified Person (PQP) selected to prepare the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan, direct monitoring and training, and documented evidence that the PQP has successfully completed training in and is accredited and where required is certified as, a Building Inspector, Contractor/Supervisor Abatement Worker, and Asbestos Project Designer as described by 40 CFR 763 and has successfully completed the National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) 582 course "Sampling and Evaluating Airborne Asbestos Dust" or equivalent. The PQP must be appropriately licensed as a Project Monitor. The PQP and the asbestos contractor must not have an employee/employer relationship or financial relationship which could constitute a conflict of interest. The PQP must be a first-tier subcontractor.

1.5.2 Competent Person Documentation

The Competent Person must be experienced in the administration and supervision of asbestos abatement projects including exposure assessment and monitoring, work practices, abatement methods, protective measures for personnel, setting up and inspecting asbestos abatement work areas, evaluating the integrity of containment barriers, placement and operation

of local exhaust systems, ACM generated waste containment and disposal procedures, decontamination units installation and maintenance requirements, site safety and health requirements, and notification of other employees onsite. The Competent Person must be on-site at all times when asbestos abatement activities are underway. Submit training certification and a current Asbestos Contractor's and Supervisor's License. Submit evidence that the Competent Person has a minimum of 2 years of on-the-job asbestos abatement experience relevant to OSHA competent person requirements.

1.5.3 Worker's License

Submit documentation that workers meet the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M and have a current Asbestos Workers License.

1.5.4 Contractor's License

Submit a copy of the asbestos contractor's license issued by the State of New Mexico. Submit the following certification along with the license: "I certify that the personnel I am responsible for during the course of this project fully understand the contents of 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61-SUBPART MEM 385-1-1, and the Federal, State and local requirements for those asbestos abatement activities that they will be involved in." This certification statement must be signed by the Company's President or Chief Executive.

1.5.5 Air Sampling Results

Complete fiber counting and provide results to the PQP and GC for review within 16 hours of the "time off" of the sample pump. Notify the Contracting Officer immediately of any airborne levels of asbestos fibers in excess of the acceptable limits. Submit sampling results to the Contracting Officer and the affected Contractor employees where required by law within three working days, signed by the testing laboratory employee performing air sampling, the employee that analyzed the sample, and the PQP and GC. Notify the Contractor and the Contracting Officer immediately of any variance in the pressure differential which could cause adjacent unsealed areas to have asbestos fiber concentrations in excess of 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter or background whichever is higher. In no circumstance must levels exceed 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter.

1.5.6 Pressure Differential Recordings for Local Exhaust System

Provide a local exhaust system that creates a negative pressure of at least 0.02 inches of water relative to the pressure external to the enclosure and operate it continuously, 24-hours a day, until the temporary enclosure of the asbestos control area is removed. Submit pressure differential recordings for each work day to the PQP and GC for review and to the Contracting Officer within 24-hours from the end of each work day.

1.5.7 Federal, State or Local Citations on Previous Projects

Submit a statement, signed by an officer of the company, containing a record of any citations issued by Federal, State or local regulatory agencies relating to asbestos activities within the last 5 years (including projects, dates, and resolutions); a list of penalties incurred through non-compliance with asbestos project specifications, including liquidated damages, overruns in scheduled time limitations and resolutions; and situations in which an asbestos-related contract has been

terminated (including projects, dates, and reasons for terminations). If there are none, a negative declaration signed by an officer of the company must be provided.

1.5.8 Preconstruction Conference

Conduct a safety preconstruction conference to discuss the details of the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan, Accident Prevention Plan (APP) including the AHAs required in specification Section 01 35 26 GOVERNMENTAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS. The safety preconstruction conference must include the Contractor and their Designated Competent Person, Designated IH and Project Supervisor and the Contracting Officer. Deficiencies in the APP will be discussed. Onsite work must not begin until the APP has been accepted.

1.6 SECURITY

A log book must be kept documenting entry into and out of the regulated area. Entry into regulated areas must only be by personnel authorized by the Contractor and the Contracting Officer. Personnel authorized to enter regulated areas must be trained, medically evaluated, and wear the required personal protective equipment.

1.7 EQUIPMENT

1.7.1 Rental Equipment

Provide a copy of the written notification to the rental company concerning the intended use of the equipment and the possibility of asbestos contamination of the equipment.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ENCAPSULANTS

Encapsulants must conform to current USEPA requirements, contain no toxic or hazardous substances as defined in 29 CFR 1926.59, and conform to the following performance requirements.

2.1.1 Removal Encapsulants

Requirement	Test Standard
Flame Spread - 25, Smoke Emission - 50	ASTM E84
Life Expectancy - 20 years	ASTM C732 Accelerated Aging Test
Permeability - Minimum 0.4 perms	ASTM E96/E96M
Fire Resistance - Negligible affect on fire resistance rating over 3 hour test (Classified by UL for use over fibrous and cementitious sprayed fireproofing)	ASTM E119

<u>Requirement</u>	<u>Test Standard</u>
Impact Resistance - Minimum 43 in/lb	ASTM D2794 Gardner Impact Test
Flexibility - no rupture or cracking	ASTM D522/D522M Mandrel Bend Test

2.1.2 Bridging Encapsulant

<u>Requirement</u>	<u>Test Standard</u>
Flame Spread - 25, Smoke Emission - 50	ASTM E84
Life Expectancy - 20 years	ASTM C732 Accelerated Aging Test
Permeability - Minimum 0.4 perms	ASTM E96/E96M
Fire Resistance - Negligible affect on fire resistance rating over 3-hour test (Classified by UL for use over fibrous and cementitious sprayed fireproofing)	ASTM E119
Impact Resistance - Minimum 43 in/lb	ASTM D2794 Gardner Impact Test
Flexibility - no rupture or cracking	ASTM D522/D522M Mandrel Bend Test

2.1.3 Penetrating Encapsulant

<u>Requirement</u>	<u>Test Standard</u>
Flame Spread - 25, Smoke Emission - 50	ASTM E84
Life Expectancy - 20 years	ASTM C732 Accelerated Aging Test
Permeability - Minimum 0.4 perms	ASTM E96/E96M
Cohesion/Adhesion Test - 50 pounds of force/foot	ASTM E119

<u>Requirement</u>	<u>Test Standard</u>
Fire Resistance - Negligible affect on fire resistance rating over 3-hour test (Classified by UL for use over fibrous and cementitious sprayed fireproofing)	ASTM E119
Impact Resistance - Minimum 43 in/lb	ASTM D2794 Gardner Impact Test
Flexibility - no rupture or cracking	ASTM D522/D522M Mandrel Bend Test

2.1.4 Lock-down Encapsulant

<u>Requirement</u>	<u>Test Standard</u>
Flame Spread - 25, Smoke Emission - 50	ASTM E84
Life Expectancy - 20 years	ASTM C732 Accelerated Aging Test
Permeability - Minimum 0.4 perms	ASTM E96/E96M
Fire Resistance - Negligible affect on fire resistance rating over 3-hour test (Tested with fireproofing over encapsulant applied directly to steel member)	ASTM E119
Bond Strength: 100 pounds of force/foot	ASTM E736/E736M
(Tests compatibility with cementitious and fibrous fireproofing)	

2.2 DUCT TAPE

Industrial grade duct tape of appropriate widths suitable for bonding sheet plastic and disposal container.

2.3 DISPOSAL CONTAINERS

Leak-tight (defined as solids, liquids, or dust that cannot escape or spill out) disposal containers must be provided for ACM wastes as required by 29 CFR 1926.1101. Disposal containers can be in the form of:

- a. Disposal Bags
- b. Fiberboard Drums

c. Cardboard Boxes

2.4 SHEET PLASTIC

Sheet plastic must be polyethylene of 6 mil minimum thickness and must be provided in the largest sheet size necessary to minimize seams. Film must be clear, frosted, or black and conform to ASTM D4397, except as specified below.

2.4.1 Flame Resistant

Where a potential for fire exists, flame-resistant sheets must be provided. Film must be frosted or black and must conform to the requirements of NFPA 701.

2.4.2 Reinforced

Reinforced sheets must be provided where high skin strength is required, such as where it constitutes the only barrier between the regulated area and the outdoor environment. The sheet stock must consist of translucent, nylon-reinforced or woven-polyethylene thread laminated between 2 layers of polyethylene film. Film must meet flame resistant standards of NFPA 701.

2.5 MASTIC REMOVING SOLVENT

Mastic removing solvent must be nonflammable and must not contain methylene chloride, glycol ether, or halogenated hydrocarbons. Solvents used onsite must have a flash point greater than 140 degrees F.

2.6 LEAK-TIGHT WRAPPING

Two layers of 6 mil minimum thick polyethylene sheet stock must be used for the containment of removed asbestos-containing components or materials such as large tanks, boilers, insulated pipe segments and other materials. Upon placement of the ACM component or material, each layer must be individually leak-tight sealed with duct tape.

2.7 VIEWING INSPECTION WINDOW

Where feasible, a minimum of one clear, 1/8 inch thick, acrylic sheet, 18 by 24 inches, must be installed as a viewing inspection window at eye level on a wall in each containment enclosure. The windows must be sealed leak-tight with industrial grade duct tape.

2.8 WETTING AGENTS

Removal encapsulant (a penetrating encapsulant) must be provided when conducting removal abatement activities that require a longer removal time or are subject to rapid evaporation of amended water. The removal encapsulant must be capable of wetting the ACM and retarding fiber release during disturbance of the ACM greater than or equal to that provided by amended water. Performance requirements for penetrating encapsulants are specified in paragraph ENCAPSULANTS above.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT

Provide the Contracting Officer or the Contracting Officer's

Representative, with at least two complete sets of personal protective equipment as required for entry to and inspection of the asbestos control area. Provide equivalent training to the Contracting Officer or a designated representative as provided to Contractor employees in the use of the required personal protective equipment. Provide manufacturer's certificate of compliance for all [equipment used to contain airborne asbestos fibers](#).

3.1.1 Air Monitoring Equipment

The Contractor's PQP must approve air monitoring equipment. The equipment must include, but must not be limited to:

- a. High-volume sampling pumps that can be calibrated and operated at a constant airflow up to 16 liters per minute.
- b. Low-volume, battery powered, body-attachable, portable personal pumps that can be calibrated to a constant airflow up to approximately 3.5 liters per minute, and a self-contained rechargeable power pack capable of sustaining the calibrated flow rate for a minimum of 10 hours. The pumps must also be equipped with an automatic flow control unit which must maintain a constant flow, even as filter resistance increases due to accumulation of fiber and debris on the filter surface.
- c. Single use standard 25 mm diameter cassette, open face, 0.8 micron pore size, mixed cellulose ester membrane filters and cassettes with 50 mm electrically conductive extension cowl, and shrink bands for personal air sampling.
- d. A flow calibrator capable of calibration to within plus or minus 2 percent of reading over a temperature range of [minus 4 to plus 140 degrees F](#) and traceable to a NIST primary standard.

3.1.2 Respirators

Select respirators from those approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), Department of Health and Human Services.

3.1.2.1 [Respirators](#) for Handling Asbestos

Provide personnel engaged in pre-cleaning, cleanup, handling, encapsulation, removal, or demolition of asbestos materials with respiratory protection as indicated in [29 CFR 1926.1101](#) and [29 CFR 1926.103](#). Breathing air must comply with [CGA G-7](#).

3.1.3 Exterior Whole Body Protection

3.1.3.1 Outer Protective Clothing

Provide personnel exposed to asbestos with disposable "non-breathable," whole body outer protective clothing, head coverings, gloves, and foot coverings. Provide disposable plastic or rubber gloves to protect hands. Cloth gloves may be worn inside the plastic or rubber gloves for comfort but must not be used alone. Make sleeves secure at the wrists, make foot coverings secure at the ankles, and make clothing secure at the neck by the use of tape.

3.1.3.2 Work Clothing

Provide cloth work clothes for wear under the outer protective clothing and foot coverings and either dispose of or properly decontaminate them as recommended by the GC after each use.

3.1.3.3 Personal Decontamination Unit

Provide a temporary, negative pressure unit with a separate decontamination locker room and clean locker room with a shower that complies with 29 CFR 1926.51(f)(4)(ii) through (V) in between for personnel required to wear whole body protective clothing. Provide two separate lockers for each asbestos worker, one in each locker room. Keep street clothing and street shoes in the clean locker. HEPA vacuum and remove asbestos contaminated disposable protective clothing while still wearing respirators at the boundary of the asbestos work area and seal in impermeable bags or containers for disposal. Do not wear work clothing between home and work. Locate showers between the decontamination locker room and the clean locker room and require that all employees shower before changing into street clothes. Collect used shower water and filter with approved water filtration equipment to remove asbestos contamination. Wastewater filters must be installed in series with the first stage pore size 20 microns and the second stage pore size of 5 microns. Dispose of filters and residue as asbestos waste. Discharge clean water to the sanitary system. Dispose of asbestos contaminated work clothing as asbestos contaminated waste. Keep the floor of the decontamination unit's clean room dry and clean at all times. Proper housekeeping and hygiene requirements must be maintained. Provide soap and towels for showering, washing and drying. Cloth towels provided must be disposed of as ACM waste or must be laundered in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101. Physically attach the decontamination units to the asbestos control area. Construct both a personnel decontamination unit and an equipment decontamination unit onto and integral with each asbestos control area.

3.1.3.4 Eye Protection

Provide eye protection that complies with ANSI/ISEA Z87.1 when operations present a potential eye injury hazard. Provide goggles to personnel engaged in asbestos abatement operations when the use of a full face respirator is not required.

3.1.4 Regulated Areas

All Class I, II, and III asbestos work must be conducted within regulated areas. The regulated area must be demarcated to minimize the number of persons within the area and to protect persons outside the area from exposure to airborne asbestos. Control access to regulated areas, ensure that only authorized personnel enter, and verify that Contractor required medical surveillance, training and respiratory protection program requirements are met prior to allowing entrance.

3.1.5 Load-out Unit

Provide a temporary load-out unit that is adjacent and connected to the regulated area. Attach the load-out unit in a leak-tight manner to each regulated area.

3.1.6 Warning Signs and Labels

Provide bilingual warning signs printed in English and Spanish at all approaches to asbestos control areas. Locate signs at such a distance that personnel may read the sign and take the necessary protective steps required before entering the area. Provide labels and affix to all asbestos materials, scrap, waste, debris, and other products contaminated with asbestos. Containers with preprinted warning labels conforming to the requirements are acceptable

3.1.6.1 Warning Sign

Provide vertical format conforming to 29 CFR 1926.200, and 29 CFR 1926.1101 minimum 20 by 14 inches displaying the following legend in the lower panel:

<u>Legend</u>	<u>Notation</u>
DANGER	one inch Sans Serif Gothic or Block
ASBESTOS	one inch Sans Serif Gothic or Block
MAY CAUSE CANCER	one inch Sans Serif Gothic or Block
CAUSES DAMAGE TO LUNGS	1/4 inch Sans Serif Gothic or Block
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY	1/4 inch Sans Serif Gothic or Block
WEAR RESPIRATORY PROTECTION AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING IN THIS AREA	1/4 inch Sans Serif Gothic or Block

Spacing between lines must be at least equal to the height of the upper of any two lines.

3.1.6.2 Warning Labels

Provide labels conforming to 29 CFR 1926.1101 of sufficient size to be clearly legible, displaying the following legend:

DANGER
CONTAINS ASBESTOS FIBERS
MAY CAUSE CANCER
CAUSES DAMAGE TO LUNGS

DO NOT BREATHE DUST AVOID CREATING DUST

3.1.7 Local Exhaust System

Provide a local exhaust system in the asbestos control area in accordance with ASSP Z9.2 and 29 CFR 1926.1101 that will provide at least four air changes per hour inside of the negative pressure enclosure. Local exhaust equipment must be operated 24-hours per day, until the asbestos control area is removed and must be leak proof to the filter and equipped with HEPA filters. Maintain a minimum pressure differential in the control area of minus 0.02 inch of water column relative to adjacent, unsealed areas. Provide continuous 24-hour per day monitoring of the pressure differential with a pressure differential automatic recording instrument. The building ventilation system must not be used as the local exhaust system for the asbestos control area. Filters on exhaust equipment must conform to ASSP Z9.2 and UL 586. Terminate the local exhaust system out of doors and remote from any public access or ventilation system intakes.

3.1.8 Tools

Vacuums must be leak proof to the filter and equipped with HEPA filters. Filters on vacuums must conform to ASSP Z9.2 and UL 586. Do not use power tools to remove asbestos containing materials unless the tool is equipped with effective, integral HEPA filtered exhaust ventilation systems. Remove all residual asbestos from reusable tools prior to storage or reuse. Reusable tools must be thoroughly decontaminated prior to being removed from the regulated areas.

3.1.9 Rental Equipment

If rental equipment is to be used, furnish written notification to the rental agency concerning the intended use of the equipment and the possibility of asbestos contamination of the equipment.

3.1.10 Single Stage Decontamination Area

A decontamination area (equipment room/area) must be provided for Class I work involving less than 25 feet or 10 square feet of TSI or surfacing ACM, and for Class II and Class III asbestos work operations where exposures exceed the PELs or where there is no negative exposure assessment. The equipment room or area must be adjacent to the regulated area for the decontamination of employees, material, and their equipment which could be contaminated with asbestos. The area must be covered by an impermeable drop cloth on the floor or horizontal working surface. The area must be of sufficient size to accommodate cleaning of equipment and removing personal protective equipment without spreading contamination beyond the area.

3.1.11 Decontamination Area Exit Procedures

Ensure that the following procedures are followed:

- a. Before leaving the regulated area, remove all gross contamination and debris from work clothing using a HEPA vacuum.
- b. Employees must remove their protective clothing in the equipment room and deposit the clothing in labeled impermeable bags or containers for disposal or laundering.

- c. Employees must not remove their respirators until showering.
- d. Employees must shower prior to entering the clean room. If a shower has not been located between the equipment room and the clean room or the work is performed outdoors, ensure that employees engaged in Class I asbestos jobs: a) Remove asbestos contamination from their work suits in the equipment room or decontamination area using a HEPA vacuum before proceeding to a shower that is not adjacent to the work area; or b) Remove their contaminated work suits in the equipment room, without cleaning worksuits, and proceed to a shower that is not adjacent to the work area.

3.2 WORK PROCEDURE

Perform asbestos related work in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, and as specified herein. Use wet or if given prior EPA approval, dry removal procedures and negative pressure enclosure techniques. Wear and utilize protective clothing and equipment as specified herein. No eating, smoking, drinking, chewing gum, tobacco, or applying cosmetics is permitted in the asbestos work or control areas. Personnel of other trades not engaged in the removal and demolition of asbestos containing material must not be exposed at any time to airborne concentrations of asbestos unless all the personnel protection and training provisions of this specification are complied with by the trade personnel. Seal all roof top penetrations, except plumbing vents, prior to asbestos roofing work. Shut down the building heating, ventilating, and air conditioning system, cap the openings to the system, and provide temporary heating, ventilation, and air conditioning prior to the commencement of asbestos work. Power to the regulated area must be locked-out and tagged in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.147. Disconnect electrical service when wet removal is performed and provide temporary electrical service with verifiable ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) protection prior to the use of any water. All electrical work must be performed by a licensed electrician. Stop abatement work in the regulated area immediately when the airborne total fiber concentration: (1) equals or exceeds 0.01 f/cc, or the pre-abatement concentration, whichever is greater, outside the regulated area; or (2) equals or exceeds 1.0 f/cc inside the regulated area. Correct the condition to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer, including visual inspection and air sampling. Work must resume only upon notification by the Contracting Officer. Corrective actions must be documented. If an asbestos fiber release or spill occurs outside of the asbestos control area, stop work immediately, correct the condition to the satisfaction of the Contracting Officer including clearance sampling, prior to resumption of work.

3.2.1 Building Ventilation System and Critical Barriers

Building ventilation system supply and return air ducts in a regulated area must be isolated by airtight seals to prevent the spread of contamination throughout the system. The airtight seals must consist of 2 layers of polyethylene. Edges to wall, ceiling and floor surfaces must be sealed with industrial grade duct tape.

- a. A Competent Person must supervise the work.
- b. For indoor work, critical barriers must be placed over all openings to the regulated area.

- c. Impermeable dropcloths must be placed on surfaces beneath all removal activity.

3.2.2 Protection of Existing Work to Remain

Perform work without damage or contamination of adjacent work. Where such work is damaged or contaminated as verified by the Contracting Officer using visual inspection or sample analysis, it must be restored to its original condition or decontaminated by the Contractor at no expense to the Government as deemed appropriate by the Contracting Officer. This includes inadvertent spill of dirt, dust, or debris in which it is reasonable to conclude that asbestos may exist. When these spills occur, stop work immediately. Then clean up the spill. When satisfactory visual inspection and air sampling results are obtained from the PQP work may proceed at the discretion of the Contracting Officer.

3.2.3 Furnishings

Furniture and equipment will remain in the building. Cover and seal furnishings with 6-mil plastic sheet or remove from the work area and store in a location on site approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.2.4 Precleaning

Wet wipe and HEPA vacuum all surfaces potentially contaminated with asbestos prior to establishment of an enclosure.

3.2.5 Asbestos Control Area Requirements

3.2.5.1 Negative Pressure Enclosure

Removal of asbestos contaminated acoustical ceiling tiles, spray applied fireproofing, thermal system insulation, gypsum wallboard/joint compound require the use of a negative pressure enclosure. Block and seal openings in areas where release of airborne asbestos fibers can be expected. Establish an asbestos negative pressure enclosure with the use of curtains, portable partitions, or other enclosures in order to prevent the escape of asbestos fibers from the contaminated asbestos work area. Negative pressure enclosure development must include protective covering of uncontaminated walls, and ceilings with a continuous membrane of two layers of minimum 6-mil plastic sheet sealed with tape to prevent water or other damage. Provide two layers of 6-mil plastic sheet over floors and extend a minimum of 12 inches up walls. Seal all joints with tape. Provide local exhaust system in asbestos control area. Openings will be allowed in enclosures of asbestos control areas for personnel and equipment entry and exit, supply and exhaust of air for local exhaust system and the removal of properly containerized asbestos containing materials. Replace local exhaust system filters as required to maintain efficiency of the system.

3.2.5.2 Glovebag

If the construction of a negative pressure enclosure is infeasible for the removal of ACM. Use alternate techniques as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.1101. Establish designated limits for the asbestos regulated area with the use of rope or other continuous barriers and maintain all other requirements for asbestos control areas. The PQP must conduct personal samples of each worker engaged in asbestos handling (removal, disposal, transport and other associated work) throughout the duration of the project. If the

quantity of airborne asbestos fibers monitored at the breathing zone of the workers at any time exceeds background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter whichever is greater, stop work, evacuate personnel in adjacent areas or provide personnel with approved protective equipment at the discretion of the Contracting Officer. This sampling may be duplicated by the Government at the discretion of the Contracting Officer. If the air sampling results obtained by the Government differ from those obtained by the Contractor, the Government will determine which results predominate. If adjacent areas are contaminated as determined by the Contracting Officer, clean the contaminated areas, monitor, and visually inspect the area as specified herein.

3.2.5.3 Regulated Area for Class II Removal

Removal of asbestos containing floor tile/mastic, carpet/mastic, and sealants are Class II removal activities. Establish designated limits for the asbestos regulated work area with the use of red barrier tape; install critical barriers, splash guards and signs, and maintain all other requirements for asbestos control area except local exhaust. Place impermeable dropcloths on surfaces beneath removal activity extending out 3 feet in all directions. A detached decontamination system may be used. Conduct area monitoring of airborne fibers during the work shift at the designated limits of the asbestos work area and conduct personal samples of each worker engaged in the work. If workers the airborne fiber concentration of the workers or designated limits at any time exceeds background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop work immediately and correct the situation.

3.2.6 Removal Procedures

Wet asbestos material with a fine spray of amended water or a specific wetting agent such as light oil during removal, cutting, or other handling so as to reduce the emission of airborne fibers. Remove material and immediately place in 6 mil plastic disposal bags. Remove asbestos containing material in a gradual manner, with continuous application of the amended water or wetting agent in such a manner that no asbestos material is disturbed prior to being adequately wetted. Where unusual circumstances prohibit the use of 6 mil plastic bags, submit an alternate proposal for containment of asbestos fibers to the Contracting Officer for approval. For example, in the case where both piping and insulation are to be removed, the Contractor may elect to wet the insulation, wrap the pipes and insulation in plastic and remove the pipe by sections. Containerize asbestos containing material while wet. Do not allow asbestos material to accumulate or become dry. Lower and otherwise handle asbestos containing material as indicated in 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M.

3.2.6.1 Sealing Contaminated Items Designated for Disposal

Remove contaminated architectural, mechanical, and electrical appurtenances such as venetian blinds, full-height partitions, carpeting, duct work, pipes and fittings, radiators, light fixtures, conduit, panels, and other contaminated items designated for removal by completely coating the items with an asbestos lock-down encapsulant at the demolition site before removing the items from the asbestos control area. These items need not be vacuumed. The asbestos lock-down encapsulant must be tinted a contrasting color and spray-applied by airless method. Thoroughness of sealing operation must be visually gauged by the extent of colored coating on exposed surfaces. Lock-down encapsulants must comply with the performance requirements specified herein.

3.2.6.2 Exposed Pipe Insulation Edges

Contain edges of asbestos insulation to remain that are exposed by a removal operation. Wet and cut the rough ends true and square with sharp tools and then encapsulate the edges with a 1/4 inch thick layer of non-asbestos containing insulating cement troweled to a smooth hard finish. When cement is dry, lag the end with a layer of non-asbestos lagging cloth, overlapping the existing ends by at least 4 inches. When insulating cement and cloth is an impractical method of sealing a raw edge of asbestos, take appropriate steps to seal the raw edges as approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.2.7 Methods of Compliance

3.2.7.1 Mandated Practices

The specific abatement techniques and items identified must be detailed in the Contractor's AHAP. Use the following engineering controls and work practices in all operations, regardless of the levels of exposure:

- a. Vacuum cleaners equipped with HEPA filters.
- b. Wet methods or wetting agents except where it can be demonstrated that the use of wet methods is unfeasible due to the creation of electrical hazards, equipment malfunction, and in roofing.
- c. Prompt clean-up and disposal.
- d. Inspection and repair of polyethylene.
- e. Cleaning of equipment and surfaces of containers prior to removing them from the equipment room or area.

3.2.7.2 Control Methods

Use the following control methods:

- a. Local exhaust ventilation equipped with HEPA filter;
- b. Enclosure or isolation of processes producing asbestos dust;
- c. Where the feasible engineering and work practice controls are not sufficient to reduce employee exposure to or below the PELs, use them to reduce employee exposure to the lowest levels attainable and must supplement them by the use of respiratory protection.

3.2.7.3 Unacceptable Practices

The following work practices must not be used:

- a. High-speed abrasive disc saws that are not equipped with point of cut ventilator or enclosures with HEPA filtered exhaust air.
- b. Compressed air used to remove asbestos containing materials, unless the compressed air is used in conjunction with an enclosed ventilation system designed to capture the dust cloud created by the compressed air.

- c. Dry sweeping, shoveling, or other dry clean up.
- d. Employee rotation as a means of reducing employee exposure to asbestos.

3.2.8 Class I Work Procedures

In addition to requirements of paragraphs MANDATED PRACTICES and CONTROL METHODS, the following engineering controls and work practices must be used:

- a. A Competent Person must supervise the installation and operation of the control methods.
- b. For jobs involving the removal of more than 25 feet or 10 square feet of TSI or surfacing material, place critical barriers over all openings to the regulated area.
- c. HVAC systems must be isolated in the regulated area by sealing with a double layer of plastic or air-tight rigid covers.
- d. Impermeable dropcloths (6 mil or greater thickness) must be placed on surfaces beneath all removal activity.
- e. Where a negative exposure assessment has not been provided or where exposure monitoring shows the PEL was exceeded, the regulated area must be ventilated with a HEPA unit and employees must use PPE.

3.2.9 Specific Control Methods for Class I Work

Use Class I work procedures, control methods and removal methods for the following ACM:

- a. Spray Applied Fireproofing
- b. Gypsum Wallboard and Joint Compound
- c. Thermal System Insulation and Mudded Pipe Fittings
- d. Plaster and Textured Ceilings and Walls
- e. Vermiculite

3.2.9.1 Negative Pressure Enclosure (NPE) System

The system must provide at least four air changes per hour inside the containment. The local exhaust unit equipment must be operated 24-hours per day until the containment is removed. The NPE must be smoke tested for leaks at the beginning of each shift and be sufficient to maintain a minimum pressure differential of minus 0.02 inch of water column relative to adjacent, unsealed areas. Pressure differential must be monitored continuously, 24-hours per day, with an automatic manometric recording instrument and Records must be provided daily on the same day collected to the Contracting Officer. The Contracting Officer must be notified immediately if the pressure differential falls below the prescribed minimum. The building ventilation system must not be used as the local exhaust system for the regulated area. The NPE must terminate outdoors unless an alternate arrangement is allowed by the Contracting Officer. All filters used must be new at the beginning of the project and must be periodically changed as necessary and disposed of as ACM waste.

3.2.9.2 Glovebag Systems

Glovebags must be used without modification, smoke-tested for leaks, and completely cover the circumference of pipe or other structures where the work is to be done. Glovebags must be used only once and must not be moved. Glovebags must not be used on surfaces that have temperatures exceeding 150 degrees F. Prior to disposal, glovebags must be collapsed using a HEPA vacuum. Before beginning the operation, loose and friable material adjacent to the glovebag operation must be wrapped and sealed in 2 layers of plastic or otherwise rendered intact. At least two persons must perform glovebag removal. Asbestos regulated work areas must be established for glovebag abatement. Designated boundary limits for the asbestos work must be established with rope or other continuous barriers and all other requirements for asbestos control areas must be maintained, including area signage and boundary warning tape.

- a. Attach HEPA vacuum systems to the bag to prevent collapse during removal of ACM.
- b. The negative pressure glove boxes must be fitted with gloved apertures and a bagging outlet and constructed with rigid sides from metal or other material which can withstand the weight of the ACM and water used during removal. A negative pressure must be created in the system using a HEPA filtration system. The box must be smoke tested for leaks prior to each use.

3.2.9.3 Mini-Enclosure

Single bulkhead containment, double bulkhead containment or mini-containment (small walk-in enclosure) to accommodate no more than two persons, may be used if the disturbance or removal can be completely contained by the enclosure. The mini-enclosure must be inspected for leaks and smoke tested before each use. Air movement must be directed away from the employee's breathing zone within the mini-enclosure.

3.2.9.4 Wrap and Cut Operation

Prior to cutting pipe, the asbestos-containing insulation must be wrapped with polyethylene and securely sealed with duct tape to prevent asbestos becoming airborne as a result of the cutting process. The following steps must be taken: install glovebag, strip back sections to be cut 6 inches from point of cut, and cut pipe into manageable sections.

3.2.9.5 Class I Removal Method

Class I ACM must be removed using a control method described above. Prepare work area as previously specified. Establish designated limits for the asbestos regulated work area with the use of red barrier tape, critical barriers, signs, and maintain all other requirements for asbestos control area. Spread one layer of 6-mil seamless plastic sheeting on the floor below the work area. Remove asbestos containing spray applied fireproofing using a scraper and wet methods and immediately place into 6-mil thickness disposal bag. After removal of the material use a wire brush to clean the exposed substrate to remove residual material. Continue wet cleaning until surfaces are free of visible debris. Cut manageable sections of gypsum wallboard and joint compound and immediately place into a 6-mil minimum thickness disposal bag or other approved container. Make every effort to keep the material from falling to the

floor of the work area. Use a wire brush and wet clean to remove residual material from studs. Continue wet cleaning until the surface is clean of visible material and encapsulate stud walls. Remove ACM thermal system insulation and mudded pipe fittings using mechanical means and wet methods and immediately place into 6-mil thickness disposal bag. Continue wet cleaning until surfaces are free of visible debris. Remove ACM plaster ceilings or walls using mechanical means and adequately wet methods and immediately place into 6-mil thickness disposal bag. Make every effort to keep the material from falling to the floor of the work area. Continue wet cleaning until surfaces are free of visible debris. Remove ACM textured ceiling finish using a scraper and wet methods and immediately place into 6-mil thickness disposal bag. Floors are considered contaminated from fallen textured ceiling finish. Clean up debris on floor and dispose of carpet as asbestos contaminated material. After removal of the material use a wire brush to clean the exposed concrete or ceiling to remove residual material. Continue wet cleaning until surfaces are free of visible debris. Remove ACM vermiculite using mechanical means and adequately wet methods and immediately place into 6-mil thickness disposal bag. Make every effort to keep the material from falling to the floor of the work area. Continue wet cleaning until surfaces are free of visible debris. Bag all asbestos debris which has fallen to the floor as asbestos-containing debris. Place all debris in plastic disposal bags of 6-mil minimum thickness. Once the material is in the disposal bag, apply additional water as needed to achieve "adequately wet" conditions for NESHAP compliance. Place bagged asbestos waste under negative pressure with the use of a HEPA vacuum, goose neck and duck tape to seal the bag, wash to remove any visible contamination and place into a second 6-mil minimum thickness disposal bag. Containerize asbestos containing waste while wet. Lower and otherwise handle asbestos containing materials as indicated in 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M. Conduct area monitoring of airborne fibers during the work shift at the designated limits of the asbestos work area and conduct personal samples of each worker engaged in the work. If the quantity of airborne asbestos fibers monitored at the breathing zone of the workers or the designated limits at any time exceeds background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop work, and immediately correct the situation.

3.2.10 Class II Work Procedures

In addition to the requirements of paragraphs MANDATED PRACTICES and CONTROL METHODS, the following engineering controls and work practices must be used:

- a. A Competent Person must supervise the work.
- b. For indoor work, critical barriers must be placed over all openings to the regulated area.
- c. Impermeable dropcloths must be placed on surfaces beneath all removal activity.

3.2.11 Specific Control Methods for Class II Work

3.2.11.1 Vinyl and Asphaltic Flooring Materials, Carpet, and Mastic

Establish designated limits for the asbestos regulated work area with the use of red barrier tape, critical barriers, signs, and maintain all other requirements for asbestos control area except local exhaust. A detached decontamination system may be used. When removing vinyl floor tile and

mastic or carpet and mastic which contains ACM, use the following practices. Remove floor tile and mastic or carpet and mastic using adequately wet methods. Remove floor tiles or carpet and mastic intact (if possible). Do not sand flooring or its backing. Scrape residual adhesive and backing using wet methods. Mechanical chipping is prohibited unless performed in a negative pressure enclosure. Dry sweeping is prohibited. Use vacuums equipped with HEPA filter, disposable dust bag, and metal floor tool (no brush) to clean floors. Place debris into a 6-mil minimum thickness disposal bag or other approved container. Once the material is in the disposal bag, apply additional water as needed to achieve "adequately wet" conditions for NESHAP compliance. Place bagged asbestos waste under negative pressure with the use of a HEPA vacuum, goose neck and duck tape to seal the bag, wash to remove any visible contamination and place into a second 6-mil minimum thickness disposal bag. Containerize asbestos containing waste while wet. Lower and otherwise handle asbestos containing materials as indicated in 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M. Conduct area monitoring of airborne fibers during the work shift at the designated limits of the asbestos work area and conduct personal samples of each worker engaged in the work. If workers the airborne fiber concentration of the workers or designated limits at any time exceeds background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop work immediately and correct the situation.

3.2.11.2 Sealants and Mastic

Establish designated limits for the asbestos regulated work area with the use of red barrier tape, critical barriers and signs, and maintain all other requirements for asbestos control area except local exhaust. Spread 6-mil plastic sheeting on ground around perimeter of the work area extending out in all directions. Using adequately wet methods, carefully remove ACM sealants and mastics using a scraper or knife blade. As it is removed place material into a disposal bag. Make every effort to keep asbestos material from falling to the ground or work area floor below. Dry sweeping is prohibited. Use vacuums equipped with HEPA filter and disposable dust bag. Place debris into a 6-mil minimum thickness disposal bag or other approved container. Once the material is in disposal bag, apply additional water as needed to achieve "adequately wet" conditions for NESHAP compliance. Place bagged asbestos waste under negative pressure with the use of a HEPA vacuum, goose neck and duck tape to seal the bag, wash to remove any visible contamination and place into a second 6-mil minimum thickness disposal bag. Containerize asbestos containing waste while wet. Lower and otherwise handle asbestos containing materials as indicated in 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M. Conduct area monitoring of airborne fibers during the work shift at the designated limits of the asbestos work area and conduct personal samples of each worker engaged in the work. If airborne fiber concentration of the workers or at designated limits at any time exceeds background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop work immediately and correct the situation.

3.2.11.3 Suspect Fire Doors

Establish designated limits for the asbestos regulated work area with the use of red barrier tape, critical barriers, signs, and maintain all other requirements for asbestos control area except local exhaust. A detached decontamination system may be used. Spread 6-mil plastic sheeting on the ground beneath the work area and around the perimeter of the work area extending out in all directions. Remove door intact from hinges and wrap with 6-mil plastic sheeting. Inspect the interior areas of the door to determine if ACM is present. If ACM is not present the door may be

disposed of as general construction debris. If ACM is present place whole door in enclosed container for disposal. Conduct area monitoring of airborne fibers during the work shift at the designated limits of the asbestos work area and conduct personal samples of each worker engaged in the work. If the airborne fiber concentration of the workers or designated limits at any time exceeds background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop work immediately and correct the situation.

3.2.11.4 Roofing Materials

Establish designated limits for the asbestos regulated work area with the use of red barrier tape, critical barriers, signs, and maintain all other requirements for asbestos control area except local exhaust. When removing roofing materials which contain ACM as described in 29 CFR 1926.1101(g)(8)(ii), use the following practices. Roofing material must be removed in an intact state. Wet methods must be used to remove roofing materials that are not intact, or that will be rendered not intact during removal, unless such wet methods are not feasible or will create safety hazards. When removing built-up roofs, with asbestos-containing roofing felts and an aggregate surface, using a power roof cutter, all dust resulting from the cutting operations must be collected by a HEPA dust collector, or must be HEPA vacuumed by vacuuming along the cut line. Asbestos-containing roofing material must not be dropped or thrown to the ground, but must be lowered to the ground via covered, dust-tight chute, crane, hoist or other method approved by the Contracting Officer. Any ACM that is not intact must be lowered to the ground as soon as practicable, but not later than the end of the work shift. While the material remains on the roof it must be kept wet or placed in an impermeable waste bag or wrapped in plastic sheeting. Intact ACM must be lowered to the ground as soon as practicable, but not later than the end of the work shift. Unwrapped material must be transferred to a closed receptacle. Critical barriers must be placed over roof level heating and ventilation air intakes. Conduct area monitoring of airborne fibers during the work shift at the designated limits of the asbestos work area and conduct personal samples of each worker engaged in the work. If the airborne fiber concentration of the workers or designated limits at any time exceeds background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop work immediately and correct the situation.

3.2.11.5 Cementitious Siding and Shingles or Transite Panels

Establish designated limits for the asbestos regulated work area with the use of red barrier tape, critical barriers, signs, and maintain all other requirements for asbestos control area except local exhaust. When removing cementitious asbestos-containing siding, shingles or Transite panels use the following work practices. Intentionally cutting, abrading or breaking is prohibited. Each panel or shingle must be sprayed with amended water prior to removal. Nails must be cut with flat, sharp instruments. Unwrapped or unbagged panels or shingles must be immediately lowered to the ground via covered dust-tight chute, crane or hoist, or placed in an impervious waste bag or wrapped in plastic sheeting and lowered to the ground no later than the end of the work shift. Place debris into a 6-mil minimum thickness disposal bag or other approved container. Once the material is in the disposal bag, apply additional water as needed to achieve "adequately wet" conditions for NESHAP compliance. Place bagged asbestos waste under negative pressure with the use of a HEPA vacuum, goose neck and duck tape to seal the bag, wash to remove any visible contamination and place into a second 6-mil minimum

thickness disposal bag. Containerize asbestos containing waste while wet. Conduct area monitoring of airborne fibers during the work shift at the designated limits of the asbestos work area and conduct personal samples of each worker engaged in the work. If the airborne fiber concentration of the workers or designated limits at any time exceeds background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop work immediately and correct the situation.

3.2.11.6 Gaskets

Establish designated limits for the asbestos regulated work area with the use of red barrier tape, critical barriers, signs, and maintain all other requirements for asbestos control area except local exhaust. Gaskets must be thoroughly wetted with amended water prior to removal and immediately placed in a disposal container. If a gasket is visibly deteriorated and unlikely to be removed intact, removal must be undertaken within a glovebag. Any scraping to remove residue must be performed wet. Place debris into a 6-mil minimum thickness disposal bag or other approved container. Once the material is in the disposal bag, apply additional water as needed to achieve "adequately wet" conditions for NESHAP compliance. Place bagged asbestos waste under negative pressure with the use of a HEPA vacuum, goose neck and duck tape to seal the bag, wash to remove any visible contamination and place into a second 6-mil minimum thickness disposal bag. Containerize asbestos containing waste while wet. Conduct area monitoring of airborne fibers during the work shift at the designated limits of the asbestos work area and conduct personal samples of each worker engaged in the work. If the airborne fiber concentration of the workers or designated limits at any time exceeds background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop work immediately and correct the situation.

3.2.12 Abatement of Asbestos Contaminated Soil

Establish designated limits for the asbestos regulated work area with the use of red barrier tape, critical barriers, signs, and maintain all other requirements for asbestos control area except local exhaust. Asbestos contaminated soil must be removed from areas to a minimum depth of 2 inches. Soil must be thoroughly dampened with amended water and then removed by manual shoveling into labeled containers. Place debris into a 6-mil minimum thickness disposal bag or other approved container. Once the material is in the disposal bag, apply additional water as needed to achieve "adequately wet" conditions for NESHAP compliance. Place bagged asbestos waste under negative pressure with the use of a HEPA vacuum, goose neck and duck tape to seal the bag, wash to remove any visible contamination and place into a second 6-mil minimum thickness disposal bag. Containerize asbestos containing waste while wet. Conduct area monitoring of airborne fibers during the work shift at the designated limits of the asbestos work area and conduct personal samples of each worker engaged in the work. If the airborne fiber concentration of the workers or designated limits at any time exceeds background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop work immediately and correct the situation.

3.2.13 Air Sampling

Perform sampling of airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101, the Contractor's air monitoring plan and as specified herein. Sampling performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101 must be performed by the PQP. Sampling performed for

environmental and quality control reasons must be performed by the PQP. Unless otherwise specified, use NIOSH Method 7400 for sampling and analysis. Monitoring may be duplicated by the Government at the discretion of the Contracting Officer. If the air sampling results obtained by the Government differ from those results obtained by the Contractor, the Government will determine which results predominate. Results of breathing zone samples must be posted at the job site and made available to the Contracting Officer. Submit all documentation regarding initial exposure assessments, negative exposure assessments, and air-monitoring results.

3.2.13.1 Sampling Prior to Asbestos Work

Provide area air sampling and establish the baseline one day prior to the masking and sealing operations for each demolition or removal site. Establish the background by performing area sampling in similar but uncontaminated sites in the building.

3.2.13.2 Sampling During Asbestos Work

The PQP must provide personal and area sampling as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.1101 and governing environmental regulations. Breathing zone samples must be taken for at least 25 percent of the workers in each shift, or a minimum of two, whichever is greater. Air sample fiber counting must be completed and results provided within 24-hours (breathing zone samples), and 8 hours (environmental/clearance monitoring) after completion of a sampling period. In addition, provided the same type of work is being performed, provide area sampling at least once every work shift close to the work inside the enclosure, outside the clean room entrance to the enclosure, and at the exhaust opening of the local exhaust system. If sampling outside the enclosure shows airborne levels have exceeded background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop all work, correct the condition(s) causing the increase, and notify the Contracting Officer immediately. Where alternate methods are used, perform personal and area air sampling at locations and frequencies that will accurately characterize the evolving airborne asbestos levels. The written results must be signed by testing laboratory analyst, testing laboratory principal and the Contractor's PQP. The air sampling results must be documented on a Contractor's daily air monitoring log.

3.2.13.3 Final Clearance Requirements, NIOSH PCM Method

For PCM sampling and analysis using NIOSH NMAM Method 7400, the fiber concentration inside the abated regulated area, for each airborne sample, must be less than 0.01 f/cc. The abatement inside the regulated area is considered complete when every PCM final clearance sample is below the clearance limit. If any sample result is greater than 0.01 total f/cc, the asbestos fiber concentration (asbestos f/cc) must be confirmed from that same filter using NIOSH NMAM Method 7402 (TEM) at Contractor's expense. If any confirmation sample result is greater than 0.01 asbestos f/cc, abatement is incomplete and cleaning must be repeated at the Contractor's expense. Upon completion of any required recleaning, resampling with results to meet the above clearance criteria must be done at the Contractor's expense.

3.2.13.4 Final Clearance Requirements, EPA TEM Method

For EPA TEM sampling and analysis, using the EPA Method specified in 40 CFR 763, abatement inside the regulated area is considered complete

when the arithmetic mean asbestos concentration of the five inside samples is less than or equal to 70 structures per square millimeter (70 S/mm). When the arithmetic mean is greater than 70 S/mm, the three blank samples must be analyzed. If the three blank samples are greater than 70 S/mm, resampling must be done. If less than 70 S/mm, the five outside samples must be analyzed and a Z-test analysis performed. When the Z-test results are less than 1.65, the decontamination must be considered complete. If the Z-test results are more than 1.65, the abatement is incomplete and cleaning must be repeated. Upon completion of any required recleaning, resampling with results to meet the above clearance criteria must be done at the Contractor's expense.

3.2.13.5 Sampling After Final Clean-Up (Clearance Sampling)

Provide area sampling of asbestos fibers using aggressive air sampling techniques as defined in the EPA 560/5-85-024 and establish an airborne asbestos concentration of less than 0.01 fiber per cubic centimeter after final clean-up but before removal of the enclosure or the asbestos work control area. After final cleanup and the asbestos control area is dry but prior to clearance sampling, the PQP and GC must perform a visual inspection in accordance with ASTM E1368 to ensure that the asbestos control and work area is free of any accumulations of dirt, dust, or debris. Prepare a written report signed and dated by the PQP documenting that the asbestos control area is free of dust, dirt, and debris and all waste has been removed. Collect regulated number of clearance samples. Use transmission electron microscopy (TEM) to analyze clearance samples and report the results in accordance with current NIOSH criteria. The asbestos fiber counts from these samples must be less than 0.01 fiber per cubic centimeter or be not greater than the background, whichever is greater. Should any of the final samples indicate a higher value take appropriate actions to re-clean the area and repeat the sampling and TEM analysis at the Contractor's expense.

3.2.13.6 Air Clearance Failure

If clearance sampling results fail to meet the final clearance requirements, pay all costs associated with the required recleaning, resampling, and analysis, until final clearance requirements are met.

3.2.14 Lock-Down

Prior to removal of plastic barriers and after pre-clearance clean up of gross contamination, the PQP must conduct a visual inspection of all areas affected by the removal in accordance with ASTM E1368. Inspect for any visible fibers. Spray apply a post removal (lock-down) encapsulant to ceiling, walls, floors and other areas exposed in the removal area. The exposed area includes but is not limited to plastic barriers, furnishings and articles to be discarded as well as dirty change room, air locks for bag removal and decontamination chambers.

3.2.15 Site Inspection

While performing asbestos engineering control work, the Contractor must be subject to on-site inspection by the Contracting Officer who may be assisted by or represented by safety or industrial hygiene personnel. If the work is found to be in violation of this specification, the Contracting Officer or his representative will issue a stop work order to be in effect immediately and until the violation is resolved. All related costs including standby time required to resolve the violation must be at

the Contractor's expense.

3.3 CLEAN-UP AND DISPOSAL

3.3.1 Housekeeping

Essential parts of asbestos dust control are housekeeping and clean-up procedures. Maintain surfaces of the asbestos control area free of accumulations of asbestos fibers. Give meticulous attention to restricting the spread of dust and debris; keep waste from being distributed over the general area. Use HEPA filtered vacuum cleaners. DO NOT BLOW DOWN THE SPACE WITH COMPRESSED AIR. When asbestos removal is complete, all asbestos waste is removed from the work-site, and final clean-up is completed, the Contracting Officer will attest that the area is safe before the signs can be removed. After final clean-up and acceptable airborne concentrations are attained but before the HEPA unit is turned off and the enclosure removed, remove all pre-filters on the building HVAC system and provide new pre-filters. Dispose of filters as asbestos contaminated materials. Reestablish HVAC mechanical, and electrical systems in proper working order. The Contracting Officer will visually inspect all surfaces within the enclosure for residual material or accumulated dust or debris. The Contractor must re-clean all areas showing dust or residual materials. If re-cleaning is required, air sample and establish an acceptable asbestos airborne concentration after re-cleaning. The Contracting Officer must agree that the area is safe in writing before unrestricted entry will be permitted. The Government must have the option to perform monitoring to determine if the areas are safe before entry is permitted.

3.3.2 Title to Materials

All waste materials, except as specified otherwise, become the property of the Contractor and must be disposed of as specified in applicable local, State, and Federal regulations and herein.

3.3.3 Disposal of Asbestos

3.3.3.1 Procedure for Disposal

Coordinate all waste disposal manifests with the Contracting Officer. Collect asbestos waste, contaminated waste water filters, asbestos contaminated water, scrap, debris, bags, containers, equipment, and asbestos contaminated clothing which may produce airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers and place in sealed fiber-proof, waterproof, non-returnable containers (e.g. double plastic bags 6 mils thick, cartons, drums or cans). Wastes within the containers must be adequately wet in accordance with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M. Affix a warning and Department of Transportation (DOT) label to each container including the bags or use at least 6 mils thick bags with the approved warnings and DOT labeling preprinted on the bag. Clearly indicate on outside of each container the name of waste generator and location at which the waste was generated. Prevent contamination of transport vehicle (especially if transport vehicle is a rented truck likely to be used in the future for non-asbestos purposes). These precautions include lining the vehicle cargo area with plastic sheeting (similar to work area enclosure) and thorough cleaning of the cargo area after transport and unloading of asbestos debris is complete. Dispose of waste asbestos material at an Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) or State-approved asbestos landfill off Government property. For temporary storage, store sealed impermeable bags in

asbestos waste drums or skids. An area for interim storage of asbestos waste-containing drums or skids will be assigned by the Contracting Officer or their authorized representative. Comply with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, State, regional, and local standards for hauling and disposal. Sealed plastic bags may be dumped from drums into the burial site unless the bags have been broken or damaged. Damaged bags must remain in the drum and the entire contaminated drum must be buried. Uncontaminated drums may be recycled. Workers unloading sealed drums must wear appropriate respirators and personal protective equipment when handling asbestos materials at disposal site.

3.3.3.2 Asbestos Disposal Quantity Report

Direct the PQP to record and report, to the Contracting Officer, the amount of asbestos containing material removed and released for disposal. Deliver the report for the previous day at the beginning of each day shift with amounts of material removed during the previous day reported in linear feet or square feet as described initially in this specification and in cubic feet for the amount of asbestos containing material released for disposal.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 83 00

LEAD REMEDIATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY PROFESSIONALS (ASSP)

ASSP Z9.2 (2018) Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Ventilation Systems

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E1727 (2016) Standard Practice for Field Collection of Soil Samples for Subsequent Lead Determination

ASTM E1728 (2016) Collection of Settled Dust Samples Using Wipe Sampling Methods for Subsequent Lead Determination

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 701 (2019) Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1 (2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1926.21 Safety Training and Education

29 CFR 1926.33 Access to Employee Exposure and Medical Records

29 CFR 1926.55 Gases, Vapors, Fumes, Dusts, and Mists

29 CFR 1926.59 Hazard Communication

29 CFR 1926.62 Lead

29 CFR 1926.65 Hazardous Waste Operations and Emergency Response

29 CFR 1926.103 Respiratory Protection

29 CFR 1926.1126 Chromium

29 CFR 1926.1127	Cadmium
40 CFR 260	Hazardous Waste Management System: General
40 CFR 261	Identification and Listing of Hazardous Waste
40 CFR 262	Standards Applicable to Generators of Hazardous Waste
40 CFR 263	Standards Applicable to Transporters of Hazardous Waste
40 CFR 264	Standards for Owners and Operators of Hazardous Waste Treatment, Storage, and Disposal Facilities
40 CFR 265	Interim Status Standards for Owners and Operators of Hazardous Waste Treatment, Storage, and Disposal Facilities
40 CFR 268	Land Disposal Restrictions
40 CFR 745	Lead-Based Paint Poisoning Prevention in Certain Residential Structures
49 CFR 172	Hazardous Materials Table, Special Provisions, Hazardous Materials Communications, Emergency Response Information, and Training Requirements
49 CFR 178	Specifications for Packagings

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 586	(2009; Reprint Dec 2017) UL Standard for Safety High-Efficiency Particulate, Air Filter Units
--------	---

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Abatement

Measures defined in 40 CFR 745, Section 223, designed to permanently eliminate lead-based paint hazards.

1.2.2 Action Level

Employee exposure, without regard to use of respirators, to an airborne concentration of lead of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air averaged over an 8-hour period; to an airborne concentration of cadmium of 2.5 micrograms per cubic meter of air averaged over an 8-hour period; to an airborne concentration of chromium (VI) of 2.5 micrograms per cubic meter of air averaged over an 8-hour period.

1.2.3 Area Sampling

Sampling of lead, cadmium, chromium concentrations within the lead,

cadmium, chromium control area and inside the physical boundaries which is representative of the airborne lead, cadmium, chromium concentrations but is not collected in the breathing zone of personnel (approximately 5 to 6 feet above the floor).

1.2.4 Cadmium Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL)

Five micrograms per cubic meter of air as an 8-hour time weighted average as determined by 29 CFR 1926.1127. If an employee is exposed for more than 8 hours in a work day, determine the PEL by the following formula:

$$\text{PEL (micrograms/cubic meter of air)} = 40/\text{No. hrs worked per day}$$

1.2.5 Certified Industrial Hygienist (CIH)

As used in this section refers to a person retained by the Contractor who is certified as an industrial hygienist and who is trained in the recognition and control of lead, cadmium and chromium hazards in accordance with current federal, State, and local regulations. CIH must be certified for comprehensive practice by the American Board of Industrial Hygiene. The Certified Industrial Hygienist must be independent of the Contractor and must have no employee or employer relationship which could constitute a conflict of interest.

1.2.6 Chromium Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL)

Five micrograms per cubic meter of air as an 8-hour time weighted average as determined by 29 CFR 1926.1126. If an employee is exposed for more than 8 hours in a work day, determine the PEL by the following formula:

$$\text{PEL (micrograms/cubic meter of air)} = 40/\text{No. hrs worked per day}$$

1.2.7 Competent Person (CP)

As used in this section, refers to a person employed by the Contractor who is trained in the recognition and control of lead, cadmium and chromium hazards in accordance with current federal, State, and local regulations and has the authority to take prompt corrective actions to control the lead, cadmium and chromium hazard. The Contractor may provide more than one CP as required to supervise and monitor the work. The CP must be a Certified Industrial Hygienist (CIH) certified by the American Board of Industrial Hygiene or a Certified Safety Professional (CSP) certified by the Board of Certified Safety Professionals or a licensed lead-based paint abatement Supervisor/Project Designer in the State of New Mexico.

1.2.8 Contaminated Room

Refers to a room for removal of contaminated personal protective equipment (PPE).

1.2.9 Decontamination Shower Facility

That facility that encompasses a clean clothing storage room, and a contaminated clothing storage and disposal rooms, with a shower facility in between.

1.2.10 Deleading

Activities conducted by a person who offers to eliminate lead-based paint

or lead-based paint hazards or paints containing cadmium/chromium or to plan such activities in commercial buildings, bridges or other structures.

1.2.11 Eight-Hour Time Weighted Average (TWA)

Airborne concentration of lead, cadmium, chromium to which an employee is exposed, averaged over an 8-hour workday as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127.

1.2.12 High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) Filter Equipment

HEPA filtered vacuuming equipment with a UL 586 filter system capable of collecting and retaining lead, cadmium, chromium-contaminated particulate. A high efficiency particulate filter demonstrates at least 99.97 percent efficiency against 0.3 micron or larger size particles.

1.2.13 Lead

Metallic lead, inorganic lead compounds, and organic lead soaps. Excludes other forms of organic lead compounds. The use of the term Lead in this section also refers to paints which contain detectable concentrations of Cadmium and Chromium. For the purposes of the section lead-based paint (LBP) and paint with lead (PWL) also contains cadmium and chromium.

1.2.14 Lead-Based Paint (LBP)

Paint or other surface coating that contains lead in excess of 1.0 milligrams per centimeter squared or 0.5 percent by weight.

1.2.15 Lead-Based Paint Activities

In the case of target housing or child occupied facilities, lead-based paint activities include; a lead-based paint inspection, a risk assessment, or abatement of lead-based paint hazards.

1.2.16 Lead-Based Paint Hazards

Paint-lead hazard, dust-lead hazard or soil-lead hazard as identified in 40 CFR 745, Section 65. Any condition that causes exposure to lead from lead-contaminated dust, lead-contaminated soil, lead-based paint that is deteriorated or present in accessible surfaces, friction surfaces, or impact surfaces that would result in adverse human health effects.

1.2.17 Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Control Area

A system of control methods to prevent the spread of lead, cadmium, chromium dust, paint chips or debris to adjacent areas that may include temporary containment, floor or ground cover protection, physical boundaries, and warning signs to prevent unauthorized entry of personnel. HEPA filtered local exhaust equipment may be used as engineering controls to further reduce personnel exposures or building/outdoor environmental contamination.

1.2.18 Lead Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL)

Fifty micrograms per cubic meter of air as an 8-hour time weighted average as determined by 29 CFR 1926.62. If an employee is exposed for more than 8-hours in a work day, determine the PEL by the following formula:

PEL (micrograms/cubic meter of air) = 400/No. hrs worked per day

1.2.19 Material Containing Lead/Paint with Lead (MCL/PWL)

Any material, including paint, which contains lead as determined by the testing laboratory using a valid test method. The requirements of this section does not apply if no detectable levels of lead are found using a quantitative method for analyzing paint or MCL using laboratory instruments with specified limits of detection (usually 0.01 percent). An X-Ray Fluorescence (XRF) instrument is not considered a valid test method.

1.2.20 Personal Sampling

Sampling of airborne lead, cadmium, chromium concentrations within the breathing zone of an employee to determine the 8-hour time weighted average concentration in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127. Samples must be representative of the employees' work tasks. Breathing zone must be considered an area within a hemisphere, forward of the shoulders, with a radius of 6 to 9 inches and centered at the nose or mouth of an employee.

1.2.21 Physical Boundary

Area physically roped or partitioned off around lead, cadmium, chromium control area to limit unauthorized entry of personnel.

1.3 DESCRIPTION

Construction activities impacting PWL or material containing lead, which are covered by this specification, include the demolition or removal of material containing lead, cadmium, chromium in all condition, as indicated by the 19-105 Kirtland Building 923 Report, 19-105 Kirtland Building 954 Report, and the 19-105 Kirtland Building 960 Report. The work covered by this section includes work tasks and the precautions specified in this section for the protection of building occupants and the environment during and after the performance of the hazard abatement activities.

1.3.1 Protection of Existing Areas to Remain

Project work including, but not limited to, lead, cadmium, chromium hazard abatement work, storage, transportation, and disposal must be performed without damaging or contaminating adjacent work and areas. Where such work or areas are damaged or contaminated, restore work and areas to the original condition.

1.3.2 Coordination with Other Work

Coordinate with work being performed in adjacent areas to ensure there are no exposure issues. Explain coordination procedures in the Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan and describe how the Contractor will prevent lead, cadmium and chromium exposure to other contractors and Government personnel performing work unrelated to lead, cadmium and chromium activities.

1.3.3 Sampling and Analysis

Submit a log of the analytical results from sampling conducted during the abatement. Keep the log of results current with project activities and brief the results to the Contracting Officer as analytical results are

reported.

1.3.3.1 Dust Wipe Materials, Sampling and Analysis

Sampling must conform to ASTM E1728.

1.3.3.2 Soil Sampling and Analysis

Sampling must conform to ASTM E1727.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Competent Person Qualifications; G

Training Certification; G

Medical Examinations; G

Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Waste Management Plan; G, S

Occupant Protection Plan; G

Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan; G, S

Written Evidence of TSD Approval; G

SD-03 Product Data

Respirators; G

Vacuum Filters; G

Negative Air Pressure System; G

Materials and Equipment; G

Expendable Supplies; G

Local Exhaust Equipment; G

Pressure Differential Automatic Recording Instrument; G

Pressure Differential Log; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Sampling and Analysis; G, S

Environmental Assessment Data Report; G, S

Sampling Results; G, S

Pressure Differential Recordings For Local Exhaust System; G

SD-07 Certificates

Testing Laboratory; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Hazardous Waste Manifest; G, S

Turn-In Documents or Weight Tickets; G, S

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Qualifications

1.5.1.1 Competent Person (CP)

Submit name, address, and telephone number of the CP selected to perform responsibilities specified in paragraph COMPETENT PERSON (CP) RESPONSIBILITIES. Provide documented construction project-related experience with implementation of OSHA's Lead in Construction standard (29 CFR 1926.62), Chromium standard (29 CFR 1926.1126), Cadmium standard (29 CFR 1926.1127) which shows ability to assess occupational and environmental exposure to lead, cadmium, chromium; experience with the use of respirators, personal protective equipment and other exposure reduction methods to protect employee health. Demonstrate a minimum of 3 years' experience implementing OSHA's Lead in Construction standard (29 CFR 1926.62), Chromium standard (29 CFR 1926.1126), and Cadmium standard (29 CFR 1926.1127). Submit proper documentation that the CP is trained, licensed, and certified in accordance with federal, State of New Mexico, and local laws.

1.5.1.2 Training Certification

Submit a certificate for each worker and supervisor, signed and dated by the accredited training provider, stating that the employee has received the required lead, cadmium and chromium training specified in 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127, 40 CFR 745, and is certified to perform or supervise deleading, lead removal or demolition activities in the State of New Mexico.

1.5.1.3 Testing Laboratory

Submit the name, address, and telephone number of the testing laboratory selected to perform the air analysis, testing, and reporting of airborne concentrations of lead, cadmium and chromium. Use a laboratory participating in the EPA National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program (NLLAP) by being accredited by either the American Association for Laboratory Accreditation (A2LA) or the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) and that is successfully participating in the Environmental Lead Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program to perform sample analysis. Laboratories selected to perform blood lead analysis must be OSHA approved.

1.5.2 Requirements

1.5.2.1 Competent Person (CP) Responsibilities

- a. Verify training meets all federal, State, and local requirements.
- b. Review and approve Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan for conformance to the applicable referenced standards.
- c. Continuously inspect LBP/PWL or MCL work for conformance with the approved plan.
- d. Perform (or oversee performance of) air sampling. Recommend upgrades or downgrades (whichever is appropriate based on exposure) on the use of PPE (respirators included) and engineering controls.
- e. Ensure work is performed in strict accordance with specifications at all times.
- f. Control work to prevent hazardous exposure to human beings and to the environment at all times.
- g. Supervise final cleaning of the lead, cadmium, chromium control area, take clearance wipe samples if necessary; review clearance sample results and make recommendations for further cleaning.
- h. Certify the conditions of the work as called for elsewhere in this specification.

1.5.2.2 Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan

Submit a detailed job-specific plan of the work procedures to be used in the disturbance of lead, cadmium and chromium, LBP/PWL or MCL. Include a description of equipment and materials, work practices, controls and job responsibilities for each activity from which lead, cadmium, chromium is emitted. Include in the plan, eating, drinking, smoking, hygiene facilities and sanitary procedures, interface of trades, sequencing of lead, cadmium, chromium related work, collected waste water and dust containing lead, cadmium, chromium and debris, air sampling, respirators, personal protective equipment, and a detailed description of the method of containment of the operation to ensure that lead, cadmium, chromium is not released outside of the lead, cadmium, chromium control area. Include site preparation, cleanup and clearance procedures. Include occupational and environmental sampling, training and strategy, sampling and analysis strategy and methodology, frequency of sampling, duration of sampling, and qualifications of sampling personnel in the air sampling portion of the plan. Include a description of arrangements made among contractors on multicontractor worksites to inform affected employees and to clarify responsibilities to control exposures.

1.5.2.3 Environmental Assessment Data Report

If initial monitoring is necessary, submit environmental [sampling results](#) to the Contracting Officer within three working days of collection, signed by the testing laboratory employee performing the analysis, the employee that performed the sampling, and the CP.

In order to reduce the full implementation of [29 CFR 1926.62](#), [29 CFR 1926.1126](#), [29 CFR 1926.1127](#) the Contractor must provide

documentation. Submit a report that supports the determination to reduce full implementation of the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127 and supporting the Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan.

- a. The initial monitoring must represent each job classification, or if working conditions are similar to previous jobs by the same employer, provide previously collected exposure data that can be used to estimate worker exposures per 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127. The data must represent the worker's regular daily exposure to lead, cadmium, chromium for stated work.
- b. Submit worker exposure data gathered during the task based trigger operations of 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127 with a complete process description. This includes manual demolition, manual scraping, manual sanding, heat gun, power tool cleaning, rivet busting, cleanup of dry expendable abrasives, abrasive blast enclosure removal, abrasive blasting, welding, cutting and torch burning where lead, cadmium and chromium containing coatings are present.
- c. The initial assessment must determine the requirement for further monitoring and the need to fully implement the control and protective requirements including the lead, cadmium, chromium compliance plan per 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127.

1.5.2.4 Medical Examinations

Submit pre-work blood lead levels and post-work blood lead levels for all workers performing lead, cadmium, chromium activities during the execution of the work. Initial medical surveillance as required by 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127 must be made available to all employees exposed to lead, cadmium, chromium at any time (one day) above the action level. Full medical surveillance must be made available to all employees on an annual basis who are or may be exposed to lead, cadmium and chromium in excess of the action level for more than 30 days a year or as required by 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127. Adequate records must show that employees meet the medical surveillance requirements of 29 CFR 1926.33, 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127 and 29 CFR 1926.103. Provide medical surveillance to all personnel exposed to lead, cadmium, chromium as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127. Maintain complete and accurate medical records of employees for the duration of employment plus 30 years.

1.5.2.5 Training

Train each employee performing work that disturbs lead, cadmium, chromium, who performs LBP/MCL/PWL disposal, and air sampling operations prior to the time of initial job assignment and annually thereafter, in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.21, 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127, 40 CFR 745 and State of New Mexico and local regulations where appropriate.

1.5.2.6 Respiratory Protection Program

- a. Provide each employee required to wear a respirator a respirator fit test at the time of initial fitting and at least annually thereafter as required by 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127.
- b. Establish and implement a respiratory protection program as required by 29 CFR 1926.103, 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127

and 29 CFR 1926.55.

1.5.2.7 Hazard Communication Program

Establish and implement a Hazard Communication Program as required by 29 CFR 1926.59.

1.5.2.8 Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Waste Management

The Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Waste Management Plan must comply with applicable requirements of federal, State, and local hazardous waste regulations and address:

- a. Identification and classification of wastes associated with the work.
- b. Names and qualifications of each contractor that will be transporting, storing, treating, and disposing of the wastes. Include the facility location and operator and a 24-hour point of contact. Furnish two copies of State permits, manifests, and USEPA Identification numbers.
- c. Names and qualifications (experience and training) of personnel who will be working on-site with hazardous wastes.
- d. List of waste handling equipment to be used in performing the work, to include cleaning, volume reduction, and transport equipment.
- e. Spill prevention, containment, and cleanup contingency measures including a health and safety plan to be implemented in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.65.
- f. Work plan and schedule for waste containment, removal and disposal. Proper containment of the waste includes using acceptable waste containers (e.g., 55-gallon drums) as well as proper marking/labeling of the containers. Clean up and containerize wastes daily.
- g. Include any process that may alter or treat waste rendering a hazardous waste nonhazardous.
- h. Unit cost for hazardous waste disposal according to this plan.

1.5.2.9 Environmental, Safety and Health Compliance

In addition to the detailed requirements of this specification, comply with laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations of federal, State, and local authorities regarding lead, cadmium and chromium. Comply with the applicable requirements of the current issue of 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127, and EM 385-1-1. Submit matters regarding interpretation of standards to the Contracting Officer for resolution before starting work. Where specification requirements and the referenced documents vary, the most stringent requirements apply.

1.5.3 Pressure Differential Recordings for Local Exhaust System

Provide a local exhaust system that creates a negative pressure of at least 0.02 inch of water relative to the pressure external to the enclosure and operate it continuously, 24 hours a day, until the temporary enclosure of the lead, cadmium, chromium control area is removed. Submit pressure differential recordings for each work day to the PQP and GC for review and to the Contracting Officer within 24 hours from the end of each work day.

1.5.4 Occupant Protection Plan

The certified project designer must develop and implement an Occupant Protection Plan describing the measures and management procedures to be taken during lead, cadmium and chromium hazard abatement activities to protect the building occupants/building facilities and the outside environment from exposure to any lead, cadmium and chromium contamination while lead, cadmium and chromium hazard abatement activities are performed.

1.5.5 Pre-Construction Conference

Along with the CP, meet with the Contracting Officer to discuss in detail the Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Waste Management Plan and the Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan, including procedures and precautions for the work.

1.6 EQUIPMENT

1.6.1 Respirators

Furnish appropriate respirators approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), Department of Health and Human Services, for use in atmospheres containing lead, cadmium and chromium dust, fume and mist. Respirators must comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127.

1.6.2 Special Protective Clothing

Personnel exposed to lead, cadmium, chromium contaminated dust must wear proper disposable protective whole body clothing, head covering, gloves, eye, and foot coverings as required by 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127. Furnish proper disposable plastic or rubber gloves to protect hands. Reduce the level of protection only after obtaining approval from the CP.

1.6.3 Rental Equipment Notification

If rental equipment is to be used during PWL or MCL handling and disposal, notify the rental agency in writing concerning the intended use of the equipment.

1.6.4 Vacuum Filters

UL 586 labeled HEPA filters.

1.6.5 Equipment for Government Personnel

Furnish the Contracting Officer with two complete sets of personal protective equipment (PPE) daily, as required herein, for entry into and inspection of the lead, cadmium and chromium removal work within the lead, cadmium and chromium controlled area. Personal protective equipment must include disposable whole body covering, including appropriate foot, head, eye, and hand protection. PPE remains the property of the Contractor. The Government will provide respiratory protection for the Contracting Officer.

1.6.6 Abrasive Removal Equipment

The use of powered machine for vibrating, sanding, grinding, or abrasive blasting is prohibited unless equipped with local exhaust ventilation systems equipped with high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters.

1.6.7 Negative Air Pressure System

1.6.7.1 Minimum Requirements

Do not proceed with work in the area until containment is set up and HEPA filtration systems are in place. The negative air pressure system must meet the requirements of ASSP Z9.2 including approved HEPA filters in accordance with UL 586. Negative air pressure equipment must be equipped with new HEPA filters, and be sufficient to maintain a minimum pressure differential of minus 0.02 inch of water column relative to adjacent, unsealed areas. Negative air pressure system minimum requirements are listed as follows:

- a. The unit must be capable of delivering its rated volume of air with a clean first stage filter, an intermediate filter and a primary HEPA filter in place.
- b. The HEPA filter must be certified as being capable of trapping and retaining mono-disperse particles as small as 0.3 micrometers at a minimum efficiency of 99.97 percent.
- c. The unit must be capable of continuing to deliver no less than 70 percent of rated capacity when the HEPA filter is 70 percent full or measures 2.5 inches of water static pressure differential on a magnehelic gauge.
- d. Equip the unit with a manometer-type negative pressure differential monitor with minor scale division of 0.02 inch of water and accuracy within plus or minus 1.0 percent. The manometer must be calibrated daily as recommended by the manufacturer.
- e. Equip the unit with a means for the operator to easily interpret the readings in terms of the volumetric flow rate of air per minute moving through the machine at any given moment.
- f. Equip the unit with an electronic mechanism that automatically shuts the machine off in the event of a filter breach or absence of a filter.
- g. Equip the unit with an audible horn that sounds an alarm when the machine has shut itself off.
- h. Equip the unit with an automatic safety mechanism that prevents a worker from improperly inserting the main HEPA filter.

1.6.7.2 Auxiliary Generator

Provide an auxiliary generator with capacity to power a minimum of 50 percent of the negative air machines at any time during the work. When power fails, the generator controls must automatically start the generator and switch the negative air pressure system machines to generator power. The generator must not present a carbon monoxide hazard to workers.

1.6.8 Vacuum Systems

Vacuum systems must be suitably sized for the project, and filters must be capable of trapping and retaining all mono-disperse particles as small as 0.3 micrometers (mean aerodynamic diameter) at a minimum efficiency of 99.97 percent. Properly dispose of used filters that are being replaced.

1.6.9 Heat Blower Guns

Heat blower guns must be flameless, electrical, paint-softener type with controls to limit temperature to 1,100 degrees F. Heat blower must be (grounded) 120 volts ac, and must be equipped with cone, fan, glass protector and spoon reflector nozzles.

1.7 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

1.7.1 Protection of Existing Work to Remain

Perform work without damage or contamination of adjacent areas. Where existing work is damaged or contaminated, restore work to its original condition or better as determined by the Contracting Officer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

Keep materials and equipment needed to complete the project available and on the site. Submit a description of the materials and equipment required; including Safety Data Sheets (SDSs) for material brought onsite to perform the work.

2.1.1 Expendable Supplies

Submit a description of the expendable supplies required.

2.1.1.1 Polyethylene Bags

Disposable bags must be polyethylene plastic and be a minimum of 6 mils thick (4 mils thick if double bags are used) or any other thick plastic material shown to demonstrate at least equivalent performance; and capable of being made leak-tight. Leak-tight means that solids, liquids or dust cannot escape or spill out.

2.1.1.2 Polyethylene Leak-tight Wrapping

Wrapping used to wrap lead, cadmium, chromium contaminated debris must be polyethylene plastic that is a minimum of 6 mils thick or any other thick plastic material shown to demonstrate at least equivalent performance.

2.1.1.3 Polyethylene Sheeting

Sheeting must be polyethylene plastic with a minimum thickness of 6 mil, or any other thick plastic material shown to demonstrate at least equivalent performance; and be provided in the largest sheet size reasonably accommodated by the project to minimize the number of seams. Where the project location constitutes an out of the ordinary potential for fire, or where unusual fire hazards cannot be eliminated, provide flame-resistant polyethylene sheets which conform to the requirements of NFPA 701.

2.1.1.4 Tape and Adhesive Spray

Tape and adhesive must be capable of sealing joints between polyethylene sheets and for attachment of polyethylene sheets to adjacent surfaces. After dry application, tape or adhesive must retain adhesion when exposed to wet conditions, including amended water. Tape must be minimum 2 inches wide, industrial strength.

2.1.1.5 Containers

When used, containers must be leak-tight and be labeled in accordance with EPA, DOT and OSHA standards.

2.1.1.6 Chemical Paint Strippers

Chemical paint strippers must not contain methylene chloride and be formulated to prevent stain, discoloration, or raising of the substrate materials.

2.1.1.7 Chemical Paint Stripper Neutralizer

Neutralizers for paint strippers must be compatible with the substrate and suitable for use with the chemical stripper that has been applied to the surface.

2.1.1.8 Detergents and Cleaners

Detergents or cleaning agents must not contain trisodium phosphate and have demonstrated effectiveness in lead, cadmium and chromium control work using cleaning techniques.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

3.1.1 Protection

3.1.1.1 Notification

- a. Notify the Contracting Officer 20 days prior to the start of any lead, cadmium and chromium work.

3.1.1.2 Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Control Area

- a. Physical Boundary - Provide physical boundaries around the lead, cadmium, chromium control area by roping off the area designated in the work plan or providing curtains, portable partitions or other enclosures to ensure that lead, cadmium and chromium will not escape outside of the lead, cadmium and chromium control area. Prohibit the general public from accessing the lead, cadmium, chromium control areas.
- b. Warning Signs - Provide warning signs at approaches to lead, cadmium, chromium control areas. Locate signs at such a distance that personnel may read the sign and take the necessary precautions before entering the area. Signs must comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62.

3.1.1.3 Furnishings

Furniture and equipment will remain in the building. Protect and cover furnishings or remove furnishings from the work area and store in a location approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.1.1.4 Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

Shut down, lock out, and isolate HVAC systems that supply, exhaust, or pass through the lead, cadmium, chromium control areas. Seal intake and exhaust vents in the lead, cadmium, chromium control area with 6 mil plastic sheet and tape. Seal seams in HVAC components that pass through the lead, cadmium, chromium control area. Provide temporary HVAC system for areas in which HVAC has been shut down outside the lead, cadmium, chromium control area.

3.1.1.5 Local Exhaust System

Provide a local exhaust system in the lead, cadmium, chromium control area in accordance with ASSP Z9.2, 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126 and 29 CFR 1926.1127 that will provide at least 4 air changes per hour inside of the negative pressure enclosure. Local exhaust equipment must be operated 24 hours per day, until the lead, cadmium, chromium control area is removed and must be leak proof to the filter and equipped with HEPA filters. Maintain a minimum pressure differential in the lead, cadmium, chromium control area of minus 0.02 inch of water column relative to adjacent, unsealed areas. Provide continuous 24-hour per day monitoring of the pressure differential with a pressure differential automatic recording instrument. The building ventilation system must not be used as the local exhaust system for the lead, cadmium, chromium control area. Filters on exhaust equipment must conform to ASSP Z9.2 and UL 586. Terminate the local exhaust system out of doors and remote from any public access or ventilation system intakes.

3.1.1.6 Negative Air Pressure System Containment

- a. Operate the negative air pressure systems to provide at least 4 air changes per hour inside the containment. Operate the local exhaust unit equipment continuously until the containment is removed. Smoke test the negative air pressure system for leaks at the beginning of each shift. The certified supervisor is responsible to continuously monitor and keep a pressure differential log with an automatic manometric recording instrument. Notify the Contracting Officer immediately if the pressure differential falls below the prescribed minimum. Submit the continuously monitored pressure differential log, as specified. Do not use the building ventilation system as the local exhaust system. Terminate the local exhaust system out of doors unless the Contracting Officer allows an alternate arrangement. All filters must be new at the beginning of the project and be periodically changed as necessary to maintain specified pressure differential and disposed of as lead, cadmium and chromium contaminated waste.
- b. Discontinuing Negative Air Pressure System. Operate the negative air pressure system continuously during abatement activities unless otherwise authorized by the Contracting Officer. At the completion of the project, units must be run until full cleanup has been completed. Dismantling of the negative air pressure systems must be as presented in the Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan. Seal the HEPA filter

machine intakes with polyethylene to prevent environmental contamination.

3.1.1.7 Decontamination Shower Facility

Provide clean and contaminated change rooms and shower facilities in accordance with this specification and 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127.

3.1.1.8 Eye Wash Station

Provide suitable facilities within the work area for quick drenching or flushing of the eyes where eyes may be exposed to injurious corrosive materials.

3.1.1.9 Mechanical Ventilation System

- a. Use adequate ventilation to control personnel exposure to lead, cadmium and chromium in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127. To the extent feasible, use local exhaust ventilation or other collection systems, approved by the CP. Evaluate and maintain local exhaust ventilation systems in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127.
- b. Vent local exhaust outside the building and away from building ventilation intakes or ensure system is connected to HEPA filters.
- c. Use locally exhausted, power actuated tools or manual hand tools.

3.1.1.10 Personnel Protection

Personnel must wear and use protective clothing and equipment as specified herein. Eating, smoking, or drinking or application of cosmetics is not permitted in the lead, cadmium, chromium control area. No one will be permitted in the lead, cadmium, chromium control area unless they have been appropriately trained and provided with protective equipment.

3.2 ERECTION

3.2.1 Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Control Area Requirements

Establish a lead, cadmium, chromium control area by completely establishing barriers and physical boundaries around the area or structure where PWL or MCL removal operations will be performed.

Full containment - Contain removal operations by the use of a negative pressure enclosure system with decontamination facilities and with HEPA filtered exhaust if required by the CP. For containment areas larger than 1,000 square feet install a minimum of two 18-inch square viewing ports. Locate ports to provide a view of the required work from the exterior of the enclosed contaminated area. Glaze ports with laminated safety glass.

3.3 APPLICATION

3.3.1 Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Work

Perform lead, cadmium, chromium work in accordance with approved Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan. Use procedures and equipment required to limit occupational exposure and environmental contamination with lead,

cadmium, chromium when the work is performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127, and as specified herein. Dispose of all PWL or MCL and associated waste in compliance with federal, State, and local requirements.

3.3.2 Paint with Lead, Cadmium, Chromium or Material Containing Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Removal

Provide methodology for removing lead in the Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan. Select lead, cadmium, and chromium removal processes to minimize contamination of work areas outside the control area with lead, cadmium, chromium contaminated dust or other lead, cadmium, chromium contaminated debris or waste and to ensure that unprotected personnel are not exposed to hazardous concentrations of lead, cadmium, chromium. Describe this removal process in the Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan.

Provide methodology for lead, cadmium, chromium, LBP/PWL removal or abatement/control and processes to minimize contamination of work areas outside the control area with lead, cadmium, chromium contaminated dust or other lead, cadmium, chromium contaminated debris/waste and to ensure that unprotected personnel are not exposed to hazardous concentrations of lead, cadmium, chromium. Describe this lead, cadmium and chromium, LBP/PWL removal/control process in the Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan.

3.3.2.1 Paint with Lead, Cadmium, Chromium or Material Containing Lead, Cadmium, Chromium - Indoor Removal

Perform manual or mechanical removal and thermal cutting in the lead, cadmium, chromium control areas using enclosures, barriers or containments. Collect residue and debris for disposal in accordance with federal, State, and local requirements.

3.3.2.2 Paint with Lead, Cadmium, Chromium or Material Containing Lead, Cadmium, Chromium - Outdoor Removal

Perform outdoor removal as indicated in federal, State, and local regulations and in the Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan. The worksite preparation (barriers or containments) must be job dependent and presented in the Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan.

3.3.3 Personnel Exiting Procedures

Whenever personnel exit the lead, cadmium, chromium controlled area, they must perform the following procedures and must not leave the work place wearing any clothing or equipment worn in the control area:

- a. Vacuum all clothing before entering the contaminated change room.
- b. Remove protective clothing in the contaminated change room and place them in an approved impermeable disposal bag.
- c. Wash hands and face at the site, don appropriate disposable or uncontaminated reusable clothing, move to an appropriate shower facility, shower.
- d. Change to clean clothes prior to leaving the clean clothes storage area.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4.1 Tests

3.4.1.1 Air and Wipe Sampling

Conduct sampling for lead, cadmium, chromium in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127 and as specified herein. Air and wipe sampling must be directed or performed by the CP.

- a. The CP must be on the job site directing the air and wipe sampling and inspecting the PWL or MCL removal work to ensure that the requirements of the contract have been satisfied during the entire PWL or MCL operation.
- b. Collect personal air samples on employees who are anticipated to have the greatest risk of exposure as determined by the CP. In addition, collect air samples on at least twenty-five percent of the work crew or a minimum of two employees, whichever is greater, during each work shift.
- c. Submit results of air samples, signed by the CP, within 72-hours after the air samples are taken.
- d. Conduct area air sampling daily, on each shift in which lead, cadmium and chromium and lead-based paint removal operations are performed, in areas immediately adjacent to the lead, cadmium and chromium control area. Conduct sufficient area monitoring to ensure unprotected personnel are not exposed at or above 30 micrograms of lead per cubic meter of air or 2.5 micrograms of cadmium/chromium per cubic meter of air. If 30 micrograms of lead per cubic meter of air or 2.5 micrograms of cadmium/chromium per cubic meter of air is reached or exceeded, stop work, correct the conditions(s) causing the increased levels. Notify the Contracting Officer immediately. Determine if condition(s) require any further change in work methods. Resume removal work only after the CP and the Contracting Officer give approval.

3.5 CLEANING AND DISPOSAL

3.5.1 Cleanup

Maintain surfaces of the lead, cadmium, chromium control area free of accumulations of dust and debris. Restrict the spread of dust and debris; keep waste from being distributed over the work area. Do not dry sweep or use pressurized air to clean up the area. At the end of each shift and when the lead, cadmium, chromium operation has been completed, clean the controlled area of all visible contamination by vacuuming with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner, wet mopping the area and wet wiping the area as indicated by the Lead, Cadmium, Chromium Compliance Plan. Reclean areas showing dust or debris. After visible dust and debris is removed, wet wipe and HEPA vacuum all surfaces in the controlled area. If adjacent areas become contaminated at any time during the work, clean, visually inspect, and then wipe sample all contaminated areas. The CP must then certify in writing that the area has been cleaned of lead, cadmium and chromium contamination before clearance testing.

3.5.1.1 Clearance Certification

The CP must certify in writing that air samples collected outside the lead, cadmium, chromium control area during paint removal operations are less than 30 micrograms of lead per cubic meter of air and less than 2.5 micrograms of cadmium/chromium per cubic meter of air; the respiratory protection used for the employees was adequate; the work procedures were performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127; and that there were no visible accumulations of material and dust containing lead, cadmium, chromium left in the work site. Do not remove the lead, cadmium, chromium control area or roped off boundary and warning signs prior to the Contracting Officer's acknowledgement of receipt of the CP certification.

Clear the lead, cadmium, chromium control area in industrial facilities of all visible dust and debris.

For lead, cadmium and chromium-based paint hazard abatement work, surface wipe and soil sampling must be conducted and clearance determinations made according to the work practice standards presented in 40 CFR 745.227.

3.5.2 Disposal

- a. Dispose of material, whether hazardous or nonhazardous in accordance with all laws and provisions and all federal, State or local regulations. Ensure all waste is properly characterized. The result of each waste characterization (TCLP for RCRA materials) will dictate disposal requirements.
- b. Contractor is responsible for segregation of waste. Collect lead, cadmium, chromium contaminated waste, scrap, debris, bags, containers, equipment, and lead, cadmium, chromium contaminated clothing that may produce airborne concentrations of lead, cadmium, chromium particles. Label the containers in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62, 29 CFR 1926.1126, 29 CFR 1926.1127 and 40 CFR 261, 40 CFR 262 and corresponding state regulations.
- c. Dispose of lead, cadmium, chromium contaminated material classified as hazardous waste at an EPA or State approved hazardous waste treatment, storage, or disposal facility off Government property.
- d. Accumulate waste materials in U.S. Department of Transportation (49 CFR 178) approved 55 gallon drums or appropriately sized container for smaller volumes. Properly label each drum to identify the type of hazardous material (49 CFR 172). For hazardous waste, the collection container requires marking/labeling in accordance with 40 CFR 262 and corresponding state regulations during the accumulation/collection timeframe. The Contracting Officer or an authorized representative will assign an area for accumulation of waste containers. Coordinate authorized accumulation volumes and time limits with the host installation environmental function.
- e. Handle, store, transport, and dispose lead, cadmium, chromium or lead, cadmium, chromium contaminated waste in accordance with 40 CFR 260, 40 CFR 261, 40 CFR 262, 40 CFR 263, 40 CFR 264, and 40 CFR 265. Comply with land disposal restriction notification requirements as required by 40 CFR 268.
- f. All lead, cadmium, and chromium waste generation, management, and

disposal will be coordinated with the host installation environmental function.

3.5.2.1 Disposal Documentation

Coordinate all disposal or offsite shipments of lead, cadmium, and chromium waste with the host installation environmental function. Submit [written evidence of TSD approval](#) to demonstrate the hazardous waste treatment, storage, or disposal facility (TSD) is approved for lead, cadmium, chromium disposal by the EPA, State or local regulatory agencies. Submit one copy of the completed [hazardous waste manifest](#), signed and dated by the initial transporter in accordance with [40 CFR 262](#). Provide a certificate that the waste was accepted by the disposal facility. Provide [turn-in documents or weight tickets](#) for nonhazardous waste disposal.

3.5.2.2 Payment for Hazardous Waste

Payment for disposal of hazardous and nonhazardous waste will not be made until a signed copy of the manifest from the treatment or disposal facility is received and approved by the Contracting Officer. The manifest must detail and certify the amount of lead, cadmium, chromium containing materials or nonhazardous waste delivered to the treatment or disposal facility.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 03 30 00

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE (ACI)

ACI 117	(2010; Errata 2011) Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials and Commentary
ACI 121R	(2008) Guide for Concrete Construction Quality Systems in Conformance with ISO 9001
ACI 301	(2016) Specifications for Structural Concrete
ACI 302.1R	(2015) Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction
ACI 304.2R	(2017) Guide to Placing Concrete by Pumping Methods
ACI 304R	(2000; R 2009) Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete
ACI 305.1	(2014) Specification for Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 305R	(2010) Guide to Hot Weather Concreting
ACI 306.1	(1990; R 2002) Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 306R	(2016) Guide to Cold Weather Concreting
ACI 308.1	(2011) Specification for Curing Concrete
ACI SP-2	(2007; Abstract: 10th Edition) ACI Manual of Concrete Inspection
ACI SP-15	(2011) Field Reference Manual: Standard Specifications for Structural Concrete ACI 301-05 with Selected ACI References

AMERICAN HARDBOARD ASSOCIATION (AHA)

AHA A135.4	(1995; R 2004) Basic Hardboard
------------	--------------------------------

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.4/D1.4M (2011) Structural Welding Code -
Reinforcing Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A53/A53M (2018) Standard Specification for Pipe,
Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated,
Welded and Seamless

ASTM A184/A184M (2017) Standard Specification for Welded
Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete
Reinforcement

ASTM A615/A615M (2016) Standard Specification for Deformed
and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete
Reinforcement

ASTM A706/A706M (2016) Standard Specification for
Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars
for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A934/A934M (2016) Standard Specification for
Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Steel
Reinforcing Bars

ASTM A970/A970M (2018) Standard Specification for Headed
Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A1044/A1044M (2016a) Standard Specification for Steel
Stud Assemblies for Shear Reinforcement of
Concrete

ASTM A1064/A1064M (2017) Standard Specification for
Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire
Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for
Concrete

ASTM C31/C31M (2019) Standard Practice for Making and
Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field

ASTM C33/C33M (2018) Standard Specification for Concrete
Aggregates

ASTM C39/C39M (2018) Standard Test Method for
Compressive Strength of Cylindrical
Concrete Specimens

ASTM C42/C42M (2020) Standard Test Method for Obtaining
and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams
of Concrete

ASTM C78/C78M (2018) Standard Test Method for Flexural
Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam
with Third-Point Loading)

ASTM C94/C94M (2018) Standard Specification for
Ready-Mixed Concrete

ASTM C138/C138M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Density (Unit Weight), Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete
ASTM C143/C143M	(2015) Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete
ASTM C150/C150M	(2018) Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C172/C172M	(2017) Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete
ASTM C173/C173M	(2016) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method
ASTM C231/C231M	(2017a) Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
ASTM C260/C260M	(2010a; R 2016) Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C311/C311M	(2018) Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Fly Ash or Natural Pozzolans for Use in Portland-Cement Concrete
ASTM C330/C330M	(2017a) Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete
ASTM C494/C494M	(2017) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C552	(2017; E 2018) Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
ASTM C567/C567M	(2014) Determining Density of Structural Lightweight Concrete
ASTM C578	(2018) Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
ASTM C591	(2017/2019) Standard Specification for Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation
ASTM C595/C595M	(2018) Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements
ASTM C618	(2019) Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete
ASTM C803/C803M	(2018) Standard Test Method for Penetration Resistance of Hardened Concrete

ASTM C873/C873M	(2015) Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Concrete Cylinders Cast in Place in Cylindrical Molds
ASTM C900	(2015) Standard Test Method for Pullout Strength of Hardened Concrete
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C989/C989M	(2018a) Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars
ASTM C1012/C1012M	(2018b) Standard Test Method for Length Change of Hydraulic-Cement Mortars Exposed to a Sulfate Solution
ASTM C1017/C1017M	(2013; E 2015) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Use in Producing Flowing Concrete
ASTM C1074	(2011) Standard Practice for Estimating Concrete Strength by the Maturity Method
ASTM C1077	(2017) Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation
ASTM C1107/C1107M	(2017) Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
ASTM C1157/C1157M	(2017) Standard Performance Specification for Hydraulic Cement
ASTM C1218/C1218M	(2017) Standard Test Method for Water-Soluble Chloride in Mortar and Concrete
ASTM C1260	(2014) Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates (Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1293	(2008; R 2015) Standard Test Method for Determination of Length Change of Concrete Due to Alkali-Silica Reaction
ASTM C1567	(2013) Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali-Silica Reactivity of Combinations of Cementitious Materials and Aggregate (Accelerated Mortar-Bar Method)
ASTM C1602/C1602M	(2018) Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete
ASTM C1778	(2016) Standard Guide for Reducing the Risk of Deleterious Alkali-Aggregate Reaction in Concrete

ASTM D412	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers - Tension
ASTM D471	(2016a) Standard Test Method for Rubber Property - Effect of Liquids
ASTM D1751	(2004; E 2013; R 2013) Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
ASTM D1752	(2018) Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber, Cork and Recycled PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction
ASTM D2628	(1991; R 2016) Standard Specification for Preformed Polychloroprene Elastomeric Joint Seals for Concrete Pavements
ASTM D2835	(1989; R 2017) Standard Specification for Lubricant for Installation of Preformed Compression Seals in Concrete Pavements
ASTM D5759	(2012) Characterization of Coal Fly Ash and Clean Coal Combustion Fly Ash for Potential Uses
ASTM D6690	(2015) Standard Specification for Joint and Crack Sealants, Hot Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements
ASTM E96/E96M	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
ASTM E329	(2018) Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection, Testing, or Special Inspection
ASTM E1155	(2014) Standard Test Method for Determining Floor Flatness and Floor Levelness Numbers
ASTM E1643	(2018a) Standard Practice for Selection, Design, Installation, and Inspection of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs
ASTM E1745	(2017) Standard Specification for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs

CONCRETE REINFORCING STEEL INSTITUTE (CRSI)

CRSI 10MSP	(2009; 28th Ed; Errata) Manual of Standard Practice
------------	--

CRSI RB4.1 (2016) Supports for Reinforcement Used in
Concrete

FOREST STEWARDSHIP COUNCIL (FSC)

FSC STD 01 001 (2015) Principles and Criteria for Forest
Stewardship

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST PS 1 (2009) DOC Voluntary Product Standard PS
1-07, Structural Plywood

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

COE CRD-C 513 (1974) Corps of Engineers Specifications
for Rubber Waterstops

COE CRD-C 572 (1974) Corps of Engineers Specifications
for Polyvinylchloride Waterstops

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- a. "Cementitious material" as used herein must include all portland cement, pozzolan, fly ash, and slag cement.
- b. "Exposed to public view" means situated so that it can be seen from eye level from a public location after completion of the building. A public location is accessible to persons not responsible for operation or maintenance of the building.
- c. "Chemical admixtures" are materials in the form of powder or fluids that are added to the concrete to give it certain characteristics not obtainable with plain concrete mixes.
- d. "Supplementary cementing materials" (SCM) include coal fly ash, slag cement, natural or calcined pozzolans, and ultra-fine coal ash when used in such proportions to replace the portland cement that result in improvement to sustainability and durability and reduced cost.
- e. "Design strength" (f'_c) is the specified compressive strength of concrete at time(s) specified in this section to meet structural design criteria.
- f. "Mass Concrete" is any concrete system that approaches a maximum temperature of 158 degrees F within the first 72 hours of placement. In addition, it includes all concrete elements with a section thickness of 3 feet or more regardless of temperature.
- g. "Mixture proportioning" is the process of designing concrete mixture proportions to enable it to meet the strength, service life and constructability requirements of the project while minimizing the initial and life-cycle cost.
- h. "Mixture proportions" are the masses or volumes of individual ingredients used to make a unit measure (cubic meter or cubic yard) of concrete.

- i. "Pozzolan" is a siliceous or siliceous and aluminous material, which in itself possesses little or no cementitious value but will, in finely divided form and in the presence of moisture, chemically react with calcium hydroxide at ordinary temperatures to form compounds possessing cementitious properties.
- j. "Workability (or consistence)" is the ability of a fresh (plastic) concrete mix to fill the form/mould properly with the desired work (vibration) and without reducing the concrete's quality. Workability depends on water content, chemical admixtures, aggregate (shape and size distribution), cementitious content and age (level of hydration).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Concrete Curing Plan

Quality Control Plan; G

Quality Control Personnel Certifications; G

Quality Control Organizational Chart

Laboratory Accreditation; G

Maturity Method Data

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Reinforcing Steel; G

SD-03 Product Data

Joint Sealants; S

Joint Filler; S

Formwork Materials

Recycled Aggregate Materials; S

Cementitious Materials; S

Vapor Retarder

Concrete Curing Materials

Reinforcement; S

Liquid Chemical Floor Hardeners and Sealers; S

Admixtures; S

Mechanical Reinforcing Bar Connectors

Waterstops

Local/Regional Materials; S

Biodegradable Form Release Agent; S

Pumping Concrete

Finishing Plan

Nonshrink Grout

SD-05 Design Data

Concrete Mix Design; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Concrete Mix Design; G, S

Fly Ash

Pozzolan

Slag Cement

Aggregates

Tolerance Report

Compressive Strength Tests; G

Unit Weight of Structural Concrete

Chloride Ion Concentration

Air Content

Slump Tests

Water

SD-07 Certificates

Reinforcing Bars

Welder Qualifications

VOC Content for Form Release Agents, Curing Compounds, and
Concrete Penetrating Sealers; S

Safety Data Sheets; S

Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) Certification; S

Field Testing Technician and Testing Agency

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Liquid Chemical Floor Hardeners and Sealers; S

Joint Sealants; S

Curing Compound

1.4 MODIFICATION OF REFERENCES

Accomplish work in accordance with ACI publications except as modified herein. Consider the advisory or recommended provisions to be mandatory. Interpret reference to the "Building Official," the "Structural Engineer," and the "Architect/Engineer" to mean the Contracting Officer.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Follow ACI 301, ACI 304R and ASTM A934/A934M requirements and recommendations. Do not deliver concrete until vapor retarder, forms, reinforcement, embedded items, and chamfer strips are in place and ready for concrete placement. Do not store concrete curing compounds or sealers with materials that have a high capacity to adsorb volatile organic compound (VOC) emissions. Do not store concrete curing compounds or sealers in occupied spaces.

1.5.1 Reinforcement

Store reinforcement of different sizes and shapes in separate piles or racks raised above the ground to avoid excessive rusting. Protect from contaminants such as grease, oil, and dirt. Ensure bar sizes can be accurately identified after bundles are broken and tags removed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Design Data

1.6.1.1 Concrete Mix Design

Sixty days minimum prior to concrete placement, submit a mix design for each strength and type of concrete. Submit a complete list of materials including type; brand; source and amount of cement, supplementary cementitious materials, and admixtures; and applicable reference specifications. Submit mill test and all other test for cement, supplementary cementitious materials, aggregates, and admixtures. Provide documentation of maximum nominal aggregate size, gradation analysis, percentage retained and passing sieve, and a graph of percentage retained verses sieve size. Provide mix proportion data using at least three different water-cementitious material ratios for each type of mixture, which produce a range of strength encompassing those required for each type of concrete required. If source material changes, resubmit mix proportion data using revised source material. Provide only materials that have been proven by trial mix studies to meet the requirements of this specification, unless otherwise approved in writing by the Contracting Officer. Indicate clearly in the submittal where each mix design is used when more than one mix design is submitted. Resubmit data on concrete components if the qualities or source of components changes.

For previously approved concrete mix designs used within the past twelve months, the previous mix design may be re-submitted without further trial batch testing if accompanied by material test data conducted within the last six months. Obtain mix design approval from the contracting officer prior to concrete placement.

1.6.2 Shop Drawings

1.6.2.1 Reinforcing Steel

Indicate bending diagrams, assembly diagrams, splicing and laps of bars, shapes, dimensions, and details of bar reinforcing, accessories, and concrete cover. Do not scale dimensions from structural drawings to determine lengths of reinforcing bars. Reproductions of contract drawings are unacceptable.

1.6.3 Control Submittals

1.6.3.1 Concrete Curing Plan

Submit proposed materials, methods, and duration for curing concrete elements in accordance with [ACI 308.1](#).

1.6.3.2 Pumping Concrete

Submit proposed materials and methods for pumping concrete. Submittal must include mix designs, pumping equipment including type of pump and size and material for pipe, and maximum length and height concrete is to be pumped.

1.6.3.3 Finishing Plan

Submit proposed material and procedures to be used in obtaining the finish for the ground level floors. Include qualification of person to be used for obtaining floor tolerance measurement, description of measuring equipment to be used, and a sketch showing lines and locations the measuring equipment will follow.

1.6.3.4 VOC Content for form release agents, curing compounds, and concrete penetrating sealers

Submit certification for the form release agent, curing compounds, and concrete penetrating sealers that indicate the VOC content of each product.

1.6.3.5 Safety Data Sheets

Submit Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for all materials that are regulated for hazardous health effects. SDS must be readily accessible during each work shift to employees when they are at the construction site.

1.6.4 Test Reports

1.6.4.1 Fly Ash and Pozzolan

Submit test results in accordance with [ASTM C618](#) for fly ash and pozzolan. Submit test results performed within 6 months of submittal date.

1.6.4.2 Slag Cement

Submit test results in accordance with ASTM C989/C989M for slag cement.
Submit test results performed within 6 months of submittal date.

1.6.4.3 Aggregates

Submit test results in accordance with ASTM C33/C33M, or ASTM C330/C330M for lightweight aggregate, and ASTM C1293 or ASTM C1567 as required in the paragraph titled ALKALI-AGGREGATE REACTION.

1.6.5 Quality Control Plan

Develop and submit for approval a concrete quality control program in accordance with the guidelines of ACI 121R and as specified herein. The plan must include approved laboratories. Provide direct oversight for the concrete qualification program inclusive of associated sampling and testing. All quality control reports must be provided to the Contracting Officer, Quality Manager and Concrete Supplier. Maintain a copy of ACI SP-15 and CRSI 10MSP at project site.

1.6.6 Quality Control Personnel Certifications

The Contractor must submit for approval the responsibilities of the various quality control personnel, including the names and qualifications of the individuals in those positions and a quality control organizational chart defining the quality control hierarchy and the responsibility of the various positions. Quality control personnel must be employed by the Contractor.

Submit American Concrete Institute certification for the following:

- a. CQC personnel responsible for inspection of concrete operations.
- b. Lead Foreman or Journeyman of the Concrete Placing, Finishing, and Curing Crews.
- c. Field Testing Technicians: ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade I.

1.6.6.1 Quality Manager Qualifications

The quality manager must hold a current license as a professional engineer in a U.S. state or territory with experience on at least five similar projects. Evidence of extraordinary proven experience may be considered by the Contracting Officer as sufficient to act as the Quality Manager.

1.6.6.2 Field Testing Technician and Testing Agency

Submit data on qualifications of proposed testing agency and technicians for approval by the Contracting Officer prior to performing testing on concrete.

- a. Work on concrete under this contract must be performed by an ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician Grade 1 qualified in accordance with ACI SP-2 or equivalent. Equivalent certification programs must include requirements for written and performance examinations as stipulated in ACI SP-2.

- b. Testing agencies that perform testing services on reinforcing steel must meet the requirements of [ASTM E329](#).
- c. Testing agencies that perform testing services on concrete materials must meet the requirements of [ASTM C1077](#).

1.6.7 Laboratory Qualifications for Concrete Qualification Testing

The concrete testing laboratory must have the necessary equipment and experience to accomplish required testing. The laboratory must meet the requirements of [ASTM C1077](#) and be Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL) inspected.

1.6.8 Laboratory Accreditation

Laboratory and testing facilities must be provided by and at the expense of the Contractor. The laboratories performing the tests must be accredited in accordance with [ASTM C1077](#), including [ASTM C78/C78M](#) and [ASTM C1260](#). The accreditation must be current and must include the required test methods, as specified. Furthermore, the testing must comply with the following requirements:

- a. Aggregate Testing and Mix Proportioning: Aggregate testing and mixture proportioning studies must be performed by an accredited laboratory and under the direction of a registered professional engineer in a U.S. state or territory competent in concrete materials and must sign all reports and designs.
- b. Acceptance Testing: Furnish all materials, labor, and facilities required for molding, curing, testing, and protecting test specimens at the site and in the laboratory. Furnish and maintain boxes or other facilities suitable for storing and curing the specimens at the site while in the mold within the temperature range stipulated by [ASTM C31/C31M](#).
- c. Contractor Quality Control: All sampling and testing must be performed by an approved, onsite, independent, accredited laboratory.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Provide space ventilation according to material manufacturer recommendations, at a minimum, during and following installation of concrete curing compound and sealer. Maintain one of the following ventilation conditions during the curing period or for 72 hours after installation:

- a. Supply 100 percent outside air 24 hours a day.
- b. Supply airflow at a rate of 6 air changes per hour, when outside temperatures are between [55 degrees F](#) and [84 degrees F](#) and humidity is between 30 percent and 60 percent.
- c. Supply airflow at a rate of 1.5 air changes per hour, when outside air conditions are not within the range stipulated above.

1.7.1 Submittals for Environmental Performance

- a. Provide data indication the percentage of post-industrial pozzolan (fly ash, slag cement) cement substitution as a percentage of the full

product composite by weight.

- b. Provide data indicating the percentage of post-industrial and post-consumer recycled content aggregate.
- c. Provide product data indicating the percentage of post-consumer recycled steel content in each type of steel reinforcement as a percentage of the full product composite by weight.
- d. Provide product data stating the location where all products were manufactured
- e. For projects using FSC certified formwork, provide chain-of-custody documentation for all certified wood products.
- f. For projects using reusable formwork, provide data showing how formwork is reused.
- g. Provide SDS product information data showing that form release agents meet any environmental performance goals such as using vegetable and soy-based products.
- h. Provide SDS product information data showing that concrete adhesives meet any environmental performance goals including low emitting, low volatile organic compound products.

1.8 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

1.8.1 Local/Regional Materials

See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING for cumulative total local material requirements. Concrete materials may be locally available. Submit documentation indicating distance between manufacturing facility and the project site. Indicate distance of raw material origin from the project site. Indicate relative dollar value of local/regional materials to total dollar value of products included in project.

1.8.2 Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) Certification

Use FSC-certified wood where specified. Provide letter of certification signed by lumber supplier. Indicate compliance with FSC STD 01 001 and identify certifying organization. Submit FSC certification numbers; identify each certified product on a line-item basis. Submit copies of invoices bearing the FSC certification numbers.

1.9 QUALIFICATIONS FOR WELDING WORK

Welding procedures must be in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.

Verify that Welder qualifications are in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M for welding of reinforcement or under an equivalent qualification test approved in advance. Welders are permitted to do only the type of welding for which each is specifically qualified.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FORMWORK MATERIALS

- a. Form-facing material in contact with concrete must be lumber, plywood,

tempered concrete-form-grade hardboard, metal, plastic, or treated paper that creates specified appearance and texture of concrete surface. Submit product information on proposed form-facing materials if different from that specified herein.

- b. Design formwork, shores, reshores, and backshores to support loads transmitted to them and to comply with applicable building code requirements.
- c. Design formwork and shoring for load redistribution resulting from stressing of post-tensioned reinforcement. Ensure that formwork allows movement resulting from application of prestressing force.
- d. Design formwork to withstand pressure resulting from placement and vibration of concrete and to maintain specified tolerances.
- e. Design formwork to accommodate waterstop materials in joints at locations indicated in Contract Documents.
- f. Provide temporary openings in formwork if needed to facilitate cleaning and inspection.
- g. Design formwork joints to inhibit leakage of mortar.
- h. Limit deflection of facing materials for concrete surfaces exposed to view to 1/240 of center-to-center spacing of facing supports.
- i. Do not use earth cuts as forms for vertical or sloping surfaces.
- j. Submit product information on proposed form-facing materials if different from that specified herein.
- k. Submit manufacturer's product data on form liner proposed for use with each formed surface.

2.1.1.1 Wood Forms

Use lumber as specified in Section 06 10 00 ROUGH CARPENTRY and as follows. Provide lumber that is square edged or tongue-and-groove boards, free of raised grain, knotholes, or other surface defects. Provide plywood that complies with NIST PS 1, B-B concrete form panels or better or AHA A135.4, hardboard for smooth form lining. Submit data verifying that composite wood products contain no urea formaldehyde resins. Virgin wood used must be FSC-certified.

2.1.1.1.1 Concrete Form Plywood (Standard Rough)

Provide plywood that conforms to NIST PS 1, B-B, concrete form, not less than 5/8-inch thick.

2.1.1.1.2 Overlaid Concrete Form Plywood (Standard Smooth)

Provide plywood that conforms to NIST PS 1, B-B, high density form overlay, not less than 5/8-inch thick.

2.1.2 Plastic Forms

Plastic lumber as specified in Section 06 10 00 ROUGH CARPENTRY. Provide plastic forms that contain a minimum of 50 percent post-consumer recycled

content, or a minimum of 50 percent post-industrial recycled content.

2.1.3 Carton Forms

Moisture resistant treated paper faces, biodegradable, structurally sufficient to support weight of wet concrete until initial set. Provide carton forms that contain a minimum of 10 percent post-consumer recycled content, or a minimum of 40 percent post-industrial recycled content.

2.1.4 Steel Forms

Provide steel form surfaces that do not contain irregularities, dents, or sags.

2.2 FORMWORK ACCESSORIES

- a. Use commercially manufactured formwork accessories, including ties and hangers.
- b. Form ties and accessories must not reduce the effective cover of the reinforcement.

2.2.1 Form Ties

- a. Use form ties with ends or end fasteners that can be removed without damage to concrete.
- b. Where indicated in Contract Documents, use form ties with integral water barrier plates or other acceptable positive water barriers in walls.
- c. The breakback distance for ferrous ties must be at least 2 in. for Surface Finish-2.0 or Surface Finish-3.0, as defined in ACI 301.
- d. If the breakback distance is less than 3/4 in., use coated or corrosion-resistant ties.
- e. Submit manufacturer's data sheet on form ties.

2.2.2 Waterstops

Submit manufacturer's data sheet on waterstop materials and splices.

2.2.2.1 PVC Waterstop

Polyvinylchloride waterstops must conform to COE CRD-C 572.

2.2.2.2 Rubber Waterstop

Rubber waterstops must conform to COE CRD-C 513.

2.2.2.3 Thermoplastic Elastomeric Rubber Waterstop

Thermoplastic elastomeric rubber waterstops must conform to ASTM D471.

2.2.2.4 Hydrophilic Waterstop

Swellable strip type compound of polymer modified chloroprene rubber that swells upon contact with water must conform to the following requirements

when tested in accordance to **ASTM D412**: Tensile strength **420 psi** minimum; ultimate elongation 600 percent minimum. Hardness must be 50 minimum on the type A durometer and the volumetric expansion ratio in distilled water at **70 degrees F** must be 3 to 1 minimum.

2.2.3 Biodegradable Form Release Agent

- a. Provide form release agent that is colorless, biodegradable, and water-based, with a low (maximum of 55 grams/liter (g/l)) VOC content.
- b. Provide product that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
- c. Provide form release agent that reduces formwork moisture absorption, and does not contain diesel fuel, petroleum-based lubricating oils, waxes, or kerosene. Submit documentation indicating type of biobased material in product and biobased content. Indicate relative dollar value of biobased content products to total dollar value of products included in project.
- d. Submit manufacturer's product data on formwork release agent for use on each form-facing material.

2.2.4 Chamfer Materials

Use lumber materials with dimensions of **3/4 x 3/4 in.**

2.2.5 Construction and movement joints

- a. Submit details and locations of construction joints in accordance with the requirements herein.
- b. Locate construction joints within middle one-third of spans of slabs, beams, and girders. If a beam intersects a girder within the middle one-third of girder span, the distance between the construction joint in the girder and the edge of the beam must be at least twice the width of the larger member.
- c. For members with post-tensioning tendons, locate construction joints where tendons pass through centroid of concrete section.
- d. Locate construction joints in walls and columns at underside of slabs, beams, or girders and at tops of footings or slabs.
- e. Make construction joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
- f. Provide movement joints where indicated in Contract Documents or in accepted alternate locations.
- g. Submit location and detail of movement joints if different from those indicated in Contract Documents.
- h. Submit manufacturer's data sheet on expansion joint materials.
- i. Provide keyways where indicated in Contract Documents. Longitudinal keyways indicated in Contract Documents must be at least **1-1/2 in.** deep, measured perpendicular to the plane of the joint.

2.2.6 Perimeter Insulation

Perimeter insulation must be polystyrene conforming to ASTM C578, Type II; polyurethane conforming to ASTM C591, Type II; or cellular glass conforming to ASTM C552, Type I or IV. Comply with EPA requirements in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING.

2.2.7 Other Embedded items

Use sleeves, inserts, anchors, and other embedded items of material and design indicated in Contract Documents.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

2.3.1 Cementitious Materials

2.3.1.1 Portland Cement

- a. Unless otherwise specified, provide cement that conforms to ASTM C150/C150M Type II and meets low alkali content requirements.
- b. Use one brand and type of cement for formed concrete having exposed-to-view finished surfaces.
- c. For portland cement manufactured in a kiln fueled by hazardous waste, maintain a record of source for each batch. Supplier must certify that the hazardous waste is neutralized by the manufacturing process and that no additional pollutants are discharged.
- d. Submit information along with evidence demonstrating compliance with referenced standards. Submittals must include types of cementitious materials, manufacturing locations, shipping locations, and certificates showing compliance.
- e. Cementitious materials must be stored and kept dry and free from contaminants.

2.3.1.2 Fly Ash

- a. ASTM C618, Class F, except that the maximum allowable loss on ignition must not exceed 6 percent.
- b. Fly ash content must be a minimum of 15 percent by weight of cementitious material, provided the fly ash does not reduce the amount of cement in the concrete mix below the minimum requirements of local building codes. Where the use of fly ash cannot meet the minimum level, provide the maximum amount of fly ash permissible that meets the code requirements for cement content. Report the chemical analysis of the fly ash in accordance with ASTM C311/C311M. Evaluate and classify fly ash in accordance with ASTM D5759.

2.3.1.3 Other Supplementary Cementitious Materials

Natural pozzolan must be raw or calcined and conform to ASTM C618, Class N, including the optional requirements for uniformity and effectiveness in controlling ASR and must have an ignition loss not exceeding 3 percent. Class N pozzolan for use in mitigating ASR must have a Calcium Oxide (CaO) content of less than 13 percent and total equivalent alkali content less than 3 percent.

Ultra Fine Fly Ash (UFFA) and Ultra Fine Pozzolan (UFP) must conform to [ASTM C618](#), Class F or N, and the following additional requirements:

- a. The strength activity index at 28 days of age must be at least 95 percent of the control specimens.
- b. The average particle size must not exceed 6 microns.
- c. The sum of SiO₂ + Al₂O₃ + Fe₂O₃ must be greater than 77 percent.

2.3.2 [Water](#)

- a. Water or ice must comply with the requirements of [ASTM C1602/C1602M](#).
- b. Minimize the amount of water in the mix. Improve workability by adjusting the grading of the aggregate and using admixture rather than by adding water.
- c. Water must be potable; free from injurious amounts of oils, acids, alkalis, salts, organic materials, or other substances deleterious to concrete.
- d. Protect mixing water and ice from contamination during storage and delivery.
- e. Submit test report showing water complies with [ASTM C1602/C1602M](#).

2.3.3 [Aggregate](#)

2.3.3.1 [Normal-Weight Aggregate](#)

- a. Aggregates must conform to [ASTM C33/C33M](#).
- b. Aggregates used in concrete must be obtained from the same sources and have the same size range as aggregates used in concrete represented by submitted field test records or used in trial mixtures.
- c. Provide sand that is at least 50 percent natural sand.
- d. Store and handle aggregate in a manner that will avoid segregation and prevents contamination by other materials or other sizes of aggregates. Store aggregates in locations that will permit them to drain freely. Do not use aggregates that contain frozen lumps.
- e. Submit types, pit or quarry locations, producers' names, aggregate supplier statement of compliance with [ASTM C33/C33M](#), and [ASTM C1293](#) expansion data not more than 18 months old.

2.3.3.2 [Recycled Aggregate Materials](#)

Use a minimum of 25 percent recycled aggregate, depending on local availability and conforming to requirements of the mix design. Recycled aggregate to include recovered concrete or recovered stone that meets the aggregate requirements specified. Submit recycled material request with the aggregate certification submittals and do not use until approved by the Contracting Officer.

2.3.4 Admixtures

- a. Chemical admixtures must conform to ASTM C494/C494M.
- b. Air-entraining admixtures must conform to ASTM C260/C260M.
- c. Chemical admixtures for use in producing flowing concrete must conform to ASTM C1017/C1017M.
- d. Do not use calcium chloride admixtures.
- e. Use a corrosion-inhibiting admixture for concrete classified under exposure category C1 or C2. Use an ASR-inhibiting admixture for concrete containing aggregate susceptible to ASR.
- f. Admixtures used in concrete must be the same as those used in the concrete represented by submitted field test records or used in trial mixtures.
- g. Protect stored admixtures against contamination, evaporation, or damage.
- h. To ensure uniform distribution of constituents, provide agitating equipment for admixtures used in the form of suspensions or unstable solutions. Protect liquid admixtures from freezing and from temperature changes that would adversely affect their characteristics.
- i. Submit types, brand names, producers' names, manufacturer's technical data sheets, and certificates showing compliance with standards required herein.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

2.4.1 Concrete Curing Materials

Provide concrete curing material in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 and ACI 308.1 Section 2. Submit product data for concrete curing compounds. Submit manufactures instructions for placement of curing compound.

2.4.2 Nonshrink Grout

Nonshrink grout in accordance with ASTM C1107/C1107M.

2.4.3 Floor Finish Materials

2.4.3.1 Liquid Chemical Floor Hardeners and Sealers

- a. Hardener must be a colorless aqueous solution containing a blend of inorganic silicate or silicate material and proprietary components combined with a wetting agent; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces. Submit manufactures instructions for placement of liquid chemical floor hardener.
- b. Use concrete penetrating sealers with a low (maximum 100 grams/liter, less water and less exempt compounds) VOC content. Submit manufactures instructions for placement of sealers.

2.4.3.2 Abrasive Aggregate for Nonslip Aggregate Finish

Aggregate must be packaged, factory-graded, silicon carbide grits. Aggregate must be rust proof and must be unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.

2.4.3.3 Aggregate for Heavy-Duty Wear-Resistant Finish

Provide iron aggregate, as follows:

Iron must be packaged, ground and graded cubicle iron particles with dispersing agents, formulated to blend with portland cement for producing wear-resistant monolithic surface treatments. Provide aggregate that is free of nonferrous metals, oil, grease, soluble alkaline compounds, rust, and impurities and must be well-graded in size from particles retained on No. 50 sieve 0.0118 inch to particles passing No. 8 sieve 0.0929 inch.

2.4.3.4 Aggregate for Heavy-Duty Floor Topping

Provide emery fine aggregates, as specified.

Provide emery that is packaged, factory-graded, crushed natural emery ore containing not less than 35-percent aluminum oxide and not less than 24-percent ferric oxide. Provide aggregate that is cubical or polyhedral in form and does not change its physical or chemical nature in the presence of moisture. Grade aggregate to a fineness modulus of 3.9 to 4.0, with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch sieve and not less than 95 percent retained on No. 100 sieve. Deliver emery in moisture-resistant bags.

2.4.4 Expansion/Contraction Joint Filler

ASTM D1751 or ASTM D1752 Type I or Type II. Material must be 1/2 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4.5 Joint Sealants

Submit manufacturer's product data, indicating VOC content.

2.4.5.1 Horizontal Surfaces, 3 Percent Slope, Maximum

ASTM D6690 or ASTM C920, Type M, Class 25, Use T.

2.4.5.2 Vertical Surfaces Greater Than 3 Percent Slope

ASTM C920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use T.

2.4.5.3 Preformed Polychloroprene Elastomeric Type

ASTM D2628.

2.4.5.4 Lubricant for Preformed Compression Seals

ASTM D2835.

2.4.6 Vapor Retarder

ASTM E1745 Class C polyethylene sheeting, minimum 10 mil thickness or other equivalent material with a maximum permeance rating of 0.04 perms per ASTM E96/E96M.

2.4.7 Dovetail Anchor Slot

Preformed metal slot approximately 1 inch by 1 inch of not less than 22 gage galvanized steel cast in concrete. Coordinate actual size and throat opening with dovetail anchors and provide with removable filler material.

2.5 CONCRETE MIX DESIGN

2.5.1 Properties and Requirements

- a. Use materials and material combinations listed in this section and the contract documents.
- b. Cementitious material content must be adequate for concrete to satisfy the specified requirements for strength, w/cm, durability, and finishability described in this section and the contract documents.
- c. Selected target slump must meet the requirements this section, the contract documents, and must not exceed 9 in. Concrete must not show visible signs of segregation.
- d. The target slump must be enforced for the duration of the project. Determine the slump by ASTM C143/C143M. Slump tolerances must meet the requirements of ACI 117.
- e. The nominal maximum size of coarse aggregate for a mixture must not exceed three-fourths of the minimum clear spacing between reinforcement, one-fifth of the narrowest dimension between sides of forms, or one-third of the thickness of slabs or toppings.
- f. Concrete must be air entrained for members assigned to Exposure Class F1, F2, or F3. The total air content must be in accordance with the requirements of the paragraph titled DURABILITY.
- g. Measure air content at the point of delivery in accordance with ASTM C173/C173M or ASTM C231/C231M.
- h. Concrete for slabs to receive a hard-troweled finish must not contain an air-entraining admixture or have a total air content greater than 3 percent.
- i. Concrete properties and requirements for each portion of the structure are specified in the table below. Refer to the paragraph titled DURABILITY for more details on exposure categories and their requirements.

	Minimum $f'c$ psi	Exposure Categories^	Miscellaneous Requirements
Footings	4500 at 28 days	S0; C1; W0; F2	Max. slump: 6 in. Nominal maximum aggregate size must be 1 in.
Columns and walls	4500 at 28 days	S0; C0; W0; F0	Nominal maximum aggregate size must be 1 in.

	Minimum $f'c$ psi	Exposure Categories^	Miscellaneous Requirements
Elevated beams and slabs	3000 at 28 days	S0; C0; W0; F0	Nominal maximum aggregate size must be 3/4 in.
Grade beams and slabs-on-ground	4500 at 28 days	S0; C1; W0; F2	Nominal maximum aggregate size must be 3/4 in.

2.5.2 Durability

2.5.2.1 Alkali-Aggregate Reaction

Do not use any aggregate susceptible to alkali-carbonate reaction (ACR). Use one of the three options below for qualifying concrete mixtures to reduce the potential of alkali-silica reaction (ASR):

- For each aggregate used in concrete, the expansion result determined in accordance with ASTM C1293 must not exceed 0.04 percent at one year.
- For each aggregate used in concrete, the expansion result of the aggregate and cementitious materials combination determined in accordance with ASTM C1567 must not exceed 0.10 percent at an age of 16 days.
- Alkali content in concrete (LBA) must not exceed 4 pounds per cubic yard for moderately reactive aggregate or 3 pounds per cubic yard for highly reactive aggregate. Reactivity must be determined by testing in accordance with ASTM C1293 and categorized in accordance with ASTM C1778. Alkali content is calculated as follows:

$$LBA = (\text{cement content, pounds per cubic yard}) \times (\text{equivalent alkali content of portland cement in percent}/100 \text{ percent})$$

2.5.2.2 Freezing and Thawing Resistance

- Concrete must be air entrained for footings, columns and walls, and grade beams. The total air content must meet the requirements of the following table:

Nominal maximum aggregate size, in.	Total air content, percent*^	
	Exposure Class F2 and F3	Exposure Class F1
3/8	7.5	6.0
1/2	7.0	5.5
3/4	6.0	5.0
1	6.0	4.5
1-1/2	5.5	4.5

Nominal maximum aggregate size, in.	Total air content, percent*^	
	Exposure Class F2 and F3	Exposure Class F1
2	5.0	4.0
3	5.5	3.5

*Tolerance on air content as delivered must be plus/minus 1.5 percent.
^For f'c greater than 5000 psi, reducing air content by 1.0 percentage point is acceptable.

- b. Submit documentation verifying compliance with specified requirements.

2.5.2.3 Corrosion and Chloride Content

- a. Provide concrete meeting the requirements of the following table based on the exposure class assigned to members requiring protection against reinforcement corrosion in Contract Documents.
- b. Submit documentation verifying compliance with specified requirements.
- c. Water-soluble chloride ion content contributed from constituents including water, aggregates, cementitious materials, and admixtures must be determined for the concrete mixture by [ASTM C1218/C1218M](#) at age between 28 and 42 days.
- d. The maximum water-soluble chloride ion (Cl-) content in concrete, percent by mass of cement is as follows:

Exposure class	Maximum w/cm*	Minimum f'c, psi	Maximum water-soluble chloride ion (CL-) content in concrete, percent by mass of cement
Reinforced Concrete			
C0	N/A	2500	1.00
C1	N/A	2500	0.30
C2	0.4	5000	0.15

*The maximum w/cm limits do not apply to lightweight concrete.

2.5.2.4 Sulfate Resistance

- a. Provide concrete meeting the requirements of the following table based on the exposure class assigned to members for sulfate exposure.

Exposure class	Maximum w/cm	Minimum f'c, psi	Required cementitious materials-types			Calcium chloride admixture
			ASTM C150/C150M	ASTM C595/C595M	ASTM C1157/C1157M	
S0	N/A	2500	N/A	N/A	N/A	No restrictions

Exposure class	Maximum w/cm	Minimum f'c, psi	Required cementitious materials-types			Calcium chloride admixture
			ASTM C150/C150M	ASTM C595/C595M	ASTM C1157/C1157M	
S1	0.50	4000	II [^]	IP(MS); IS(<70)(MS); IT(MS)	MS	No restrictions
S2	0.45	4500	IV [^]	IP(HS); IS(<70)(HS); IT(HS)	HS	Not permitted
S3	0.45	4500	V + pozzolan or slag cement**	IP(HS)+ pozzolan or slag cement [^] ; IS (<70)(HS) + pozzolan or slag cement [^] ; IT (HS) + pozzolan or slag cement**	HS + pozzolan or slag cement**	Not permitted

* For seawater exposure, other types of portland cements with tricalcium aluminate (C3A) contents up to 10 percent are acceptable if the w/cm does not exceed 0.40.

** The amount of the specific source of the pozzolan or slag cement to be used shall be at least the amount determined by test or service record to improve sulfate resistance when used in concrete containing Type V cement. Alternatively, the amount of the specific source of the pozzolan or slag used shall not be less than the amount tested in accordance with ASTM C1012/C1012M and meeting the requirements maximum expansion requirements listed herein.

[^] Other available types of cement, such as Type III or Type I, are acceptable in exposure classes S1 or S2 if the C3A contents are less than 8 or 5 percent, respectively.

- b. The maximum w/cm limits for sulfate exposure do not apply to lightweight concrete.
- c. Alternative combinations of cementitious materials of those listed in this paragraph are acceptable if they meet the maximum expansion requirements listed in the following table:

Exposure class	Maximum expansion when tested using ASTM C1012/C1012M		
	At 6 months	At 6 months	At 18 months
S1	0.10 percent	N/A	N/A
S2	0.05 percent	0.10 percent [^]	N/A

Exposure class	Maximum expansion when tested using ASTM C1012/C1012M		
	At 6 months	At 6 months	At 18 months
S3	N/A	N/A	0.10 percent

^The 12-month expansion limit applies only when the measured expansion exceeds the 6-month maximum expansion limit.

2.5.2.5 Concrete Temperature

The temperature of concrete as delivered must not exceed 95°F.

2.5.2.6 Concrete permeability

- Provide concrete meeting the requirements of the following table based on exposure class assigned to members requiring low permeability in the Contract Documents.

Exposure class	Maximum w/cm*	Minimum f'c, psi	Additional minimum requirements
W0	N/A	2500	None
W1	0.5	4000	None

*The maximum w/cm limits do not apply to lightweight concrete.

- Submit documentation verifying compliance with specified requirements.

2.5.3 Trial Mixtures

Trial mixtures must be in accordance to ACI 301.

2.5.4 Ready-Mix Concrete

Provide concrete that meets the requirements of ASTM C94/C94M.

Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer must provide duplicate delivery tickets with each load of concrete delivered. Provide delivery tickets with the following information in addition to that required by ASTM C94/C94M:

- Type and brand cement
- Cement and supplementary cementitious materials content in 94-pound bags per cubic yard of concrete
- Maximum size of aggregate
- Amount and brand name of admixtures
- Total water content expressed by water cementitious material ratio

2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- a. Bend reinforcement cold. Fabricate reinforcement in accordance with fabricating tolerances of [ACI 117](#).
- b. When handling and storing coated reinforcement, use equipment and methods that do not damage the coating. If stored outdoors for more than 2 months, cover coated reinforcement with opaque protective material.
- c. Submit manufacturer's certified test report for reinforcement.
- d. Submit placing drawings showing fabrication dimensions and placement locations of reinforcement and reinforcement supports. Placing drawings must indicate locations of splices, lengths of lap splices, and details of mechanical and welded splices.
- e. Submit request with locations and details of splices not indicated in Contract Documents.
- f. Submit request to place column dowels without using templates.
- g. Submit request for field cutting, including location and type of bar to be cut and reason field cutting is required.

2.6.1 Reinforcing Bars

- a. Reinforcing bars must be deformed, except spirals, load-transfer dowels, and welded wire reinforcement, which may be plain.
- b. [ASTM A615/A615M](#) with the bars marked A, Grade 60. Cold drawn wire used for spiral reinforcement must conform to [ASTM A1064/A1064M](#). See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING for cumulative total recycled content requirements.
- c. Submit mill certificates for reinforcing bars.

2.6.1.1 Headed Reinforcing Bars

Headed reinforcing bars must conform to [ASTM A970/A970M](#) including Annex A1, and other specified requirements.

2.6.1.2 Bar Mats

- a. Bar mats must conform to [ASTM A184/A184M](#).
- b. If coated bar mats are required, repair damaged coating as required in the paragraph titled GALVANIZED REINFORCING BARS EPOXY-COATED REINFORCING BARS and DUAL-COATED REINFORCING BARS.

2.6.1.3 Headed Shear Stud Reinforcement

Headed studs and headed stud assemblies must conform to [ASTM A1044/A1044M](#).

2.6.2 Mechanical Reinforcing Bar Connectors

- a. Provide 125 percent minimum yield strength of the reinforcement bar.

- b. Mechanical splices for galvanized reinforcing bars must be galvanized or coated with dielectric material.
- c. Mechanical splices used with epoxy-coated or dual-coated reinforcing bars must be coated with dielectric material.
- d. Submit data on mechanical splices demonstrating compliance with this paragraph.

2.6.3 Wire

- a. See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING for cumulative total recycled content requirements. Wire reinforcement may contain post-consumer or post-industrial recycled content. Provide flat sheets of welded wire reinforcement for slabs and toppings.
- b. Plain or deformed steel wire must conform to ASTM A1064/A1064M.

2.6.4 Welded wire reinforcement

- a. Use welded wire reinforcement specified in Contract Documents and conforming to one or more of the specifications given herein.
- b. Plain welded wire reinforcement must conform to ASTM A1064/A1064M, with welded intersections spaced no greater than 12 in. apart in direction of principal reinforcement.
- c. Deformed welded wire reinforcement must conform to ASTM A1064/A1064M, with welded intersections spaced no greater than 16 in. apart in direction of principal reinforcement.

2.6.5 Reinforcing Bar Supports

- a. Provide reinforcement support types within structure as required by Contract Documents. Reinforcement supports must conform to CRSI RB4.1. Submit description of reinforcement supports and materials for fastening coated reinforcement if not in conformance with CRSI RB4.1.
- b. Legs of supports in contact with formwork must be hot-dip galvanized, or plastic coated after fabrication, or stainless-steel bar supports.
- c. See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING for cumulative total recycled content requirements. Plastic and steel may contain post-consumer or post-industrial recycled content.

2.6.6 Dowels for Load Transfer in Floors

Provide greased dowels for load transfer in floors of the type, design, weight, and dimensions indicated. Provide dowel bars that are plain-billet steel conforming to ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 40. Provide dowel pipe that is steel conforming to ASTM A53/A53M.

2.6.7 Welding

- a. Provide weldable reinforcing bars that conform to ASTM A706/A706M and ASTM A615/A615M and Supplement S1, Grade 60, except that the maximum carbon content must be 0.55 percent.
- b. Comply with AWS D1.4/D1.4M unless otherwise specified. Do not tack

weld reinforcing bars.

- c. Welded assemblies of steel reinforcement produced under factory conditions, such as welded wire reinforcement, bar mats, and deformed bar anchors, are allowed.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- a. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly constructed; verify that substrates are level.
- b. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Contracting Officer of unsatisfactory preparation before processing.
- c. Check field dimensions before beginning installation. If dimensions vary too much from design dimensions for proper installation, notify Contracting Officer and wait for instructions before beginning installation.

3.2 PREPARATION

Determine quantity of concrete needed and minimize the production of excess concrete. Designate locations or uses for potential excess concrete before the concrete is poured.

3.2.1 General

- a. Surfaces against which concrete is to be placed must be free of debris, loose material, standing water, snow, ice, and other deleterious substances before start of concrete placing.
- b. Remove standing water without washing over freshly deposited concrete. Divert flow of water through side drains provided for such purpose.

3.2.2 Subgrade Under Foundations and Footings

- a. When subgrade material is semi-porous and dry, sprinkle subgrade surface with water as required to eliminate suction at the time concrete is deposited, or seal subgrade surface by covering surface with specified vapor retarder.
- b. When subgrade material is porous, seal subgrade surface by covering surface with specified vapor retarder.

3.2.3 Subgrade Under Slabs on Ground

- a. Before construction of slabs on ground, have underground work on pipes and conduits completed and approved.
- b. Previously constructed subgrade or fill must be cleaned of foreign materials
- c. Finish surface of capillary water barrier under interior slabs on ground must not show deviation in excess of 1/4 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge parallel with and at right angles to building lines.

- d. Finished surface of subgrade or fill under exterior slabs on ground must not be more than 0.02-foot above or 0.10-foot below elevation indicated.

3.2.4 Edge Forms and Screed Strips for Slabs

- a. Set edge forms or bulkheads and intermediate screed strips for slabs to obtain indicated elevations and contours in finished slab surface and must be strong enough to support vibrating bridge screeds or roller pipe screeds if nature of specified slab finish requires use of such equipment.
- b. Align concrete surface to elevation of screed strips by use of strike-off templates or approved compacting-type screeds.

3.2.5 Reinforcement and Other Embedded Items

- a. Secure reinforcement, joint materials, and other embedded materials in position, inspected, and approved before start of concrete placing.
- b. When concrete is placed, reinforcement must be free of materials deleterious to bond. Reinforcement with rust, mill scale, or a combination of both will be considered satisfactory, provided minimum nominal dimensions, nominal weight, and minimum average height of deformations of a hand-wire-brushed test specimen are not less than applicable ASTM specification requirements.

3.3 FORMS

- a. Provide forms, shoring, and scaffolding for concrete placement. Set forms mortar-tight and true to line and grade.
- b. Chamfer above grade exposed joints, edges, and external corners of concrete 0.75 inch. Place chamfer strips in corners of formwork to produce beveled edges on permanently exposed surfaces.
- c. Provide formwork with clean-out openings to permit inspection and removal of debris.
- d. Inspect formwork and remove foreign material before concrete is placed.
- e. At construction joints, lap form-facing materials over the concrete of previous placement. Ensure formwork is placed against hardened concrete so offsets at construction joints conform to specified tolerances.
- f. Provide positive means of adjustment (such as wedges or jacks) of shores and struts. Do not make adjustments in formwork after concrete has reached initial setting. Brace formwork to resist lateral deflection and lateral instability.
- g. Fasten form wedges in place after final adjustment of forms and before concrete placement.
- h. Provide anchoring and bracing to control upward and lateral movement of formwork system.
- i. Construct formwork for openings to facilitate removal and to produce

opening dimensions as specified and within tolerances.

- j. Provide runways for moving equipment. Support runways directly on formwork or structural members. Do not support runways on reinforcement. Loading applied by runways must not exceed capacity of formwork or structural members.
- k. Position and support expansion joint materials, waterstops, and other embedded items to prevent displacement. Fill voids in sleeves, inserts, and anchor slots temporarily with removable material to prevent concrete entry into voids.
- l. Clean surfaces of formwork and embedded materials of mortar, grout, and foreign materials before concrete placement.

3.3.1 Coating

- a. Cover formwork surfaces with an acceptable material that inhibits bond with concrete.
- b. If formwork release agent is used, apply to formwork surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations before placing reinforcement. Remove excess release agent on formwork prior to concrete placement.
- c. Do not allow formwork release agent to contact reinforcement or hardened concrete against which fresh concrete is to be placed.

3.3.2 Reshoring

- a. Do not allow structural members to be loaded with combined dead and construction loads in excess of loads indicated in the accepted procedure.
- b. Install and remove reshores or backshores in accordance with accepted procedure.
- c. For floors supporting shores under newly placed concrete, either leave original supporting shores in place, or install reshores or backshores. Shoring system and supporting slabs must resist anticipated loads. Locate reshores and backshores directly under a shore position or as indicated on formwork shop drawings.
- d. In multistory buildings, place reshoring or backshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute weight of newly placed concrete, forms, and construction live loads.

3.3.3 Reuse

- a. Reuse forms providing the structural integrity of concrete and the aesthetics of exposed concrete are not compromised.
- b. Wood forms must not be clogged with paste and must be capable of absorbing high water-cementitious material ratio paste.
- c. Remove leaked mortar from formwork joints before reuse.

3.3.4 Forms for Standard Rough Form Finish

Provide formwork in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 with a surface finish, SF-1.0, for formed surfaces that are to be concealed by other construction.

3.3.5 Forms for Standard Smooth Form Finish

Provide formwork in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 with a surface finish, SF-3.0, for formed surfaces that are exposed to view.

3.3.6 Form Ties

- a. For post-tensioned structures, do not remove formwork supports until stressing records have been accepted by the Contracting Officer.
- b. After ends or end fasteners of form ties have been removed, repair tie holes in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 requirements.

3.3.7 Tolerances for Form Construction

- a. Construct formwork so concrete surfaces conform to tolerances in [ACI 117](#).
- b. Position and secure sleeves, inserts, anchors, and other embedded items such that embedded items are positioned within [ACI 117](#) tolerances.
- c. To maintain specified elevation and thickness within tolerances, install formwork to compensate for deflection and anticipated settlement in formwork during concrete placement. Set formwork and intermediate screed strips for slabs to produce designated elevation, camber, and contour of finished surface before formwork removal. If specified finish requires use of vibrating screeds or roller pipe screeds, ensure that edge forms and screed strips are strong enough to support such equipment.

3.3.8 Removal of Forms and Supports

- a. If vertical formed surfaces require finishing, remove forms as soon as removal operations will not damage concrete.
- b. Remove top forms on sloping surfaces of concrete as soon as removal will not allow concrete to sag. Perform repairs and finishing operations required. If forms are removed before end of specified curing period, provide curing and protection.
- c. Do not damage concrete during removal of vertical formwork for columns, walls, and sides of beams. Perform needed repair and finishing operations required on vertical surfaces. If forms are removed before end of specified curing period, provide curing and protection.
- d. Form-facing material and horizontal facing support members may be removed before in-place concrete reaches specified compressive strength if shores and other supports are designed to allow facing removal without deflection of supported slab or member.

3.3.9 Strength of Concrete Required for Removal of Formwork

If removal of formwork, reshoring, or backshoring is based on concrete reaching a specified in-place strength, mold and field-cure cylinders in accordance with [ASTM C31/C31M](#). Test cylinders in accordance with [ASTM C39/C39M](#). Alternatively, use one or more of the methods listed herein to evaluate in-place concrete strength for formwork removal.

- a. Tests of cast-in-place cylinders in accordance with [ASTM C873/C873M](#). This option is limited to slabs with concrete depths from 5 to 12 in.
- b. Penetration resistance in accordance with [ASTM C803/C803M](#).
- c. Pullout strength in accordance with [ASTM C900](#).
- d. Maturity method in accordance with [ASTM C1074](#). Submit maturity method data using project materials and concrete mix proportions used on the project to demonstrate the correlation between maturity and compressive strength of laboratory cured test specimens to the Contracting Officer.

3.4 WATERSTOP INSTALLATION AND SPLICES

- a. Provide waterstops in construction joints as indicated.
- b. Install formwork to accommodate waterstop materials. Locate waterstops in joints where indicated in Contract Documents. Minimize number of splices in waterstop. Splice waterstops in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Install factory-manufactured premolded mitered corners.
- c. Install waterstops to form a continuous diaphragm in each joint. Make adequate provisions to support and protect waterstops during progress of work. Protect waterstops protruding from joints from damage.

3.4.1 PVC Waterstop

Make splices by heat sealing the adjacent waterstop edges together using a thermoplastic splicing iron utilizing a non-stick surface specifically designed for waterstop welding. Reform waterstops at splices with a remolding iron with ribs or corrugations to match the pattern of the waterstop. The spliced area, when cooled, must show no signs of separation, holes, or other imperfections when bent by hand in as sharp an angle as possible.

3.4.2 Rubber Waterstop

Rubber waterstops must be spliced using cold bond adhesive as recommended by the manufacturer.

3.4.3 Thermoplastic Elastomeric Rubber Waterstop

Fittings must be shop made using a machine specifically designed to mechanically weld the waterstop. A portable power saw must be used to miter or straight cut the ends to be joined to ensure good alignment and contact between joined surfaces. Maintain continuity of the characteristic features of the cross section of the waterstop (for example ribs, tabular center axis, and protrusions) across the splice.

3.4.4 Hydrophilic Waterstop

Miter cut ends to be joined with sharp knife or shears. The ends must be adhered with adhesive.

3.5 PLACING REINFORCEMENT AND MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- a. Unless otherwise specified, placing reinforcement and miscellaneous materials must be in accordance to **ACI 301**. Provide bars, welded wire reinforcement, wire ties, supports, and other devices necessary to install and secure reinforcement.
- b. Reinforcement must not have rust, scale, oil, grease, clay, or foreign substances that would reduce the bond. Rusting of reinforcement is a basis of rejection if the effective cross-sectional area or the nominal weight per unit length has been reduced. Remove loose rust prior to placing steel. Tack welding is prohibited.
- c. Nonprestressed cast-in-place concrete members must have concrete cover for reinforcement given in the following table:

Concrete Exposure	Member	Reinforcement	Specified cover, in.
Cast against and permanently in contact with ground	All	All	3
Exposed to weather or in contact with ground	All	No. 6 through No. 18 bars	2
		No. 5 bar, W31 or D31 wire, and smaller	1-1/2
Not exposed to weather or in contact with ground	Slabs, joists, and walls	No. 14 and No. 18 bars	1-1/2
		No. 11 bar and smaller	3/4
	Beams, columns, pedestals, and tension ties	Primary reinforcement, stirrups, ties, spirals, and hoops	1-1/2

- d. Cast-in-place prestressed concrete members must have concrete cover for reinforcement, ducts, and end fittings given in the following

table:

Concrete	Member	Reinforcement	Specified
Cast against and permanently in contact with ground	All	All	3
Exposed to weather or in contact with ground	Slabs, joists, and walls	All	1
	All other	All	1-1/2
Not exposed to weather or in contact with ground	Slabs, joists, and walls	All	3/4
	Beams, columns, and tension ties	Primary reinforcement	1-1/2
		Stirrups, ties, spirals, and hoops	1

- e. Precast nonprestressed or prestressed concrete members manufactured under plant conditions must have concrete cover for reinforcement, ducts, and end fittings given in the following table:

Concrete Exposure	Member	Reinforcement	Specified cover, in.
Exposed to weather or in contact with ground	Walls	No. 14 and No. 18 bars; tendons larger than 1-1/2 in. diameter	1-1/2
		No. 11 bars and smaller; W31 and D31 wire, and smaller; tendons and strands 1-1/2 in.	3/4
	All other	No. 14 and No. 18 bars; tendons larger than 1-1/2 in.	2
		No. 6 through No. 11 bars; tendons and strands larger than 5/8 in. diameter through 1-1/2 in.	1-1/2
		No. 5 bar, W31 or D31 wire, and smaller; tendons and strands 5/8 in. diameter and smaller	1-1/4

Concrete Exposure	Member	Reinforcement	Specified cover, in.
Not exposed to weather or in contact with ground	Slabs, joists, and walls	No. 14 and No. 18 bars; tendons larger than 1-1/2 in. diameter	1-1/4
		Tendons and strands 1-1/2 in. diameter and smaller	3/4
		No. 11 bar, W31 or D31	5/8
	Beams, columns, pedestals, and tension ties	Primary reinforcement	Greater of bar diameter and 5/8 and need not exceed 1-1/2
		Stirrups, ties, spirals, and hoops	3/8

3.5.1 General

Provide details of reinforcement that are in accordance with the Contract Documents.

3.5.2 Vapor Retarder

- a. Install in accordance with ASTM E1643. Provide beneath the on-grade concrete floor slab. Use the greatest widths and lengths practicable to eliminate joints wherever possible. Lap joints a minimum of 12

inches and tape.

- b. Remove torn, punctured, or damaged vapor retarder material and provide with new vapor retarder prior to placing concrete. Concrete placement must not damage vapor retarder.

3.5.3 Perimeter Insulation

Install perimeter insulation at locations indicated. Adhesive must be used where insulation is applied to the interior surface of foundation walls and may be used for exterior application.

3.5.4 Reinforcement Supports

Provide reinforcement support in accordance with CRSI RB4.1 and ACI 301 Section 3 requirements. Supports for coated or galvanized bars must also be coated with electrically compatible material for a distance of at least 2 inches beyond the point of contact with the bars.

3.5.5 Splicing

As indicated in the Contract Documents. For splices not indicated follow ACI 301. Do not splice at points of maximum stress. Overlap welded wire reinforcement the spacing of the cross wires, plus 2 inches. AWS D1.4/D1.4M. Approve welded splices prior to use.

3.5.6 Future Bonding

Plug exposed, threaded, mechanical reinforcement bar connectors with a greased bolt. Provide bolt threads that match the connector. Countersink the connector in the concrete. Caulk the depression after the bolt is installed.

3.5.7 Setting Miscellaneous Material

Place and secure anchors and bolts, pipe sleeves, conduits, and other such items in position before concrete placement and support against displacement. Plumb anchor bolts and check location and elevation. Temporarily fill voids in sleeves with readily removable material to prevent the entry of concrete.

3.5.8 Fabrication

Shop fabricate reinforcing bars to conform to shapes and dimensions indicated for reinforcement, and as follows:

- a. Provide fabrication tolerances that are in accordance with ACI 117.
- b. Provide hooks and bends that are in accordance with the Contract Documents.

Reinforcement must be bent cold to shapes as indicated. Bending must be done in the shop. Rebending of a reinforcing bar that has been bent incorrectly is not be permitted. Bending must be in accordance with standard approved practice and by approved machine methods.

Deliver reinforcing bars bundled, tagged, and marked. Tags must be metal with bar size, length, mark, and other information pressed in by machine. Marks must correspond with those used on the placing drawings.

Do not use reinforcement that has any of the following defects:

- a. Bar lengths, depths, and bends beyond specified fabrication tolerances
- b. Bends or kinks not indicated on drawings or approved shop drawings
- c. Bars with reduced cross-section due to rusting or other cause

Replace defective reinforcement with new reinforcement having required shape, form, and cross-section area.

3.5.9 Placing Reinforcement

Place reinforcement in accordance with [ACI 301](#).

For slabs on grade (over earth or over capillary water barrier) and for footing reinforcement, support bars or welded wire reinforcement on precast concrete blocks, spaced at intervals required by size of reinforcement, to keep reinforcement the minimum height specified above the underside of slab or footing.

For slabs other than on grade, supports for which any portion is less than [1 inch](#) from concrete surfaces that are exposed to view or to be painted must be of precast concrete units, plastic-coated steel, or stainless steel protected bar supports. Precast concrete units must be wedge shaped, not larger than [3-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches](#), and of thickness equal to that indicated for concrete protection of reinforcement. Provide precast units that have cast-in galvanized tie wire hooked for anchorage and blend with concrete surfaces after finishing is completed.

Provide reinforcement that is supported and secured together to prevent displacement by construction loads or by placing of wet concrete, and as follows:

- a. Provide supports for reinforcing bars that are sufficient in number and have sufficient strength to carry the reinforcement they support, and in accordance with [ACI 301](#) and [CRSI 10MSP](#). Do not use supports to support runways for concrete conveying equipment and similar construction loads.
- b. Equip supports on ground and similar surfaces with sand-plates.
- c. Support welded wire reinforcement as required for reinforcing bars.
- d. Secure reinforcements to supports by means of tie wire. Wire must be black, soft iron wire, not less than [16 gage](#).
- e. Reinforcement must be accurately placed, securely tied at intersections, and held in position during placing of concrete by spacers, chairs, or other approved supports. Point wire-tie ends away from the form. Unless otherwise indicated, numbers, type, and spacing of supports must conform to the Contract Documents.
- f. Bending of reinforcing bars partially embedded in concrete is permitted only as specified in the Contract Documents.

3.5.10 Spacing of Reinforcing Bars

- a. Spacing must be as indicated in the Contract Documents.
- b. Reinforcing bars may be relocated to avoid interference with other reinforcement, or with conduit, pipe, or other embedded items. If any reinforcing bar is moved a distance exceeding one bar diameter or specified placing tolerance, resulting rearrangement of reinforcement is subject to preapproval by the Contracting Officer.

3.5.11 Concrete Protection for Reinforcement

Additional concrete protection must be in accordance with the Contract Documents.

3.5.12 Welding

Welding must be in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.

3.6 BATCHING, MEASURING, MIXING, AND TRANSPORTING CONCRETE

In accordance with ASTM C94/C94M, ACI 301, ACI 302.1R and ACI 304R, except as modified herein. Batching equipment must be such that the concrete ingredients are consistently measured within the following tolerances: 1 percent for cement and water, 2 percent for aggregate, and 3 percent for admixtures. Furnish mandatory batch ticket information for each load of ready mix concrete.

3.6.1 Measuring

Make measurements at intervals as specified in paragraphs SAMPLING and TESTING.

3.6.2 Mixing

- a. Mix concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M, ACI 301 and ACI 304R.
- b. Machine mix concrete. Begin mixing within 30 minutes after the cement has been added to the aggregates. Place concrete within 90 minutes of either addition of mixing water to cement and aggregates or addition of cement to aggregates if the air temperature is less than 84 degrees F.
- c. Reduce mixing time and place concrete within 60 minutes if the air temperature is greater than 84 degrees F except as follows: if set retarding admixture is used and slump requirements can be met, limit for placing concrete may remain at 90 minutes. Additional water may be added, provided that both the specified maximum slump and submitted water-cementitious material ratio are not exceeded and the required concrete strength is still met. When additional water is added, an additional 30 revolutions of the mixer at mixing speed is required.
- d. If the entrained air content falls below the specified limit, add a sufficient quantity of admixture to bring the entrained air content within the specified limits. Dissolve admixtures in the mixing water and mix in the drum to uniformly distribute the admixture throughout the batch. Do not reconstitute concrete that has begun to solidify.

3.6.3 Transporting

Transport concrete from the mixer to the forms as rapidly as practicable. Prevent segregation or loss of ingredients. Clean transporting equipment thoroughly before each batch. Do not use aluminum pipe or chutes. Remove concrete which has segregated in transporting and dispose of as directed.

3.7 PLACING CONCRETE

Place concrete in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5.

3.7.1 Footing Placement

Concrete for footings may be placed in excavations without forms upon inspection and approval by the Contracting Officer. Excavation width must be a minimum of [4 inches](#) greater than indicated.

3.7.2 Pumping

[ACI 304R](#) and [ACI 304.2R](#). Pumping must not result in separation or loss of materials nor cause interruptions sufficient to permit loss of plasticity between successive increments. Loss of slump in pumping equipment must not exceed [2 inches](#) at discharge/placement. Do not convey concrete through pipe made of aluminum or aluminum alloy. Avoid rapid changes in pipe sizes. Limit maximum size of coarse aggregate to 33 percent of the diameter of the pipe. Limit maximum size of well-rounded aggregate to 40 percent of the pipe diameter. Take samples for testing at both the point of delivery to the pump and at the discharge end.

3.7.3 Cold Weather

Cold weather concrete must meet the requirements of [ACI 306.1](#) unless otherwise specified. Do not allow concrete temperature to decrease below [50 degrees F](#). Obtain approval prior to placing concrete when the ambient temperature is below [40 degrees F](#) or when concrete is likely to be subjected to freezing temperatures within 24 hours. Cover concrete and provide sufficient heat to maintain [50 degrees F](#) minimum adjacent to both the formwork and the structure while curing. Limit the rate of cooling to [37 degrees F](#) in any 1 hour and [50 degrees F](#) per 24 hours after heat application.

3.7.4 Hot Weather

Hot weather concrete must meet the requirements of [ACI 305.1](#) unless otherwise specified. Maintain required concrete temperature using Figure 4.2 in [ACI 305R](#) to prevent the evaporation rate from exceeding [0.2 pound of water per square foot](#) of exposed concrete per hour. Cool ingredients before mixing or use other suitable means to control concrete temperature and prevent rapid drying of newly placed concrete. Shade the fresh concrete as soon as possible after placing. Start curing when the surface of the fresh concrete is sufficiently hard to permit curing without damage. Provide water hoses, pipes, spraying equipment, and water hauling equipment, where job site is remote to water source, to maintain a moist concrete surface throughout the curing period. Provide burlap cover or other suitable, permeable material with fog spray or continuous wetting of the concrete when weather conditions prevent the use of either liquid membrane curing compound or impervious sheets. For vertical surfaces, protect forms from direct sunlight and add water to top of structure once concrete is set.

3.7.5 Bonding

Surfaces of set concrete at joints, must be roughened and cleaned of laitance, coatings, loose particles, and foreign matter. Roughen surfaces in a manner that exposes the aggregate uniformly and does not leave laitance, loosened particles of aggregate, nor damaged concrete at the surface.

Obtain bonding of fresh concrete that has set as follows:

- a. At joints between footings and walls or columns, between walls or columns and the beams or slabs they support, and elsewhere unless otherwise specified; roughened and cleaned surface of set concrete must be dampened, but not saturated, immediately prior to placing of fresh concrete.
- b. At joints in exposed-to-view work; at vertical joints in walls; at joints near midpoint of span in girders, beams, supported slabs, other structural members; in work designed to contain liquids; the roughened and cleaned surface of set concrete must be dampened but not saturated and covered with a cement grout coating.
- c. Provide cement grout that consists of equal parts of portland cement and fine aggregate by weight with not more than 6 gallons of water per sack of cement. Apply cement grout with a stiff broom or brush to a minimum thickness of 1/16 inch. Deposit fresh concrete before cement grout has attained its initial set.

3.8 WASTE MANAGEMENT

Provide as specified in the Waste Management Plan and as follows.

3.8.1 Mixing Equipment

Before concrete pours, designate Contractor-owned site meeting environmental standards or onsite area to be paved later in project for cleaning out concrete mixing trucks. Minimize water used to wash equipment.

3.8.2 Hardened, Cured Waste Concrete

Crush and reuse hardened, cured waste concrete as fill or as a base course for pavement.

3.8.3 Reinforcing Steel

Collect reinforcing steel and place in designated area for recycling.

3.8.4 Other Waste

Identify concrete manufacturer's or supplier's policy for collection or return of construction waste, unused material, deconstruction waste, and/or packaging material. Return excess cement to supplier. Institute deconstruction and construction waste separation and recycling for use in manufacturer's programs. When such a program is not available, seek local recyclers to reclaim the materials.

3.9 SURFACE FINISHES EXCEPT FLOOR, SLAB, AND PAVEMENT FINISHES

3.9.1 Defects

Repair surface defects in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5.

3.9.2 Not Against Forms (Top of Walls)

Surfaces not otherwise specified must be finished with wood floats to even surfaces. Finish must match adjacent finishes.

3.9.3 Formed Surfaces

3.9.3.1 Tolerances

Tolerances in accordance with ACI 117 and as indicated.

3.9.3.2 As-Cast Rough Form

Provide for surfaces not exposed to public view a surface finish SF-1.0. Patch holes and defects in accordance with ACI 301.

3.9.3.3 Standard Smooth Finish

Provide for surfaces exposed to public view a surface finish SF-3.0. Patch holes and defects in accordance with ACI 301.

3.10 FLOOR, SLAB, AND PAVEMENT FINISHES AND MISCELLANEOUS CONSTRUCTION

In accordance with ACI 301 and ACI 302.1R, unless otherwise specified. Slope floors uniformly to drains where drains are provided. Depress the concrete base slab where quarry tile, ceramic tile, or other recesses are indicated. Steel trowel and fine-broom finish concrete slabs that are to receive quarry tile, ceramic tile, or paver tile. Where straightedge measurements are specified, Contractor must provide straightedge.

3.10.1 Finish

Place, consolidate, and immediately strike off concrete to obtain proper contour, grade, and elevation before bleedwater appears. Permit concrete to attain a set sufficient for floating and supporting the weight of the finisher and equipment. If bleedwater is present prior to floating the surface, drag the excess water off or remove by absorption with porous materials. Do not use dry cement to absorb bleedwater.

3.10.1.1 Scratched

Use for surfaces intended to receive bonded applied cementitious applications. Finish concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 for a scratched finish.

3.10.1.2 Floated

Use for surfaces to receive roofing, waterproofing membranes, sand bed terrazzo, and exterior slabs where not otherwise specified. Finish concrete in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5 for a floated finish.

3.10.1.3 Steel Troweled

Use for floors intended as walking surfaces, and for reception of floor coverings. Finish concrete in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 for a steel troweled finish.

3.10.1.4 Broomed

Use on surfaces of exterior walks, platforms, patios, and ramps, unless otherwise indicated. Finish concrete in accordance with [ACI 301](#) Section 5 for a broomed finish.

3.10.1.5 Pavement

Screed the concrete with a template advanced with a combined longitudinal and crosswise motion. Maintain a slight surplus of concrete ahead of the template. After screeding, float the concrete longitudinally. Use a straightedge to check slope and flatness; correct and refloat as necessary. Obtain final finish by a burlap drag. Drag a strip of clean, wet burlap from [3 to 10 feet wide and 2 feet longer](#) than the pavement width across the slab. Produce a fine, granular, sandy textured surface without disfiguring marks. Round edges and joints with an edger having a radius of [1/8 inch](#).

3.10.1.6 Concrete Toppings Placement

The following requirements apply to the placement of toppings of concrete on base slabs that are either freshly placed and still plastic, or on hardened base slabs.

- a. Placing on a Fresh Base: Screed and bull float the base slab. As soon as the water sheen has disappeared, lightly rake the surface of the base slab with a stiff bristle broom to produce a bonding surface for the topping. Immediately spread the topping mixture evenly over the roughened base before final set takes place. Give the topping the finish indicated on the drawings.
- b. Bonding to a Hardened Base: When the topping is to be bonded to a floated or troweled hardened base, roughen the base by scarifying, grit-blasting, scabbling, planing, flame cleaning, or acid-etching to lightly expose aggregate and provide a bonding surface. Remove dirt, laitance, and loose aggregate by means of a stiff wire broom. Keep the clean base wet for a period of 12 hours preceding the application of the topping. Remove excess water and apply a 1:1:1/2 cement-sand-water grout, and brush into the surface of the base slab. Do not allow the cement grout to dry and spread it only short distances ahead of the topping placement. Do not allow the temperature differential between the completed base and the topping mixture to exceed [41 degrees F](#) at the time of placing. Place the topping and finish as indicated.

3.10.1.7 Chemical-Hardener Treatment

Apply liquid-chemical floor hardener in the Simulator Bay and the ATD Bay after curing and drying concrete surface. Dilute liquid hardener with water and apply in three coats. First coat must be one-third strength, second coat one-half strength, and third coat two-thirds strength. Apply each coat evenly and allow to dry 24 hours between coats.

Approved proprietary chemical hardeners must be applied in accordance with manufacturer's printed directions.

3.10.1.8 Heavy-Duty Wear-Resistant Finish

- a. Give finish to slab surfaces in Simulator Bay and ATD Bay.
- b. Dry-shake material for heavy-duty, wear-resistant finish must consist of a mixture of standard portland cement and aggregate for heavy-duty, wear-resistant finish proportioned by weight as follows:

One part standard portland cement and four parts emery aggregate for heavy-duty wear-resistant finish.

- c. Apply blended dry-shake material as follows:

Maximum type of aggregate in dry shake	Amount per 100 square feet of Surface
Emery	130 pounds

- d. Immediately following the first floating operation, approximately one-half the specified weight of blended, uniformly distribute dry-shake materials over the surface and embedded by means of power floating. After the first dry-shake application has been embedded, uniformly distribute the remaining one-half of the blended dry-shake material over the surface at right angles to the first dry-shake application and embedded by means of power floating. Trueness of surface and other requirements for floating operations not specified in this paragraph must be as specified for float finish.
- e. After completion of the float finish, trowel finish the surface as specified.

3.10.2 Flat Floor Finishes

ACI 302.1R. Construct in accordance with one of the methods recommended in Table 7.15.3, "Typical Composite Ff/FL Values for Various Construction Methods." ACI 117 for tolerance tested by ASTM E1155.

- a. Specified Conventional Value:

Floor Flatness (Ff) 25 overall, 17 minimum
Floor Levelness (FL) 20 overall, 15 minimum

3.10.2.1 Measurement of Floor Tolerances

Test slab within 24 hours of the final troweling. Provide tests to Contracting Officer within 12 hours after collecting the data. Floor flatness inspector is required to provide a tolerance report which must include:

- a. Key plan showing location of data collected.
- b. Results required by ASTM E1155.

3.10.2.2 Remedies for Out of Tolerance Work

Contractor is required to repair and retest any floors not meeting specified tolerances. Prior to repair, Contractor must submit and receive approval for the proposed repair, including product data from any materials proposed. Repairs must not result in damage to structural integrity of the floor. For floors exposed to public view, repairs must prevent any uneven or unusual coloring of the surface.

3.10.3 Concrete Walks

Provide 4 inches thick minimum. Provide contraction joints spaced every 5 linear feet unless otherwise indicated. Cut contraction joints 1 inch deep, or one fourth the slab thickness whichever is deeper, with a jointing tool after the surface has been finished. Provide 0.5 inch thick transverse expansion joints at changes in direction where sidewalk abuts curb, steps, rigid pavement, or other similar structures; space expansion joints every 50 feet maximum. Give walks a broomed finish. Unless indicated otherwise, provide a transverse slope of 1/48. Limit variation in cross section to 1/4 inch in 5 feet.

3.10.4 Pits and Trenches

Place bottoms and walls monolithically or provide waterstops and keys.

3.10.5 Curbs and Gutters

Provide contraction joints spaced every 10 feet maximum unless otherwise indicated. Cut contraction joints 3/4 inch deep with a jointing tool after the surface has been finished. Provide expansion joints 1/2 inch thick and spaced every 100 feet maximum unless otherwise indicated. Perform pavement finish.

3.10.6 Splash Blocks

Provide at outlets of downspouts emptying at grade. Splash blocks may be precast concrete, and must be 24 inches long, 12 inches wide and 4 inches thick, unless otherwise indicated, with smooth-finished countersunk dishes sloped to drain away from the building.

3.11 JOINTS

3.11.1 Construction Joints

Make and locate joints not indicated so as not to impair strength and appearance of the structure, as approved. Joints must be perpendicular to main reinforcement. Reinforcement must be continued and developed across construction joints. Locate construction joints as follows:

3.11.1.1 Maximum Allowable Construction Joint Spacing

- a. In walls at not more than 60 feet in any horizontal direction.
- b. In slabs on ground, so as to divide slab into areas not in excess of 1,200 square feet.

3.11.1.2 Construction Joints for Constructability Purposes

- a. In walls, at top of footing; at top of slabs on ground; at top and

bottom of door and window openings or where required to conform to architectural details; and at underside of deepest beam or girder framing into wall.

- b. In columns or piers, at top of footing; at top of slabs on ground; and at underside of deepest beam or girder framing into column or pier.
- c. Near midpoint of spans for supported slabs, beams, and girders unless a beam intersects a girder at the center, in which case construction joints in girder must offset a distance equal to twice the width of the beam. Make transfer of shear through construction joint by use of inclined reinforcement.

Provide keyways at least 1-1/2 inches deep in construction joints in walls and slabs and between walls and footings; approved bulkheads may be used for slabs.

3.11.2 Isolation Joints in Slabs on Ground

- a. Provide joints at points of contact between slabs on ground and vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and elsewhere as indicated.
- b. Fill joints with premolded joint filler strips 1/2 inch thick, extending full slab depth. Install filler strips at proper level below finish floor elevation with a slightly tapered, dress-and-oiled wood strip temporarily secured to top of filler strip to form a groove not less than 3/4 inch in depth where joint is sealed with sealing compound and not less than 1/4 inch in depth where joint sealing is not required. Remove wood strip after concrete has set. Contractor must clean groove of foreign matter and loose particles after surface has dried.

3.11.3 Contraction Joints in Slabs on Ground

- a. Provide joints to form panels as indicated.
- b. Under and on exact line of each control joint, cut 50 percent of welded wire reinforcement before placing concrete.
- c. Sawcut contraction joints into slab on ground in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5.
- d. Joints must be 1/8-inch wide by 1/5 to 1/4 of slab depth and formed by inserting hand-pressed fiberboard strip into fresh concrete until top surface of strip is flush with slab surface. After concrete has cured for at least 7 days, the Contractor must remove inserts and clean groove of foreign matter and loose particles.
- e. Sawcutting will be limited to within 12 hours after set and at 1/4 slab depth.

3.11.4 Sealing Joints in Slabs on Ground

- a. Contraction and control joints which are to receive finish flooring material must be sealed with joint sealing compound after concrete curing period. Slightly underfill groove with joint sealing compound to prevent extrusion of compound. Remove excess material as soon after sealing as possible.

- b. Sealed groove must be left ready to receive filling material that is provided as part of finish floor covering work.

3.12 CONCRETE FLOOR TOPPING

3.12.1 Standard Floor Topping

Provide topping for treads and platforms of metal steel stairs and elsewhere as indicated.

3.12.1.1 Preparations Prior to Placing

- a. When topping is placed on a green concrete base slab, screed surface of base slab to a level not more than 1-1/2 inches nor less than 1 inch below required finish surface. Remove water and laitance from surface of base slab before placing topping mixture. As soon as water ceases to rise to surface of base slab, place topping.
- b. When topping is placed on a hardened concrete base slab, remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint, and other contaminants from base slab surface, leaving a clean surface. Prior to placing topping mixture, 2-1/2 inches minimum, slab surface must be dampened and left free of standing water. Immediately before topping mixture is placed, broom a coat of neat cement grout onto surface of slab. Do not allow cement grout to set or dry before topping is placed.
- c. When topping is placed on a metal surface, such as metal pans for steel stairs, remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint, and other contaminants from metal surface.

3.12.1.2 Placing

Spread standard topping mixture evenly on previously prepared base slab or metal surface, brought to correct level with a straightedge, and struck off. Topping must be consolidated, floated, checked for trueness of surface, and refloated as specified for float finish.

3.12.1.3 Finishing

Give trowel finish standard floor topping surfaces.

Give other finishes standard floor topping surfaces as indicated.

3.12.2 Heavy-Duty Floor Topping

Provide topping where indicated.

3.12.2.1 Heavy-duty Topping Mixture

Provide mixture that consists of 1 part portland cement and 2-1/2 parts emery aggregate or 1 part fine aggregate and 1-1/2 parts traprock coarse aggregate, by volume. Exact proportions of mixture must conform to recommendations of aggregate manufacturer. Mixing water must not exceed 3-1/4 gallons per 94-pound sack of cement including unabsorbed moisture in aggregate. Maximum slump must be 1 inch.

3.12.2.2 Base Slab

- a. Screed surface of slab to a level no more than 1-1/2 inches nor less than 1 inch below grade of finished floor.
- b. Give slab a scratch finish as specified.
- c. Preparations prior to placing.

Remove dirt, loose material, oil, grease, asphalt, paint and other contaminants from base slab surface. Prior to placing topping mixture, dampen slab surface and leave free of standing water. Immediately before topping mixture is placed, broom a coat of neat cement grout onto surface of slab. Allow cement grout to set or dry before topping mixture is placed.

3.12.2.3 Placing

Spread heavy-duty topping mixture evenly on previously prepared base slab, and bring to correct level with a straightedge, and strike off. Provide topping that is consolidated, floated, and checked for trueness of surface as specified for float finish, except that power-driven floats is the impact type.

3.12.2.4 Finishing

Give trowel finish heavy-duty floor topping surfaces. Provide trowel finish as specified, except that additional troweling after first power troweling must be not less than three hand-troweling operations.

3.13 CURING AND PROTECTION

Curing and protection in accordance with ACI 301 Section 5, unless otherwise specified. Begin curing immediately following form removal. Avoid damage to concrete from vibration created by blasting, pile driving, movement of equipment in the vicinity, disturbance of formwork or protruding reinforcement, and any other activity resulting in ground vibrations. Protect concrete from injurious action by sun, rain, flowing water, frost, mechanical injury, tire marks, and oil stains. Do not allow concrete to dry out from time of placement until the expiration of the specified curing period. Do not use membrane-forming compound on surfaces where appearance would be objectionable, on any surface to be painted, where coverings are to be bonded to the concrete, or on concrete to which other concrete is to be bonded. If forms are removed prior to the expiration of the curing period, provide another curing procedure specified herein for the remaining portion of the curing period. Provide moist curing for those areas receiving liquid chemical sealer, hardener, or epoxy coating. Allow curing compound/sealer installations to cure prior to the installation of materials that adsorb VOCs.

3.13.1 Requirements for Type III, High-Early-Strength Portland Cement

The curing periods are required to be not less than one-fourth of those specified for portland cement, but in no case less than 72 hours.

3.13.2 Curing Periods

ACI 301 Section 5, except 10 days for retaining walls, pavement or chimneys. Begin curing immediately after placement. Protect concrete

from premature drying, excessively hot temperatures, and mechanical injury; and maintain minimal moisture loss at a relatively constant temperature for the period necessary for hydration of the cement and hardening of the concrete. The materials and methods of curing are subject to approval by the Contracting Officer.

3.13.3 Curing Formed Surfaces

Accomplish curing of formed surfaces, including undersurfaces of girders, beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed before end of curing period, accomplish final curing of formed surfaces by any of the curing methods specified above, as applicable.

3.13.4 Curing Unformed Surfaces

- a. Accomplish initial curing of unformed surfaces, such as monolithic slabs, floor topping, and other flat surfaces, by membrane curing.
- b. Accomplish final curing of unformed surfaces by any of curing methods specified, as applicable.
- c. Accomplish final curing of concrete surfaces to receive liquid floor hardener or finish flooring by moisture-retaining cover curing.

3.13.5 Temperature of Concrete During Curing

When temperature of atmosphere is 41 degrees F and below, maintain temperature of concrete at not less than 55 degrees F throughout concrete curing period or 45 degrees F when the curing period is measured by maturity. When necessary, make arrangements before start of concrete placing for heating, covering, insulation, or housing as required to maintain specified temperature and moisture conditions for concrete during curing period.

When the temperature of atmosphere is 80 degrees F and above or during other climatic conditions which cause too rapid drying of concrete, make arrangements before start of concrete placing for installation of wind breaks, of shading, and for fog spraying, wet sprinkling, or moisture-retaining covering of light color as required to protect concrete during curing period.

Changes in temperature of concrete must be uniform and not exceed 37 degrees F in any 1 hour nor 80 degrees F in any 24-hour period.

3.13.6 Protection from Mechanical Injury

During curing period, protect concrete from damaging mechanical disturbances, particularly load stresses, heavy shock, and excessive vibration and from damage caused by rain or running water.

3.13.7 Protection After Curing

Protect finished concrete surfaces from damage by construction operations.

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.14.1 Sampling

ASTM C172/C172M. Collect samples of fresh concrete to perform tests specified. **ASTM C31/C31M** for making test specimens.

3.14.2 Testing

3.14.2.1 Slump Tests

ASTM C143/C143M. Take concrete samples during concrete placement/discharge. The maximum slump may be increased as specified with the addition of an approved admixture provided that the water-cementitious material ratio is not exceeded. Perform tests at commencement of concrete placement, when test cylinders are made, and for each batch (minimum) or every 20 cubic yards (maximum) of concrete.

3.14.2.2 Temperature Tests

Test the concrete delivered and the concrete in the forms. Perform tests in hot or cold weather conditions (below 50 degrees F and above 80 degrees F) for each batch (minimum) or every 20 cubic yards (maximum) of concrete, until the specified temperature is obtained, and whenever test cylinders and slump tests are made.

3.14.2.3 Compressive Strength Tests

ASTM C39/C39M. Make six 6 inch by 12 inch test cylinders for each set of tests in accordance with **ASTM C31/C31M**, **ASTM C172/C172M** and applicable requirements of **ACI 305R** and **ACI 306R**. Take precautions to prevent evaporation and loss of water from the specimen. Test two cylinders at 7 days, two cylinders at 28 days, and hold two cylinders in reserve. Take samples for strength tests of each mix design of concrete placed each day not less than once a day, nor less than once for each 100 cubic yards of concrete for the first 500 cubic yards, then every 500 cubic yards thereafter, nor less than once for each 5400 square feet of surface area for slabs or walls. For the entire project, take no less than five sets of samples and perform strength tests for each mix design of concrete placed. Each strength test result must be the average of two cylinders from the same concrete sample tested at 28 days. Concrete compressive tests must meet the requirements of this section, the Contract Document, and **ACI 301**. Retest locations represented by erratic core strengths. Where retest does not meet concrete compressive strength requirements submit a mitigation or remediation plan for review and approval by the contracting officer. Repair core holes with nonshrink grout. Match color and finish of adjacent concrete.

3.14.2.4 Air Content

ASTM C173/C173M or **ASTM C231/C231M** for normal weight concrete. Test air-entrained concrete for air content at the same frequency as specified for slump tests.

3.14.2.5 Unit Weight of Structural Concrete

ASTM C567/C567M and **ASTM C138/C138M.** Determine unit weight of lightweight and normal weight concrete. Perform test for every 20 cubic yards maximum.

3.14.2.6 Chloride Ion Concentration

Chloride ion concentration must meet the requirements of the paragraph titled CORROSION AND CHLORIDE CONTENT. Determine water soluble ion concentration in accordance with ASTM C1218/C1218M. Perform test once for each mix design.

3.14.2.7 Strength of Concrete Structure

The strength of the concrete structure will be considered to be deficient if any of the following conditions are identified:

- a. Failure to meet compressive strength tests as evaluated.
- b. Reinforcement not conforming to requirements specified.
- c. Concrete which differs from required dimensions or location in such a manner as to reduce strength.
- d. Concrete curing and protection of concrete against extremes of temperature during curing, not conforming to requirements specified.
- e. Concrete subjected to damaging mechanical disturbances, particularly load stresses, heavy shock, and excessive vibration.
- f. Poor workmanship likely to result in deficient strength.

Where the strength of the concrete structure is considered deficient submit a mitigation or remediation plan for review and approval by the contracting officer.

3.14.2.8 Non-Conforming Materials

Factors that indicate that there are non-conforming materials include (but not limited to) excessive compressive strength, inadequate compressive strength, excessive slump, excessive voids and honeycombing, concrete delivery records that indicate excessive time between mixing and placement, or excessive water was added to the mixture during delivery and placement. Any of these indicators alone are sufficient reason for the Contracting Officer to request additional sampling and testing.

Investigations into nonconforming materials must be conducted at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor must be responsible for the investigation and must make written recommendations to adequately mitigate or remediate the nonconforming material. The Contracting Officer may accept, accept with reduced payment, require mitigation, or require removal and replacement of nonconforming material at no additional cost to the Government.

3.14.2.9 Testing Concrete Structure for Strength

When there is evidence that strength of concrete structure in place does not meet specification requirements or there are nonconforming materials, make cores drilled from hardened concrete for compressive strength determination in accordance with ASTM C42/C42M, and as follows:

- a. Take at least three representative cores from each member or area of concrete-in-place that is considered potentially deficient. Location of cores will be determined by the Contracting Officer.

- b. Test cores after moisture conditioning in accordance with ASTM C42/C42M if concrete they represent is more than superficially wet under service.
- c. Air dry cores, (60 to 80 degrees F with relative humidity less than 60 percent) for 7 days before test and test dry if concrete they represent is dry under service conditions.
- d. Strength of cores from each member or area are considered satisfactory if their average is equal to or greater than 85 percent of the 28-day design compressive strength of the class of concrete.
- e. Core specimens will be taken and tested by the Government. If the results of core-boring tests indicate that the concrete as placed does not conform to the drawings and specification, the cost of such tests and restoration required must be borne by the Contractor.

Fill core holes solid with patching mortar and finished to match adjacent concrete surfaces.

Correct concrete work that is found inadequate by core tests in a manner approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.15 REPAIR, REHABILITATION AND REMOVAL

Before the Contracting Officer accepts the structure the Contractor must inspect the structure for cracks, damage and substandard concrete placements that may adversely affect the service life of the structure. A report documenting these defects must be prepared which includes recommendations for repair, removal or remediation must be submitted to the Contracting Officer for approval before any corrective work is accomplished.

3.15.1 Crack Repair

Prior to final acceptance, all cracks in excess of 0.02 inch wide must be documented and repaired. The proposed method and materials to repair the cracks must be submitted to the Contracting Officer for approval. The proposal must address the amount of movement expected in the crack due to temperature changes and loading.

3.15.2 Repair of Weak Surfaces

Weak surfaces are defined as mortar-rich, rain-damaged, uncured, or containing exposed voids or deleterious materials. Concrete surfaces with weak surfaces less than 1/4 inch thick must be diamond ground to remove the weak surface. Surfaces containing weak surfaces greater than 1/4 inch thick must be removed and replaced or mitigated in a manner acceptable to the Contracting Officer.

3.15.3 Failure of Quality Assurance Test Results

Proposed mitigation efforts by the Contractor must be approved by the Contracting Officer prior to proceeding.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 04 20 00

UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE (ACI)

- ACI 216.1 (2014) Code Requirements for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies
- ACI 318 (2014; Errata 1-2 2014; Errata 3-5 2015; Errata 6 2016; Errata 7-9 2017) Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318-14) and Commentary (ACI 318R-14)
- ACI SP-66 (2004) ACI Detailing Manual

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- ASTM A153/A153M (2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
- ASTM A167 (2011) Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
- ASTM A185/A185M (2007) Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain, for Concrete
- ASTM A615/A615M (2016) Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
- ASTM A641/A641M (2019) Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire
- ASTM A653/A653M (2019) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
- ASTM A951/A951M (2011) Standard Specification for Steel Wire for Masonry Joint Reinforcement
- ASTM A996/A996M (2016) Standard Specification for

	Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A1008/A1008M	(2016) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable
ASTM A1064/A1064M	(2017) Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete
ASTM B370	(2012) Standard Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction
ASTM C90	(2016) Standard Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units
ASTM C129	(2017) Standard Specification for Nonloadbearing Concrete Masonry Units
ASTM C207	(2018) Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes
ASTM C270	(2014a2019) Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry
ASTM C476	(2018) Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry
ASTM C494/C494M	(2017) Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C744	(2016) Prefaced Concrete and Calcium Silicate Masonry Units
ASTM C780	(2017) Standard Test Method for Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry
ASTM C1019	(2018) Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Grout
ASTM C1314	(2014) Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Masonry Prisms
ASTM C1384	(2012a) Standard Specification for Admixtures for Masonry Mortars
ASTM C1611/C1611M	(2014) Standard Test Method for Slump Flow of Self-Consolidating Concrete
ASTM D2000	(2012; R 2017) Standard Classification System for Rubber Products in Automotive Applications

ASTM D2287 (2012) Nonrigid Vinyl Chloride Polymer and
Copolymer Molding and Extrusion Compounds

ASTM E514/E514M (2014a) Standard Test Method for Water
Penetration and Leakage Through Masonry

THE MASONRY SOCIETY (TMS)

TMS MSJC (2016) Masonry Standard Joint Committee's
(MSJC) Book - Building Code Requirements
and Specification for Masonry Structures,
Containing TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5, TMS
602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, and Companion
Commentaries

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Cut CMU Drawings; G

Reinforcement Detail Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Hot Weather Procedures; G

Cold Weather Procedures; G

Cement; G

Cementitious Materials; G

Insulation; G

SD-04 Samples

Mock-Up Panel; G

Concrete Masonry Units (CMU); G, S

Admixtures for Masonry Mortar; G, S

Anchors, Ties, and Bar Positioners; G

Joint Reinforcement; G

Insulation; G

SD-05 Design Data

Masonry Compressive Strength; G

Fire-Rated Concrete Masonry Units

Bracing Calculations; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Fire-Rated Concrete Masonry Units

Field Testing of Mortar

Field Testing of Grout

Prism Tests

Single-Wythe Masonry Wall Water Penetration Test

SD-07 Certificates

Special Masonry Inspector Qualifications

Concrete Masonry Units (CMU)

Precast Concrete Units

Cementitious Materials

Admixtures for Masonry Mortar

Admixtures for Grout; S

Anchors, Ties, and Bar Positioners

Joint Reinforcement

Insulation

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Admixtures for Masonry Mortar; S

Admixtures for Grout; S

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Take-Back Program

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Recycled Content of Cement; S

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Masonry Mock-Up Panels

1.3.1.1 Mock-Up Panel Location

After material samples are approved and prior to starting masonry work,

construct a [mock-up panel](#) for each type and color of masonry required. At least 48 hours prior to constructing the panel or panels, submit written notification to the Contracting Officer. Do not build-in mock-up panels as part of the structure; locate mock-up panels where directed. Construct portable mock-up panels or locate in an area where they will not be disrupted during construction.

1.3.1.2 Mock-Up Panel Configuration

Construct mock-up panels L-shaped or otherwise configured to represent all of the wall elements. Construct panels of the size necessary to demonstrate the acceptable level of workmanship for each type of masonry represented on the project. Provide a straight panel or a leg of an L-shaped panel of minimum size [8 feet](#) long by [4 feet](#) high.

1.3.1.3 Mock-Up Panel Composition

Show full color range, texture, and bond pattern of the masonry work. Demonstrate mortar joint tooling; grouting of reinforced vertical cores, collar joints, bond beams, and lintels; positioning, securing, and lapping of reinforcing steel; positioning and lapping of joint reinforcement (including prefabricated corners); and cleaning of masonry work during the construction of the panels. Also include installation or application procedures for anchors, wall ties, [CMU control joints](#), [insulation](#), [flashing](#), [row lock courses and weeps](#). When the panel represents reinforced masonry, include a [2 by 2 foot](#) opening placed at least [2 feet](#) above the panel base and [2 feet](#) away from all free edges, corners, and control joints. Provide required reinforcing around this opening as well as at wall corners and control joints.

1.3.1.4 Mock-Up Panel Construction Method

Where anchored veneer walls or cavity walls are required, demonstrate and receive approval for the method of construction; i.e., either bring up the two wythes together or separately, with the insulation and appropriate ties placed within the specified tolerances across the cavity. Where masonry is to be grouted, demonstrate and receive approval on the method that will be used to bring up the masonry wythes; support the reinforcing bars; and grout cells, bond beams, lintels, and collar joints using the requirements specified herein. When water-repellent is specified to be applied to the masonry, apply the approved product to the mock-up panel. Construct panels on a properly designed concrete foundation.

1.3.1.5 Mock-Up Panel Purpose

The completed panels is used as the standard of workmanship for the type of masonry represented. Do not commence masonry work until the mock-up panel for that type of masonry construction has been completed and approved. Protect panels from the weather and construction operations until the masonry work has been completed and approved. Perform cleaning procedures on the mockup and obtain approval of the Contracting Officer prior to cleaning the building. After completion of the work, completely remove the mock-up panels, including all foundation concrete, from the construction site.

1.3.2 [Special Masonry Inspector Qualifications](#)

Refer to Section [01 45 35](#) SPECIAL INSPECTIONS for qualifications and responsibilities of the masonry special inspector.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver, store, handle, and protect material to avoid chipping, breakage, and contact with soil or contaminating material. Store and prepare materials in already disturbed areas to minimize project site disturbance and size of project site.

1.4.1 Masonry Units

Cover and protect masonry units from precipitation. Conform to handling and storage requirements of **TMS MSJC**.

- a. Pack concrete masonry units in the manufacturer's standard paper cartons, trays, or shrink wrapped pallets with a divider between each unit. Do not stack pallets. Do not remove units from cartons until cartons are placed on scaffolds or in the location where units are to be laid.
- b. Mark prefabricated lintels on top sides to show either the lintel schedule number or the number and size of top and bottom bars.

1.4.2 Reinforcement, Anchors, and Ties

Store steel reinforcing bars, coated anchors, ties, and joint reinforcement above the ground. Maintain steel reinforcing bars and uncoated ties free of loose mill scale and loose rust.

1.4.3 Cementitious Materials, Sand and Aggregates

Deliver cementitious and other packaged materials in unopened containers, plainly marked and labeled with manufacturers' names and brands. Store cementitious material in dry, weathertight enclosures or completely cover. Handle cementitious materials in a manner that will prevent the inclusion of foreign materials and damage by water or dampness. Store sand and aggregates in a manner to prevent contamination and segregation.

1.5 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

Conform to **TMS MSJC** for hot and cold weather masonry erection.

1.5.1 Hot Weather Procedures

When ambient air temperature exceeds **100 degrees F**, or exceeds **90 degrees F** and the wind velocity is greater than **8 mph**, comply with **TMS MSJC** Article 1.8 D for: preparation prior to conducting masonry work; construction while masonry work is in progress; and protection for newly completed masonry.

1.5.2 Cold Weather Procedures

When ambient temperature is below **40 degrees F**, comply with **TMS MSJC** Article 1.8 C for: preparation prior to conducting masonry work; construction while masonry work is in progress; and protection for newly completed masonry.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

2.1.1 Design - Specified Compressive Strength of Masonry

The specified compressive strength of masonry, f'_m , is as indicated for each type of masonry.

2.1.2 Performance - Verify [Masonry Compressive Strength](#)

Verify specified compressive strength of masonry using the "Unit Strength Method" of [TMS MSJC](#). Submit calculations and certifications of unit and mortar strength.

Verify specified compressive strength of masonry using the "Prism Test Method" of [TMS MSJC](#) when the "Unit Strength Method" cannot be used. Submit test results.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

2.2.1 General Requirements

Do not change the source of materials, which will affect the appearance of the finished work, after the work has started except with Contracting Officer's approval. Submit test reports from an approved independent laboratory. Certify test reports on a previously tested material as the same materials as that proposed for use in this project. Submit certificates of compliance stating that the materials meet the specified requirements.

2.2.2 [Concrete Units](#)

2.2.2.1 [Concrete Masonry Units \(CMU\)](#)

2.2.2.1.1 [Cement](#)

Use only cement that has a low alkali content and is of one brand.

2.2.2.1.2 [Recycled Content](#)

Provide units with a minimum of 10 percent post-consumer recycled content, or a minimum of 5 percent post-industrial recycled content, based on mass, cost, or volume. Units may contain post-consumer or post-industrial recycled content.

2.2.2.1.3 [Size](#)

Provide units with specified dimension of 7-5/8 or 11-5/8 [inches](#) wide, 7-5/8 [inches](#) high, and 15-5/8 [inches](#) long.

2.2.2.1.4 [Surfaces](#)

Provide units with exposed surfaces that are smooth and of uniform texture.

2.2.2.1.5 [Weather Exposure](#)

Provide concrete masonry units with water-repellant admixture added during manufacture where units will be exposed to weather.

2.2.2.1.6 Unit Types

- a. Hollow Load-Bearing Units: **ASTM C90**, medium weight. Provide load-bearing units for exterior walls, foundation walls, load-bearing walls, and shear walls.
- b. Hollow Non-Load-Bearing Units: **ASTM C129**, medium weight. Load-bearing units may be provided in lieu of non-load-bearing units.
- c. Solid Load-Bearing Units: **ASTM C90**, medium weight units. Provide solid units as indicated.

2.2.2.1.7 Jamb Units

Provide jamb units of the shapes and sizes to conform with wall units. Solid units may be incorporated in the masonry work where necessary to fill out at corners, gable slopes, and elsewhere as approved.

Provide sash jamb units with a 3/4 by 3/4 inch groove near the center at end of each unit.

2.2.2.2 Architectural Units

Provide architectural units with ground face patterned face shell where exposed as shown on drawings.

2.2.2.3 Fire-Rated Concrete Masonry Units

For indicated fire-rated construction, provide concrete masonry units of minimum equivalent thickness for the fire rating indicated and the corresponding type of aggregates indicated in TABLE I. Units containing more than one of the aggregates listed in TABLE I will be rated by linear interpolation based on the percent by dry-rodded volume of each aggregate used in manufacturing the units.

TABLE I FIRE-RATED CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS							
Aggregate Type	Minimum Equivalent Thickness for Fire-Resistance Rating, inch						
	1/2 hour	3/4 hour	1 hour	1-1/2 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
Calcareous or siliceous gravel (other than limestone)	2.0	2.4	2.8	3.6	4.2	5.3	6.2
Limestone, cinders, or air-cooled slag	1.9	2.3	2.7	3.4	4.0	5.0	5.9
Expanded clay, expanded shale, or expanded slate	1.8	2.2	2.6	3.3	3.6	4.4	5.1
Expanded slag or pumice	1.5	1.9	2.1	2.7	3.2	4.0	4.7

Determine equivalent thickness in accordance with **ACI 216.1**. Where walls are to receive plaster or be faced with brick, or otherwise form an assembly; include the thickness of plaster or brick or other material in the assembly in determining the equivalent thickness. Submit calculation results.

2.2.2.4 Prefaced Concrete Masonry Units

Prefaced concrete masonry units may be provided in lieu of ceramic glazed structural clay facing tile units. Where prefaced concrete masonry units are provided, concrete masonry unit backing may be omitted when the nominal thickness of the prefaced concrete masonry units is the same as the total indicated nominal thickness of the facing tile plus the backing.

- a. Provide prefaced concrete masonry units conforming to **ASTM C744** using masonry units conforming to **ASTM C90**, with the facing turned over the edges and ends of the unit at least **3/8 inch** in the direction of the thickness of the unit to form a lip at least **1/16 inch** thick. Limit variation in color and texture to that in the approved sample.
- b. Provide all shapes and sized for a complete installation. Use bullnose units along sills and caps and at vertical external corners including door jambs, window jambs, and other such openings with a bullnose radius of **1 inch**. Cove base units to meet finished floor surfaces where ceramic tile floor occurs.

2.2.3 Precast Concrete Units

2.2.3.1 General

- a. Provide precast concrete trim, lintels, copings, splashblocks and sills that are factory-made units in a plant regularly engaged in producing precast concrete units. Unless otherwise indicated, provide precast concrete with minimum **4,000 psi** compressive strength, conforming to Section **03 30 00** CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE using **1/2 inch** to No. 4 nominal-size coarse aggregate, and with reinforcement required for handling of the units. Maintain minimum clearance of **3/4 inch** between reinforcement and faces of units.
- b. Unless precast-concrete items have been subjected during manufacture to saturated-steam pressure of at least **120 psi** for at least 5 hours, either damp-cure for 24 hours or steam-cure and then age under cover for 28 days or longer. In precast concrete members weighing over **80 pounds** provide built-in loops of galvanized wire or other approved provisions for lifting and anchoring.
- c. Fabricate units with beds and joints at right angles to the face, with sharp true arises and with drip grooves on the underside where units overhang walls. Form exposed-to-view surfaces free of surface voids, spalls, cracks, and chipped or broken edges and with uniform appearance and color. Unless otherwise specified, provide units with a smooth dense finish.
- d. Prior to installation, wet and inspect each unit for crazing. Items showing evidence of dusting, spalling, crazing, or having surfaces treated with a protective coating will be rejected.
- e. Submit specified factory certificates.

- f. Provide architectural cast stone masonry heads, and sills that are manufactured in a plant by a producer regularly engaged in producing cast stone. Provide cast stone units that comply with ASTM C1364. Submit test reports and three exemplars of the same cast stone product installed in similar projects in similar climatic conditions.

2.2.3.2 Precast Concrete Lintels

Provide precast concrete lintels, unless otherwise shown, of a thickness equal to the wall and reinforced with minimum two No. 4 bars for the full length. Provide top and bottom bars for lintels over 36 inches in length. Provide at least 8 inches bearing at each end. Label the top of lintels and clearly mark each lintel to show location in the structure. Design reinforced lintels in conformance with ACI 318 for flexural and shear strength, using concrete with a minimum 28 day compressive strength of 4,000 psi. Limit lintel deflection due to dead plus live load to L/600 or 0.3 inches.

2.2.3.3 Precast Concrete Sills and Copings

Cast sills and copings washes. For windows having mullions, cast sills in sections with head joints at mullions and a 1/4 inch allowance for mortar joints. Roughen the ends of sills, except a 3/4 inch wide margin at exposed surfaces, for bond. Provide rounded nosings on treads of door sills. Reinforce sills with not less than two No. 4 bars.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

2.3.1 Vibrators

Maintain at least one spare vibrator on site at all times.

2.3.2 Grout Pumps

Pumping through aluminum tubes is not permitted.

2.4 MATERIALS

2.4.1 Mortar Materials

2.4.1.1 Cementitious Materials

Provide cementitious materials that conform to those permitted by ASTM C270.

2.4.1.2 Hydrated Lime and Alternates

Provide lime that conforms to one of the materials permitted by ASTM C207 for use in combination with portland cement, hydraulic cement, and blended hydraulic cement. Do not use lime in combination with masonry cement or mortar cement.

2.4.1.3 Admixtures for Masonry Mortar

In cold weather, use a non-chloride based accelerating admixture that conforms to ASTM C1384, unless Type III portland cement is used in the mortar.

In showers and kitchens, use mortar that contains a water-repellent admixture that conforms to ASTM C1384. Provide a water-repellent

admixture, conforming to [ASTM C1384](#) and of the same brand and manufacturer as the block's integral water-repellent, in the mortar used to place concrete masonry units that have an integral water-repellent admixture.

2.4.1.4 Aggregate and Water

Provide aggregate (sand) and water that conform to materials permitted by [ASTM C270](#).

2.4.2 Grout and Ready-Mix Grout Materials

2.4.2.1 Cementitious Materials for Grout

Provide cementitious materials that conform to those permitted by [ASTM C476](#).

2.4.2.2 Admixtures for Grout

Water-reducing admixtures that conform to [ASTM C494/C494M](#) Type F or G and viscosity-modifying admixtures that conform to [ASTM C494/C494M](#) Type S are permitted for use in grout. Other admixtures require approval by the Contracting Officer.

In cold weather, a non-chloride based accelerating admixture may be used subject to approval by the Contracting Officer; use accelerating admixture that is non-corrosive and conforms to [ASTM C494/C494M](#), Type C.

2.4.2.3 Aggregate and Water

Provide fine and coarse aggregates and water that conform to materials permitted by [ASTM C476](#).

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

2.5.1 Mortar Mix

- a. Provide mortar Type S unless specified otherwise herein.
- b. Use [ASTM C270](#) Type S cement-lime mortar or mortar cement mortar unless specified otherwise herein.
- c. Provide approved commercial fire clay mortar or refractory cement (calcium-aluminate) mortar for fire brick and flue liners.
- d. For field-batched mortar, measure component materials by volume. Use measuring boxes for materials that do not come in packages, such as sand, for consistent batching. Mix cementitious materials and aggregates between 3 and 5 minutes in a mechanical batch mixer with a sufficient amount of water to produce a workable consistency. Do not hand mix mortar unless approved by the Contracting Officer. Maintain workability of mortar by remixing or retempering. Discard mortar that has begun to stiffen or is not used within 2-1/2 hours after initial mixing.
- e. For preblended mortar, follow manufacturer's mixing instructions.

2.5.2 Grout and Ready Mix Grout Mix

Use grout that conforms to [ASTM C476](#), coarse. Use conventional grout with a slump between [8 and 11 inches](#). Use self-consolidating grout with

slump flow of 24 to 30 inches and a visual stability index (VSI) not greater than 1. Provide minimum grout strength of 2000 psi in 28 days, as tested in accordance with ASTM C1019. Do not change proportions and do not use materials with different physical or chemical characteristics in grout for the work unless additional evidence is furnished that grout meets the specified requirements. Use ready-mixed grout that conforms to ASTM C476.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

2.6.1 Grout Barriers

Grout barriers for vertical cores that consist of fine mesh wire, fiberglass, or expanded metal.

2.6.2 Anchors, Ties, and Bar Positioners

2.6.2.1 General

- a. Fabricate anchors and ties without drips or crimps. Size anchors and ties to provide a minimum of 5/8 inch mortar cover from each face of masonry.
- b. Fabricate steel wire anchors and ties shall from wire conforming to ASTM A1064/A1064M and hot-dip galvanize in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M.
- c. Fabricate joint reinforcement in conformance with ASTM A951/A951M. Hot dip galvanize joint reinforcement in exterior walls and in interior walls exposed to moist environment in conformance with ASTM A153/A153M. Galvanize joint reinforcement in other interior walls in conformance with ASTM A641/A641M; coordinate with paragraph JOINT REINFORCEMENT below.
- d. Fabricate sheet metal anchors and ties in conformance with ASTM A1008/A1008M. Hot dip galvanize sheet metal anchors and ties in exterior walls and in interior walls exposed to moist environment in compliance with ASTM A153/A153M Class B. Galvanize sheet metal anchors and ties in other interior walls in compliance with ASTM A653/A653M, Coating Designation G60.
- e. Submit two anchors, ties and bar positioners of each type used, as samples.

2.6.2.2 Wire Mesh Anchors

Provide wire mesh anchors of 1/4 inch mesh galvanized hardware cloth, conforming to ASTM A185/A185M, with length not less than 12 inches, at intersections of interior non-bearing masonry walls.

2.6.2.3 Wall Ties for Multi-Wythe Masonry Construction

Provide rectangular-shaped wall ties, fabricated of hot-dipped galvanized W2.8 diameter steel wire. Provide rectangular wall ties no less than 4 inches wide.

Provide adjustable type wall ties, if approved for use, that consist of two essentially U-shaped elements fabricated of minimum W2.8 diameter steel wire or pintle type ties that are inserted to eyes of horizontal

joint reinforcement, hot-dip galvanized. Provide adjustable ties with double pintle legs and allows a maximum offset of 1-1/4 inch between each element of the tie and maximum distance between connecting parts no more than 1/16 inch. Form the pintle and eye elements shall be formed so that both can be in the same plane. Wall ties may also be of a continuous type conforming to paragraph JOINT REINFORCEMENT.

2.6.2.4 Dovetail Anchors

Provide dovetail anchors of 3/16 inch diameter steel wire, triangular shaped, and attached to a 12 gauge or heavier steel dovetail section. Use these anchors to connect the exterior masonry wythe as it passes over the face of concrete columns, beams, or walls. Fill cells immediately above and below these anchors unless solid units are used. Furnish dovetail slots, which are specified to be installed by others, in accordance with Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

2.6.2.5 Adjustable Anchors

2.6.2.5.1 Anchorage to Structural Steel

Provide hot-dip galvanized adjustable anchors for connecting masonry walls to the structural steel frame as detailed on the drawings.

2.6.2.5.2 Anchorage of Veneer to Light Gauge Steel or Concrete Backing

Use one of the following types of adjustable anchors to connect veneer to light gauge steel or concrete backing:

- a. sheet metal at least 7/8 inch wide, 0.06 inch thick, and with corrugations having a wavelength of 0.3 to 0.5 inch and an amplitude of 0.06 to 0.10 inch or bent, notched or punched to provide equivalent performance;
- b. wire anchors of minimum size W1.7 with ends bent to form a minimum 2 inches extension and without drips;
- c. or wire pintle anchors used in conjunction with joint reinforcement.

Do not exceed 1/16 inch clearance between connecting parts of the tie. Assemble adjustable anchors to prevent disengagement. Provide pintle anchors with one or more pintle legs of wire size W2.8 and an offset not exceeding 1-1/4 inch.

2.6.2.6 Veneer Anchor Screws

Provide screws for attachment of veneer anchors to cold-formed steel framing members of size as required by design to provide the needed pullout load capacity but not less than No. 12. Provide length of screws such that the screws penetrate the holding member by not less than 5/8 inch.

2.6.2.7 Bar Positioners

Factory-fabricate bar positioners, used to prevent displacement of reinforcing bars during the course of construction, from 9 gauge steel wire or equivalent, and hot-dip galvanized. Bar positioners must be suitable for intended use and be corrosion resistant steel. Bar positioners not fully contained within the wythe must be hot-dip galvanized.

2.6.3 Joint Reinforcement

Factory fabricate joint reinforcement in conformance with ASTM A951/A951M, welded construction. Provide ladder type joint reinforcement, having one longitudinal wire in the mortar bed of each face shell for hollow units and one wire for solid units and with all wires a minimum of 9 gauge. Size joint reinforcement to provide a minimum of 5/8 inch cover from each face. Space crosswires not more than 16 inches. Provide joint reinforcement for straight runs in flat sections not less than 10 feet long. Provide joint reinforcement with factory formed corners and intersections. If approved for use, joint reinforcement may be furnished with adjustable wall tie features. Submit one piece of each type used, including corner and wall intersection pieces, showing at least two cross wires.

2.6.4 Reinforcing Steel Bars

Reinforcing steel bars and rods shall conform to ASTM A615/A615M or ASTM A996/A996M, Grade 60.

2.6.5 Concrete Masonry Control Joint Keys

Provide control joint keys of a factory fabricated solid section of natural or synthetic rubber (or combination thereof) conforming to ASTM D2000 M2AA-805 with a minimum durometer hardness of 80 or polyvinyl chloride conforming to ASTM D2287 Type PVC 654-4 with a minimum durometer hardness of 85. Form the control joint key with a solid shear section not less than 5/8 inch thick and 3/8 inch thick flanges, with a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch, to fit neatly, but without forcing, in masonry unit jamb sash grooves.

2.6.6 Expansion-Joint Materials

Provide backer rod and sealant, adequate to accommodate joint compression and extension equal to 50 percent of the width of the joint. Provide the backer rod of compressible rod stock of closed cell polyethylene foam, polyurethane foam, butyl rubber foam, or other flexible, nonabsorptive material as recommended by the sealant manufacturer. Provide sealant in conformance with Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

Submit one piece of each type of material used.

2.6.7 Through Wall Flashing and Weeps

2.6.7.1 General

Provide coated copper, copper or stainless steel sheet, self-adhesive rubberized sheet, or reinforced membrane sheet flashing except that flashing indicated to terminate in reglets shall be metal or coated-metal flashing and except that the material shall be one which is not adversely affected by dampproofing material.

2.6.7.2 Stainless Steel Flashing

Provide copper sheet, complying with ASTM B370, minimum 16 ounce weight; or stainless steel, ASTM A167, Type 304 or 316, 0.015 inch thick, No. 2D finish. Where indicated, provide with factory-fabricated deformations that mechanically bond flashing against horizontal movement in all

directions, where deformations consist of dimples, diagonal corrugations, or a combination of dimples and transverse corrugations.

2.6.7.3 Reinforced Membrane Flashing

Provide polyester film core with a reinforcing fiberglass scrim bonded to one side. Provide membrane that is impervious to moisture, flexible, is not affected by caustic alkalis, and after being exposed for not less than 1/2 hour to a temperature of 32 degrees F, shows no cracking when, at that temperature, it is bent 180 degrees over a 1/16 inch diameter mandrel and then bent at the same point over the same size mandrel in the opposite direction 360 degrees.

2.6.7.4 Rubberized Flashing

Provide self-adhesive rubberized asphalt sheet flashing consisting of 32-mil thick pliable and highly adhesive rubberized asphalt compound bonded completely and integrally to 8-mil thick, high density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of 40 mils. Provide rubberized, asphalt-based mastic and surface conditioner that are each approved by flashing manufacturer for use with flashing material.

2.6.7.5 Weep Ventilators

Provide weep ventilators that are prefabricated from stainless steel or plastic. Provide inserts with grill or louver-type openings designed to allow the passage of moisture from cavities and to prevent the entrance of insects, and with a rectangular closure strip to prevent mortar droppings from clogging the opening. Provide ventilators with compressible flanges to fit in a standard 3/8 inch wide mortar joint and with height equal to the nominal height of the unit.

2.6.7.6 Single-Wythe Exterior Wall CMU Flashing System

In single-wythe exterior CMU walls, provide a system of CMU cell flashing pans and interlocking CMU web covers made from UV-resistant, high-density polyethylene. For exterior CMU walls, provide a flashing/weep system in open cores that do not receive grout. Cell flashing pans are to have integral weep spouts built into mortar bed joints that extend into the cell to prevent clogging with mortar.

2.6.7.7 Metal Drip Edge

Provide stainless steel drip edge, 15-mil thick, hemmed edges, with down-turned drip at the outside edge and upturned dam at the inside edge for use with membrane flashings.

2.6.8 RIGID BOARD-TYPE INSULATION

Provide rigid board-type insulation as specified in Section 07 21 13 BOARD AND BLOCK INSULATION.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Prior to start of work, verify the applicable conditions as set forth in TMS MSJC, inspection.

3.2 PREPARATION

3.2.1 Stains

Protect exposed surfaces from mortar and other stains. When mortar joints are tooled, remove mortar from exposed surfaces with fiber brushes and wooden paddles. Protect base of walls from splash stains by covering adjacent ground with sand, sawdust, or polyethylene.

3.2.2 Loads

Do not apply uniform loads for at least 12 hours or concentrated loads for at least 72 hours after masonry is constructed. Provide temporary bracing as required.

3.2.3 Concrete Surfaces

Where masonry is to be placed, clean concrete of laitance, dust, dirt, oil, organic matter, or other foreign materials and slightly roughen to provide a surface texture with a depth of at least $\frac{1}{8}$ inch. Sandblast, if necessary, to remove laitance from pores and to expose the aggregate.

3.2.4 Shelf Angles

Adjust shelf angles as required to keep the masonry level and at the proper elevation.

3.2.5 Bracing

Provide bracing and scaffolding necessary for masonry work. Design bracing to resist wind pressure as required by OSHA and local codes and submit [bracing calculations](#), sealed by a registered professional engineer. Do not remove bracing in less than 10 days.

3.3 ERECTION

3.3.1 General

- a. Coordinate masonry work with the work of other trades to accommodate built-in items and to avoid cutting and patching. Lay masonry units in running bond pattern. Lay facing courses level with back-up courses, unless the use of adjustable ties has been approved in which case the tolerances is plus or minus $\frac{1}{2}$ inch. Adjust each unit to its final position while mortar is still soft and has plastic consistency.
- b. Remove and clean units that have been disturbed after the mortar has stiffened, and relay with fresh mortar. Keep air spaces, cavities, chases, expansion joints, and spaces to be grouted free from mortar and other debris. Select units to be used in exposed masonry surfaces from those having the least amount of chipped edges or other imperfections detracting from the appearance of the finished work.
- c. When necessary to temporarily discontinue the work, step (rack) back the masonry for joining when work resumes. Toothing may be used only when specifically approved by the Contracting Officer. Before resuming work, remove loose mortar and thoroughly clean the exposed joint. Cover the top of walls subjected to rain or snow with

nonstaining waterproof covering or membrane when work is not in process. Extend the covering a minimum of 610 mm 2 feet down on each side of the wall and hold securely in place.

- d. Ensure that units being laid and surfaces to receive units are free of water film and frost. Lay solid units in a nonfurrowed full bed of mortar. Bevel mortar for veneer wythes and slope down toward the cavity side. Shove units into place so that the vertical joints are tight. Completely fill vertical joints between solid units with mortar, except where indicated at control, expansion, and isolation joints. Place hollow units so that mortar extends to the depth of the face shell at heads and beds, unless otherwise indicated. Mortar will be permitted to protrude up to 1/2 inch into the space or cells to be grouted. Provide means to prevent mortar from dropping into the space below or clean grout spaces prior to grouting.
- e. In multi-wythe construction with collar joints no more than 3/4 inch wide, bring up the inner wythe not more than 16 inches ahead of the outer wythe. Fill collar joints with mortar during the laying of the facing wythe, and filling shall not lag the laying of the facing wythe by back-buttering each unit as it is laid.

3.3.1.1 Jointing

Tool mortar joints when the mortar is thumbprint hard. Tool horizontal joints after tooling vertical joints. Brush mortar joints to remove loose and excess mortar.

3.3.1.1.1 Tooled Joints

Tool mortar joints in exposed exterior and interior masonry surfaces concave, using a jointer that is slightly larger than the joint width so that complete contact is made along the edges of the unit. Perform tooling so that the mortar is compressed and the joint surface is sealed. Use a jointer of sufficient length to obtain a straight and true mortar joint. No exterior joints are to be left un-tooled.

3.3.1.1.2 Flush Joints

Flush cut mortar joints in concealed masonry surfaces and joints at electrical outlet boxes in wet areas. Finish flush cut joints by cutting off the mortar flush with the face of the wall. Point joints in unparged masonry walls below grade tight. For architectural units, such as fluted units, completely fill both the head and bed joints and flush cut.

3.3.1.1.3 Door and Window Frame Joints

On the exposed interior side of exterior frames, joints between frames and abutting masonry walls shall be raked to a depth of 3/8 inch. On the exterior side of exterior frames, joints between frames and abutting masonry walls shall be raked to a depth of 3/8 inch.

3.3.1.1.4 Joint Widths

- a. Construct brick masonry with mortar joint widths equal to the difference between the specified and nominal dimensions of the unit, within tolerances permitted by TMS MSJC.
- b. Provide 3/8 inch wide mortar joints in concrete masonry, except for

prefaced concrete masonry units.

- c. Provide 3/8 inch wide mortar joints on unfaced side of prefaced concrete masonry units and not less than 3/16 inch nor more than 1/4 inch wide on prefaced side.
- d. Maintain mortar joint widths within tolerances permitted by TMS MSJC

3.3.1.2 Cutting and Fitting

Use full units of the proper size wherever possible, in lieu of cut units. Locate cut units where they would have the least impact on the architectural aesthetic goals of the facility. Perform cutting and fitting, including that required to accommodate the work of others, by masonry mechanics using power masonry saws. Concrete masonry units may be wet or dry cut. Before being placed in the work, dry wet-cut units to the same surface-dry appearance as uncut units being laid in the wall. Provide cut edges that are clean, true and sharp.

- a. Carefully make openings in the masonry so that wall plates, cover plates or escutcheons required by the installation will completely conceal the openings and will have bottoms parallel with the masonry bed joints. Provide reinforced masonry lintels above openings over 12 inches wide for pipes, ducts, cable trays, and other wall penetrations, unless steel sleeves are used.
- b. Do not reduce masonry units in size by more than one-third in height and one-half in length. Do not locate cut products at ends of walls, corners, and other openings.

3.3.1.3 Unfinished Work

Rack back unfinished work for joining with new work. Tooothing may be resorted to only when specifically approved by the Contracting Officer. Remove loose mortar and thoroughly clean the exposed joints before laying new work.

3.3.1.4 Expansion Joints

Provide expansion joints as indicated. Construct by filling with a compressible foam pad. Ensure that no mortar or other noncompressible materials are within the joint. Install backer rod and sealant in accordance with Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.3.1.5 Control Joints

Provide control joints in concrete masonry as indicated. Construct by using special control-joint units in accordance with the details shown on the Drawings. Form a continuous vertical joint at control joint locations, including through bond beams, by utilizing half blocks in alternating courses on each side of the joint. Interrupt the control joint key in courses containing continuous bond beam reinforcement. Interrupt the horizontal reinforcement and grout in bond beams at the control joint except in bond beams at the floor and roof diaphragms.

Where mortar was placed in the joint, rake both faces of the control joints to a depth of 3/4 inch. Install backer rod and sealant on both faces in accordance with Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.3.2 Anchored Veneer Construction

For veneer with a masonry backup wythe, install through-wall flashings with the exterior wythe, securing the top edge of the flashing with a termination bar and sealant, or protect flashings that are installed with the interior wythe from damage until they are fully enclosed in the wall.

- b. Provide anchors (ties) to connect the veneer to its backing in sufficient quantity as recommended by the manufacturer and in compliance with Section 09 24 23 CEMENT STUCCO. Provide additional anchors around openings larger than 16 inch in either direction. Space anchors around perimeter of opening at a maximum of 3 feet on center. Place anchors within 12 inches of openings. Anchors with drips are not permitted.
- c. With solid units, embed anchors in mortar joint and extend into the veneer a minimum of 1-1/2 inch, with at least 5/8 inch mortar cover to the outside face.
- d. With hollow units, embed anchors in mortar or grout and extend into the veneer a minimum of 1-1/2 inch, with at least 5/8 inch mortar or grout cover to outside face.

3.3.3 Reinforced, Single Wythe Concrete Masonry Units Walls

3.3.3.1 Concrete Masonry Unit Placement

- a. Fully bed units used to form piers, pilasters, columns, starting courses on footings, solid foundation walls, lintels, and beams, and where cells are to be filled with grout in mortar under both face shells and webs. Provide mortar beds under both face shells for other units. Mortar head joints for a distance in from the face of the unit not less than the thickness of the face shell.
- b. Solidly grout foundation walls below grade.
- c. Stiffen double walls at wall-mounted plumbing fixtures by use of strap anchors, two above each fixture and two below each fixture, located to avoid pipe runs, and extending from center to center of each wall within the double wall. Adequately reinforce walls and partitions for support of wall-hung plumbing fixtures when chair carriers are not specified.
- d. Submit drawings showing elevations of walls exposed to view and indicating the location of all cut CMU products.

3.3.3.2 Preparation for Reinforcement

Lay units in such a manner as to preserve the unobstructed vertical continuity of cores to be grouted. Remove mortar protrusions extending 1/2 inch or more into cells before placing grout. Position reinforcing bars accurately as indicated before placing grout. Where vertical reinforcement occurs, fill cores solid with grout in accordance with paragraph PLACING GROUT in this Section.

3.3.4 ANCHORAGE

3.3.4.1 Anchorage to Concrete

Anchorage of masonry to the face of concrete columns, beams, or walls shall be with dovetail anchors spaced not over 16 inches on centers vertically and 24 inches on center horizontally.

3.3.4.2 Anchorage to Structural Steel

Masonry shall be anchored to vertical structural steel framing with adjustable steel wire anchors spaced not over 16 inches on centers vertically, and if applicable, not over 24 inches on centers horizontally.

3.3.4.3 Anchorage at Intersecting Walls

Provide wire mesh anchors at maximum 16 inches spacing at intersections of interior non-bearing masonry walls.

Anchor structural masonry walls as indicated on drawings, unless the drawings indicate a movement joint at the intersection.

3.3.5 Lintels

3.3.5.1 Masonry Lintels

Construct masonry lintels with lintel units filled solid with grout in all courses and reinforced with a minimum of two No. 4 bars in the bottom course unless otherwise indicated. Extend lintel reinforcement beyond each side of masonry opening 40 bar diameters or 24 inches, whichever is greater. Support reinforcing bars in place prior to grouting and locate 1/2 inch above the bottom inside surface of the lintel unit.

3.3.5.2 Precast Concrete and Steel Lintels

Provide precast concrete and steel lintels as shown on the Drawings. Set lintels in a full bed of mortar with faces plumb and true. Provide steel and precast lintels with a minimum bearing length of 8 inches unless otherwise indicated. In partially grouted masonry, provide fully grouted units under the full lintel bearing length, unless otherwise indicated.

3.3.6 Sills and Copings

Set sills and copings in a full bed of mortar with faces plumb and true. Slope sills and copings to drain water. Mechanically anchor copings and sills longer than 4 feet as indicated.

3.4 INSTALLATION

3.4.1 Bar Reinforcement Installation

3.4.1.1 Preparation

Submit detail drawings showing bar splice locations. Identify bent bars on a bending diagram and reference and locate such bars on the drawings. Show wall dimensions, bar clearances, and wall openings. Utilize bending details that conform to the requirements of ACI SP-66. No approval will be given to the shop drawings until the Contractor certifies that all openings, including those for mechanical and electrical service, are

shown. If, during construction, additional masonry openings are required, resubmit the approved shop drawings with the additional openings shown along with the proposed changes. Clearly highlight location of these additional openings. Provide wall elevation drawings with minimum scale of **1/4 inch per foot**. Submit drawings including plans, elevations, and details of wall reinforcement; details of reinforcing bars at corners and wall intersections; offsets; tops, bottoms, and ends of walls; control and expansion joints; lintels; and wall openings.

Clean reinforcement of loose, flaky rust, scale, grease, mortar, grout, and other coatings that might destroy or reduce its bond prior to placing grout. Do not use bars with kinks or bends not shown on the approved shop drawings. Place reinforcement prior to grouting. Unless otherwise indicated, extend vertical wall reinforcement to within **2 inches** of tops of walls.

3.4.1.2 Positioning Bars

- a. Accurately place vertical bars within the cells at the positions indicated on the drawings. A minimum clearance of **1/2 inch** shall be maintained between the bars and masonry units. Provide minimum clearance between parallel bars of **1/2 inch** between the bars and masonry units for coarse grout and a minimum clearance of **1/4 inch** between the bars and masonry units for fine grout. Provide minimum clearance between parallel bars of **1 inch** or one diameter of the reinforcement, whichever is greater. Vertical reinforcement may be held in place using bar positioners located near the ends of each bar and at intermediate intervals of not more than 192 diameters of the reinforcement or by other means to prevent displacement beyond permitted tolerances. As masonry work progresses, secure vertical reinforcement to prevent displacement beyond allowable tolerances.
- b. Wire column and pilaster lateral ties in position around the vertical reinforcing bars. Place lateral ties in contact with the vertical reinforcement and do not place in horizontal mortar bed joints.
- c. Position horizontal reinforcing bars as indicated. Stagger splices in adjacent horizontal bars, unless otherwise indicated.
- d. Form splices by lapping bars as indicated. Do not cut, bend or eliminate reinforcing bars. Foundation dowel bars may be field-bent when permitted by **TMS MSJC**.

3.4.1.3 Splices of Bar Reinforcement

Lap splice reinforcing bars as indicated. When used, provide welded or mechanical connections that develop at least 125 percent of the specified yield strength of the reinforcement.

3.4.2 Placing Grout

3.4.2.1 General

Fill cells containing reinforcing bars with grout. Solidly grout hollow masonry units in walls or partitions supporting plumbing, heating, or other mechanical fixtures, voids at door and window jambs, and other indicated spaces. Solidly grout cells under lintel bearings on each side of openings for full height of openings. Solidly grout walls below grade, lintels, and bond beams. Units other than open end units may require

grouting each course to preclude voids in the units.

Discard site-mixed grout that is not placed within 1-1/2 hours after water is first added to the batch or when the specified slump is not met without adding water after initial mixing. Discard ready-mixed grout that does not meet the specified slump without adding water other than water that was added at the time of initial discharge. Allow sufficient time between grout lifts to preclude displacement or cracking of face shells of masonry units. Provide a grout shear key between lifts when grouting is delayed and the lower lift loses plasticity. If blowouts, flowouts, misalignment, or cracking of face shells should occur during construction, tear down the wall and rebuild.

3.4.2.2 Horizontal Grout Barriers

Embed horizontal grout barriers in mortar below cells of hollow units receiving grout.

3.4.2.3 Grout Holes and Cleanouts

3.4.2.3.1 Grout Holes

Provide grouting holes in slabs, spandrel beams, and other in-place overhead construction. Locate holes over vertical reinforcing bars or as required to facilitate grout fill in bond beams. Provide additional openings spaced not more than 16 inches on centers where grouting of hollow unit masonry is indicated. Form such openings not less than 4 inches in diameter or 3 by 4 inches in horizontal dimensions. Upon completion of grouting operations, plug and finish grouting holes to match surrounding surfaces.

3.4.2.3.2 Cleanouts for Hollow Unit Masonry Construction

For hollow masonry units, provide cleanout holes at the bottom of every grout pour in cores containing vertical reinforcement when the height of the grout pour exceeds 5 feet 4 inches. Where all cells are to be grouted, construct cleanout courses using bond beam units in an inverted position to permit cleaning of all cells. Provide cleanout holes at a maximum spacing of 32 inches where all cells are to be filled with grout.

Establish a new series of cleanouts if grouting operations are stopped for more than 4 hours. Provide cleanouts not less than 3 by 3 inch by cutting openings in one face shell. Manufacturer's standard cutout units may be used at the Contractor's option. Do not cleanout holes until masonry work, reinforcement, and final cleaning of the grout spaces have been completed and inspected. For walls which will be exposed to view, close cleanout holes in an approved manner to match surrounding masonry.

3.4.2.4 Grout Placement

A grout pour is the total height of masonry to be grouted prior to erection of additional masonry. A grout lift is an increment of grout placement within a grout pour. A grout pour is filled by one or more lifts of grout.

- a. Lay masonry to the top of a pour permitted by TMS MSJC Table 7, based on the size of the grout space and the type of grout. Prior to grouting, remove masonry protrusions that extend 1/2 inch or more into cells or spaces to be grouted. Provide grout holes and cleanouts in

accordance with paragraph GROUT HOLES AND CLEANOUTS above when the grout pour height exceeds 5 feet 4 inches. Hold reinforcement, bolts, and embedded connections rigidly in position before grouting is started. Do not prewet concrete masonry units.

- b. Place grout using a hand bucket, concrete hopper, or grout pump to fill the grout space without segregation of aggregate. Operate grout pumps to produce a continuous stream of grout without air pockets, segregation, or contamination.
- c. If the masonry has cured at least 4 hours, grout slump is maintained between 10 to 11 inches, and no intermediate reinforced bond beams are placed between the top and bottom of the pour height, place conventional grout in lifts not exceeding 12 feet 8 inches. For the same curing and slump conditions but with intermediate bond beams, limit conventional grout lift to the bottom of the lowest bond beam that is more than 5 feet 4 inches above the bottom of the lift, but do not exceed 12 feet 8 inches. If masonry has not cured at least 4 hours or grout slump is not maintained between 10 to 11 inches, place conventional grout in lifts not exceeding 5 feet 4 inches.
- d. Consolidate conventional grout lift and reconsolidate after initial settlement before placing next lift. For grout pours that are 12 inches or less in height, consolidate and reconsolidate grout by mechanical vibration or puddling. For grout pours that are greater than 12 inches in height, consolidate and reconsolidate grout by mechanical vibration. Apply vibrators at uniformly spaced points not further apart than the visible effectiveness of the machine. Limit duration of vibration to time necessary to produce satisfactory consolidation without causing segregation. If previous lift is not permitted to set, dip vibrator into previous lift. Do not insert vibrators into lower lifts that are in a semi-solidified state. If lower lift sets prior to placement of subsequent lift, form a grout key by terminating grout a minimum of 1-1/2 inch below a mortar joint. Vibrate each vertical cell containing reinforcement in partially grouted masonry. Do not form grout keys within beams.
- e. If the masonry has cured 4 hours, place self-consolidating grout (SCG) in lifts not exceeding the pour height. If masonry has not cured for at least 4 hours, place SCG in lifts not exceeding 5 feet 4 inches. Do not mechanically consolidate self-consolidating grout. Place self-consolidating grout in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- f. Upon completion of each day's grouting, remove waste materials and debris from the equipment, and dispose of outside the masonry.

3.4.3 Joint Reinforcement Installation

Install joint reinforcement at 16 inches on center unless otherwise indicated. Lap joint reinforcement not less than 6 inches. Install prefabricated sections at corners and wall intersections. Place the longitudinal wires of joint reinforcement in mortar beds to provide not less than 5/8 inch cover to either face of the unit.

3.4.4 Bond Beams

Reinforce and grout bond beams as indicated and as described in paragraphs above. Install grout barriers under bond beam units to retain the grout

as required, unless wall is fully grouted or solid bottom units are used. For high lift grouting in partially grouted masonry, provide grout retaining material on the top of bond beams to prevent upward flow of grout. Ensure that reinforcement is continuous, including around corners, except through control joints or expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4.5 Flashing and Weeps

- a. Install through-wall flashing at obstructions in the cavity and where indicated on Drawings. Ensure continuity of the flashing at laps and inside and outside corners by splicing in a manner approved by the flashing manufacturer. Ensure that the top edge of the flashing is sealed by lapping a minimum of 6 inches under the weather resistive barrier and turning the flashing **1/2 inch** into the mortar bed joint of backup masonry. Where indicated, secure the sheet metal flashing into a reglet cast into the concrete backup. Terminate the horizontal leg of the flashing by extending the sheet metal **1/2 inch** beyond the outside face of the exterior finish and turning downward with a hemmed drip. Provide sealant below the drip edge of through-wall flashing.
- b. Wherever through-wall flashing occurs, provide weep holes to drain flashing to exterior at acceptable locations as indicated. Provide weeps of weep ventilators. Locate weeps not more than **24 inches** on centers in mortar joints of the exterior wythe directly on the horizontal leg of through-wall flashing over foundations, bond beams, and any other horizontal interruptions of the cavity. Place weep holes perfectly horizontal or slightly canted downward to encourage water drainage outward and not inward. Other methods may be used for providing weeps when spacing is reduced to **16 inches** on center and approved by the Contracting Officer. Maintain weeps free of mortar and other obstructions.
- c. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where CMU cells are open. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall on the exterior side. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.

3.5 APPLICATION

3.5.1 Insulation

Insulate walls, where shown, by installing board-type insulation on the exterior side of the concrete masonry units. Apply board type insulation directly to the masonry or thru-wall flashing with adhesive. Neatly fit insulation between obstructions without impaling insulation on ties or anchors. Apply insulation in parallel courses with vertical joints breaking midway over the course below and in moderate contact with adjoining units without forcing. Cut to fit neatly against adjoining surfaces. Tape or seal the joints between the boards.

3.5.2 Interface with Other Products

3.5.2.1 Built-In Items

Fill spaces around built-in items with mortar. Point openings around flush-mount electrical outlet boxes in wet locations with mortar. Embed

anchors, ties, wall plugs, accessories, flashing, pipe sleeves and other items required to be built-in as the masonry work progresses. Fully embed anchors, ties and joint reinforcement in the mortar. Fill cells receiving anchor bolts and cells of the first course below bearing plates with grout, unless otherwise indicated.

3.5.2.2 Door and Window Frame Joints

On the exposed interior and exterior sides of exterior frames, rake joints between frames and abutting masonry walls to a depth of $3/8$ inch.

3.5.2.3 Bearing Plates

Set bearing plates for beams, joists, joist girders and similar structural members to the proper line and elevation with damp-pack bedding mortar, except where non-shrink grout is indicated. Provide bedding mortar and non-shrink grout as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

3.5.3 Tolerances

Lay masonry plumb, true to line, with courses level within the tolerances of TMS MSJC, Article 3.3 F.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.6.1 Tests

3.6.1.1 Field Testing of Mortar

Perform mortar testing at the following frequency: two times per day. For each required mortar test, provide a minimum of three mortar samples. Perform initial mortar testing prior to construction for comparison purposes during construction.

Prepare and test mortar samples for mortar aggregate ratio in accordance with ASTM C780 Appendix A4. Prepare and test mortar compressive strength specimens in accordance with ASTM C780 Appendix A6.

3.6.1.2 Field Testing of Grout

- a. Perform grout testing at the following frequency: two times per day. For each required grout property to be evaluated, provide a minimum of three specimens.
- b. Sample and test conventional and self-consolidating grout for compressive strength and temperature in accordance with ASTM C1019.
- c. Evaluate slump in conventional grout in accordance with ASTM C1019.
- d. Evaluate slump flow and visual stability index of self-consolidating grout in accordance with ASTM C1611/C1611M.

3.6.1.3 Prism Tests

Perform at least one prism test sample for each 5,000 square feet of wall but not less than three such tests for any building. Evaluate three prisms in each test. Fabricate, store, handle, and test prisms in accordance with ASTM C1314.

Seven-day tests may be used provided the relationship between the 7- and 28-day strengths of the masonry is established by the tests of the materials used. If the compressive strength of any prism falls below the specified value by more than 500 psi, take steps to assure that the load-carrying capacity of the structure is not jeopardized. If the likelihood of low-strength masonry is confirmed and computations indicate that the load-carrying capacity may have been significantly reduced, tests of cores drilled, or prisms sawed, from the area in question may be required. In such case, take three specimens for each prism test more than 500 psi below the specified value. Masonry in the area in question will be considered structurally adequate if the average compressive strength of three specimens is equal to or exceeds the specified value. Additional testing of specimens extracted from locations represented by erratic core or prism strength test results will be permitted.

3.6.1.4 Single-Wythe Masonry Wall Water Penetration Test

Prior to start of field construction of the single-wythe concrete masonry wall, perform masonry wall water penetration test on mock-up wall assemblies consisting of the identical design, materials, mix, and construction methods as the actual wall construction and in accordance with ASTM E514/E514M. Prepare a minimum of three specimens and cure for minimum 28 days prior to testing. Construct panels by the same methods, processes, and applications to be used on the project's construction site. Spray test for 6 hours on each specimen. If water is visible on back of test panels during the test and areas of dampness on the backside of the test panels do not exceed 25 percent of the wall area, the panels will be considered to have passed. Dampness is defined as any area of surface darkening or discoloration due to moisture penetration or accumulation below the observed surface.

Construct additional test panels for each failed test performed until three test panels pass the test. Factors that can affect test performance include materials, mixing, and quality of application and workmanship. Materials, mixing, and methods adjustments may be necessary in order to provide construction that passes the water penetration test. Document and record the test specimen construction materials and application and provide written test report in accordance with ASTM E514/E514M, supplemented by a detailed discussion of the specifics of test panel construction, application methods and processes used, quality of construction, and any variances or deviations that may have occurred between test panels during test panel construction. For failed test panels, identify in the supplemental report the variances, deficiencies or flaws that contributed to test panel failure and itemize the precautions to be taken in field construction of the masonry wall to prevent similar deficiencies and assure the wall construction replicates test panel conditions that pass the water penetration test. Submit the complete, certified test report, including supplemental report, to the Contracting Officer prior to start of single-wythe concrete masonry wall construction. Significant changes to materials, proportions, or construction techniques from those used in the passing water penetration test are grounds for performing new tests, at the discretion of the Contracting Officer.

3.6.2 Special Inspection

Perform special inspections and testing in accordance with Section 01 45 35 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS.

3.7 POINTING AND CLEANING

After mortar joints have attained their initial set, but prior to hardening, completely remove mortar and grout daubs and splashings from masonry-unit surfaces that will be exposed or painted. Before completion of the work, rake out defects in joints of masonry to be exposed or painted, fill with mortar, and tool to match existing joints. Immediately after grout work is completed, remove scum and stains that have percolated through the masonry work using a low pressure stream of water and a stiff bristled brush. Do not clean masonry surfaces, other than removing excess surface mortar, until mortar in joints has hardened. Leave masonry surfaces clean, free of mortar daubs, dirt, stain, and discoloration, including scum from cleaning operations, and with tight mortar joints throughout. Do not use metal tools and metal brushes for cleaning.

3.7.1 Dry-Brushing Concrete Masonry

Dry brush exposed concrete masonry surfaces at the end of each day's work and after any required pointing, using stiff-fiber bristled brushes.

3.8 CLOSE-OUT TAKE-BACK PROGRAM

Collect information from manufacturer for take-back program options. Set aside masonry units, full and partial, and packaging to be returned to manufacturer for recycling into new product. When such a service is not available, seek local recyclers to reclaim the materials. Submit documentation that includes contact information, summary of procedures, and the limitations and conditions applicable to the project. Indicate manufacturer's commitment to reclaim materials for recycling and/or reuse.

3.9 PROTECTION

Protect facing materials against staining. Cover top of walls with nonstaining waterproof covering or membrane to protect from moisture intrusion when work is not in progress. Continue covering the top of the unfinished walls until the wall is waterproofed with a complete roof or parapet system. Extend covering a minimum of 2 feet down on each side of the wall and hold securely in place. Before starting or resuming work, clean top surface of masonry in place of loose mortar and foreign material.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 05 23.16

STRUCTURAL WELDING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 360 (2016) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING (ASNT)

ANSI/ASNT CP-189 (2016) ASNT Standard for Qualification and Certification of Nondestructive Testing Personnel (ANSI/ASNT CP-105-2006)

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A2.4 (2012) Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing and Nondestructive Examination

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016) Structural Welding Code - Steel

AWS D1.3/D1.3M (2018) Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel

AWS D1.4/D1.4M (2011) Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel

AWS D14.4/D14.4M (2012) Specification for Welded Joints for Machinery and Equipment

AWS QC1 (2016) Specification for AWS Certification of Welding Inspectors

AWS Z49.1 (2012) Safety in Welding and Cutting and Allied Processes

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E165/E165M (2018) Standard Practice for Liquid Penetrant Examination for General Industry

ASTM E709 (2015) Standard Guide for Magnetic Particle Examination

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Welding Quality Assurance Plan; G

SD-03 Product Data

Welding Procedure Qualifications; G

Welder, Welding Operator, and Tacker Qualification

Previous Qualifications

Pre-Qualified Procedures; G

Welding Electrodes and Rods

SD-06 Test Reports

Nondestructive Testing

Weld Inspection Log

SD-07 Certificates

Certified Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS)

Certified Brazing Procedure Specifications (BPS)

Certified Procedure Qualification Records (PQR)

Certified Welder Performance Qualifications (WPQ)

Certified Brazer Performance Qualifications (BPQ)

Certified Welding Inspector

Nondestructive Testing Personnel

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Except for pre-qualified (in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M) and previously qualified procedures, each Contractor performing welding must record in detail and qualify the welding procedure specification for any welding procedure followed in the fabrication of weldments. Conform welding procedure qualifications to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and to the specifications in this section. Submit for approval copies of the welding procedure specification and the procedure qualification records for each type of welding being performed. Submission of the welder, welding operator, or tacker qualification test records is also required. Approval

of any procedure, however, does not relieve the Contractor of the sole responsibility for producing a finished structure meeting all the specified requirements. Submit this information on the forms in Annex M of AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Individually identify and clearly reference on the detail drawings and erection drawings all welding procedure specifications, or suitably key them to the contract drawings. In case of conflict between this specification and AWS D1.1/D1.1M, this specification governs.

1.3.1 General Requirements

Fabricate work in an AISC Certified Fabrication Plant, Category BU. Erect work by an AISC Certified Erector, Category CSE.

a. For Structural Projects, provide documentation of the following:

- (1) Component Thickness 1/8 inch and greater: Qualification documents (WPS, PQR, and WPQ) in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- (2) Component Thickness Less than 1/8 inch: Qualification documents (WPS, PQR, and WPQ) in accordance with AWS D1.3/D1.3M.
- (3) Reinforcing Steel: Qualification documents (WPS, PQR, and WPQ) in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.

b. For other applications, provide documentation of the following:

- (1) Submit two copies of the Certified Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS), Certified Brazing Procedure Specifications (BPS) and Certified Procedure Qualification Records (PQR) to the Contracting Officer for review.
- (2) Submit two copies of the Certified Welder Performance Qualifications (WPQ) and Certified Brazier Performance Qualifications (BPQ) to the Contracting Officer for review within fifteen calendar days prior to any employee welding on the project material.
- (3) Machinery: Qualification documents (WPS, PQR, and WPQ) in accordance with AWS D14.4/D14.4M.

1.3.2 Previous Qualifications

Welding procedures previously qualified by test in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, may be accepted for this contract without re-qualification, upon receipt of the test results, if the following conditions are met:

- a. Testing was performed by an approved testing laboratory, technical consultant, or the Contractor's approved quality control organization.
- b. The qualified welding procedure conforms to the requirements of this specification and is applicable to welding conditions encountered under this contract.
- c. The welder, welding operator, and tacker qualification tests conform to the requirements of this specification and are applicable to welding conditions encountered under this contract.

1.3.3 Pre-qualified Procedures

Welding procedures which are considered pre-qualified as specified in AWS D1.1/D1.1M will be accepted without further qualification. Submit for approval a listing or an annotated drawing to indicate the joints not pre-qualified. Procedure qualification is mandatory for these joints. No pre-qualified welding procedures are allowed. Qualify the welding procedures and welders by tests prescribed in the applicable code or specification not withstanding the fact the code or specification may allow pre-qualified procedures.

1.3.4 Welder, Welding Operator, and Tacker Qualification

Each welder, welding operator, and tacker assigned to work on this contract must be qualified in accordance with the applicable requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M and as specified in this section. Welders, welding operators, and tackers who make acceptable procedure qualification test welds will be considered qualified for the welding procedure used within the applicable essential variables for welder qualification.

1.3.4.1 Previous Personnel Qualifications

At the discretion of the Contracting Officer, welders, welding operators, and tackers qualified by test within the previous 6 months may be accepted for this contract without re-qualification if all the following conditions are met:

- a. Copies of the welding procedure specifications, the procedure qualification test records, and the welder, welding operator, and tacker qualification test records are submitted and approved in accordance with the specified requirements for detail drawings.
- b. Testing was performed by an approved testing laboratory, technical consultant, or the Contractor's approved quality control organization.
- d. The welder, welding operator, and tacker qualification tests conform to the requirements of this specification and are applicable to welding conditions encountered under this contract.

1.3.4.2 Certificates

Before assigning any welder, welding operator, or tacker to work under this contract, submit the names and certification that each individual is qualified as specified. State in the certification the type of welding and positions for which the welder, welding operator, or tacker is qualified, the code and procedure under which the individual is qualified, the date qualified, and the name of the firm and person certifying the qualification tests. Keep the certification current, on file, and furnish 3 copies.

1.3.4.3 Renewal of Qualification

Re-qualification of a welder or welding operator is required under any of the following conditions:

- a. It has been more than 6 months since the welder or welding operator has used the specific welding process for which he is qualified.
- b. There is specific reason to question the welder or welding operator's

ability to make welds that meet the requirements of these specifications.

- c. The welder or welding operator was qualified by an employer other than those firms performing work under this contract, and a qualification test has not been taken within the past 12 months. Submit as evidence of conformance all records showing periods of employment, name of employer where welder, or welding operator, was last employed, and the process for which qualified.
- d. A tacker who passes the qualification test is considered eligible to perform tack welding indefinitely in the positions and with the processes for which he/she is qualified, unless there is some specific reason to question the tacker's ability or there has been a gap greater than 6 months since he/she last used the process. In such a case, the tacker is required to pass the prescribed tack welding test.

1.3.5 Inspector Qualification

Submit certificates indicating that [certified welding inspectors](#) meet the requirements of [AWS QC1](#). Submit qualifications for [nondestructive testing personnel](#) in accordance with the requirements of [ANSI/ASNT CP-189](#) for Levels I or II in the applicable nondestructive testing method. Level I inspectors must have direct supervision of a Level II inspector.

1.3.6 Symbols and Safety

Use symbols in accordance with [AWS A2.4](#), unless otherwise indicated. Follow safe welding practices and safety precautions during welding in conformance with [AWS Z49.1](#).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Conform the design of welded connections to [AISC 360](#), unless otherwise indicated or specified. Material with welds will not be accepted unless the welding is specified or indicated on the drawings or otherwise approved. Perform welding as specified in this section, except where additional requirements are shown on the drawings or are specified in other sections. Do not commence welding until welding procedures, inspectors, nondestructive testing personnel, welders, welding operators, and tackers have been qualified and the submittals approved by the Contracting Officer. Perform all testing at or near the work site. Maintain records of the test results obtained in welding procedure, welder, welding operator, and tacker performance qualifications.

2.1.1 Pre-erection Conference

Hold a pre-erection conference prior to the start of the field welding, to bring all affected parties together and to gain a naturally clear understanding of the project and the Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS) (submitted for all welding, including welding done using pre-qualified procedures). Mandatory attendance is required by all Contractor's welding production and inspection personnel and appropriate Government personnel. Include as items for discussion: responsibilities of various parties; welding procedures and processes to be followed; welding sequence (both within a joint and joint sequence within the building); inspection requirements and procedures, both visual and

nondestructive testing; welding schedule; and other items deemed necessary by the attendees.

2.2 WELDING EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

Provide all welding equipment, welding electrodes and rods, welding wire, and fluxes capable of producing satisfactory welds when used by a qualified welder or welding operator. Provide welding equipment and materials that comply with the applicable requirements of [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#). Submit product data on [welding electrodes and rods](#).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 WELDING OPERATIONS

3.1.1 Requirements

Conform workmanship and techniques for welded construction to the requirements of [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#) and [AISC 360](#). When [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#) and the [AISC 360](#) specification conflict, the requirements of [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#) govern.

3.1.2 Identification

Identify all welds in one of the following ways:

- a. Submit written records to indicate the location of welds made by each welder, welding operator, or tacker.
- b. Identify all work performed by each welder, welding operator, or tacker with an assigned number, letter, or symbol to identify welds made by that individual. The Contracting Officer may require welders, welding operators, and tackers to apply their symbol next to the weld by means of rubber stamp, felt-tipped marker with waterproof ink, or other methods that do not cause an indentation in the metal. Place the identification mark for seam welds adjacent to the weld at [3 foot](#) intervals. Identification with die stamps or electric etchers is not allowed.

3.2 QUALITY CONTROL

Perform testing using an approved inspection or testing laboratory or technical consultant; or if approved, Contractor's inspection and testing personnel may be used instead of commercial inspection or testing laboratory or technical consultant. Certified Welding Inspector must perform visual inspection on 100 percent of all welds. Document this inspection in the Visual [Weld Inspection Log](#). Test 40% of CJP welds using ultrasonic testing per Table 6.2 or Table 6.3 of [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#). Randomly test 30% of all PJP and fillet welds or as indicated by magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing. Verify the welds conform to paragraph STANDARDS OF ACCEPTANCE. Conform procedures and techniques for inspection with applicable requirements of [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#), [ASTM E165/E165M](#), and [ASTM E709](#). Submit a [Welding Quality Assurance Plan](#) and records of tests and inspections.

3.3 STANDARDS OF ACCEPTANCE

Conform dimensional tolerances for welded construction, details of welds, and quality of welds with the applicable requirements of [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#) and the contract drawings. Submit all records of [nondestructive testing](#).

3.3.1 Nondestructive Testing

The welding is subject to inspection and tests in the mill, shop, and field. Inspection and tests in the mill or shop do not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to furnish weldments of satisfactory quality. When materials or workmanship do not conform to the specification requirements, the Government reserves the right to reject material or workmanship or both at any time before final acceptance of the structure containing the weldment. Any indication of a defect is regarded as a defect, unless re-evaluation by nondestructive methods or by surface conditioning shows that no unacceptable defect is present. Submit all records of nondestructive testing in accordance with paragraph STANDARDS OF ACCEPTANCE.

3.3.2 Destructive Tests

Make all repairs when metallographic specimens are removed from any part of a structure. Employ only qualified welders or welding operators, and use the proper joints and welding procedures, including peening or heat treatment if required, to develop the full strength of the members and joints cut and to relieve residual stress.

3.4 GOVERNMENT INSPECTION AND TESTING

In addition to the inspection and tests performed by the Contractor for quality control, the Government will perform inspection and testing for acceptance to the extent determined by the Contracting Officer. The work may be performed by the Government's own forces or under a separate contract for inspection and testing. The Government reserves the right to perform supplemental nondestructive and destructive tests to determine compliance with paragraph STANDARDS OF ACCEPTANCE.

3.5 CORRECTIONS AND REPAIRS

If inspection or testing indicates defects in the weld joints, repair defective welds using a qualified welder or welding operator as applicable. Conduct corrections in accordance with the requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the specifications. Repair all defects in accordance with the approved procedures. Repair defects discovered between passes before additional weld material is deposited. Wherever a defect is removed and repair by welding is not required, blend the affected area into the surrounding surface to eliminate sharp notches, crevices, or corners. After a defect is thought to have been removed, and before re-welding, examine the area by suitable methods to ensure that the defect has been eliminated. Repaired welds must meet the inspection requirements for the original welds.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 12 00

STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 207	(2016; R 2017) Certification Standard for Steel Fabrication and Erection, and Manufacturing of Metal Components
AISC 303	(2016) Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges
AISC 325	(2017) Steel Construction Manual
AISC 326	(2009) Detailing for Steel Construction
AISC 360	(2016) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings
AISC 420	(2010) Certification Standard for Shop Application of Complex Protective Coating Systems
AISC DESIGN GUIDE 10	(1997) Erection Bracing of Low-Rise Structural Steel Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING (ASNT)

ANSI/ASNT CP-189	(2016) ASNT Standard for Qualification and Certification of Nondestructive Testing Personnel (ANSI/ASNT CP-105-2006)
------------------	--

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A2.4	(2012) Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing and Nondestructive Examination
AWS D1.1/D1.1M	(2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016) Structural Welding Code - Steel
AWS D1.8/D1.8M	(2016) Structural Welding Code—Seismic Supplement
AWS QC1	(2016) Specification for AWS Certification of Welding Inspectors

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B46.1 (2009) Surface Texture, Surface Roughness,
Waviness and Lay

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A6/A6M (2017a) Standard Specification for General
Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel
Bars, Plates, Shapes, and Sheet Piling

ASTM A29/A29M (2016) Standard Specification for General
Requirements for Steel Bars, Carbon and
Alloy, Hot-Wrought

ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon
Structural Steel

ASTM A53/A53M (2018) Standard Specification for Pipe,
Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated,
Welded and Seamless

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc
(Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and
Steel Products

ASTM A143/A143M (2007; R 2014) Standard Practice for
Safeguarding Against Embrittlement of
Hot-Dip Galvanized Structural Steel
Products and Procedure for Detecting
Embrittlement

ASTM A307 (2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for
Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded
Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength

ASTM A500/A500M (2018) Standard Specification for
Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon
Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and
Shapes

ASTM A563 (2015) Standard Specification for Carbon
and Alloy Steel Nuts

ASTM A780/A780M (2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for
Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of
Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings

ASTM A992/A992M (2011; R 2015) Standard Specification for
Structural Steel Shapes

ASTM B695 (2004; R 2016) Standard Specification for
Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on
Iron and Steel

ASTM C827/C827M (2016) Standard Test Method for Change in
Height at Early Ages of Cylindrical
Specimens of Cementitious Mixtures

ASTM C1107/C1107M	(2017) Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
ASTM F436/F436M	(2016) Standard Specification for Hardened Steel Washers Inch and Metric Dimensions
ASTM F844	(2007a; R 2013) Washers, Steel, Plain (Flat), Unhardened for General Use
ASTM F959/F959M	(2017a) Standard Specification for Compressible-Washer-Type Direct Tension Indicators for Use with Structural Fasteners, Inch and Metric Series
ASTM F1136/F1136M	(2011) Standard Specification for Zinc/Aluminum Corrosion Protective Coatings for Fasteners
ASTM F1554	(2018) Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength
ASTM F2329/F2329M	(2015) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating, Hot-Dip, Requirements for Application to Carbon and Alloy Steel Bolts, Screws, Washers, Nuts, and Special Threaded Fasteners
ASTM F2833	(2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for Corrosion Protective Fastener Coatings with Zinc Rich Base Coat and Aluminum Organic/Inorganic Type
ASTM F3125/F3125M	(2015a) Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts, Steel and Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, 120 ksi (830 MPa) and 150 ksi (1040 MPa) Minimum Tensile Strength, Inch and Metric Dimensions

CRANE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION OF AMERICA (CMAA)

CMAA 70	(2015) Specification for Top Running Bridge and Gantry Type Multiple Girder Electric Overhead Traveling Cranes
---------	--

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC PA 1	(2016) Shop, Field, and Maintenance Coating of Metals
SSPC Paint 20	(2002; E 2004) Zinc-Rich Primers (Type I, Inorganic, and Type II, Organic)
SSPC Paint 29	(2002; E 2004) Zinc Dust Sacrificial Primer, Performance-Based
SSPC SP 3	(1982; E 2004) Power Tool Cleaning
SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3	(2007) Commercial Blast Cleaning

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-301-01

(2013; with Change 4, 2018) Structural
Engineering

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR Part 1926, Subpart R

Steel Erection

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Erection and Erection Bracing Drawings; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication Drawings Including Details of Connections; G

SD-03 Product Data

Shop Primer

Welding Electrodes and Rods

Direct Tension Indicator Washers

Non-Shrink Grout

Tension Control Bolts

Recycled Content for Structural Steel; S

Recycled Content for Structural Steel Tubing; S

Recycled Content for Steel Pipe; S

SD-05 Design Data

Shoring and Temporary Bracing; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Class B Coating

Bolts, Nuts, and Washers

Weld Inspection Reports

Direct Tension Indicator Washer Inspection Reports

Bolt Testing Reports

Embrittlement Test Reports

SD-07 Certificates

Steel

Bolts, Nuts, and Washers

Galvanizing

AISC Structural Steel Fabricator Quality Certification

AISC Structural Steel Erector Quality Certification

Welding Procedures and Qualifications

Welding Electrodes and Rods

Certified Welding Inspector

NDT Technician

Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS)

Overhead, Top Running Crane Rail Beam

1.3 AISC QUALITY CERTIFICATION

Work must be fabricated by an AISC Certified Structural Steel Fabricator, in accordance with [AISC 207](#), Category BU. Submit [AISC Structural Steel Fabricator quality certification](#).

Work must be erected by an AISC Structural Steel Certified Erector, in accordance with [AISC 207](#), Category CSE. Submit [AISC Structural Steel erector quality certification](#).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Preconstruction Submittals

1.4.1.1 Erection and Erection Bracing Drawings

Submit for record purposes. Indicate the sequence of erection, temporary shoring and bracing. The erection drawings must conform to [AISC 303](#). Erection drawings must be reviewed, stamped and sealed by a registered professional engineer.

1.4.2 Fabrication Drawing Requirements

Submit [fabrication drawings](#) for approval prior to fabrication. Prepare in accordance with [AISC 303](#), [AISC 326](#) and [AISC 325](#). Fabrication drawings must not be reproductions of contract drawings. Include complete information for the fabrication and erection of the structure's components, including the location, type, and size of bolts, welds, member sizes and lengths, connection details, blocks, copes, and cuts. Use [AWS A2.4](#) standard welding symbols. [Shoring and temporary bracing](#) must be

designed and sealed by a registered professional engineer and submitted for record purposes, with calculations, as part of the drawings. Clearly highlight any deviations from the details shown on the contract drawings highlighted on the fabrication drawings. Explain the reasons for any deviations from the contract drawings.

1.4.3 Certifications

1.4.3.1 Welding Procedures and Qualifications

Prior to welding, submit certification for each welder stating the type of welding and positions qualified for, the code and procedure qualified under, date qualified, and the firm and individual certifying the qualification tests. If the qualification date of the welder or welding operator is more than 6 months old, the welding operator's qualification certificate must be accompanied by a current certificate by the welder attesting to the fact that he has been engaged in welding since the date of certification, with no break in welding service greater than 6 months.

Conform to all requirements specified in [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#).

1.4.3.2 Overhead, Top Running Crane Rail Beam

Submit written field survey results for overhead, top running crane rail beam verifying tolerance requirements per [CMAA 70](#).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide the structural steel system, including shop primer, galvanizing (where indicated), complete and ready for use. Provide structural steel systems including design, materials, installation, workmanship, fabrication, assembly, erection, inspection, quality control, and testing in accordance with [AISC 303](#), [AISC 360](#), [UFC 3-301-01](#) except as modified in this contract.

2.2 STEEL

2.2.1 Structural Steel

Wide flange and WT shapes, [ASTM A992/A992M](#). Angles, Channels and Plates, [ASTM A36/A36M](#). Provide structural steel containing a minimum of 80 percent recycled content. Submit data identifying percentage of [recycled content for structural steel](#).

2.2.2 Structural Steel Tubing

[ASTM A500/A500M](#), Grade B. Provide structural steel tubing containing a minimum of 80 percent recycled content. Submit data identifying percentage of [recycled content for structural steel tubing](#).

2.2.3 Steel Pipe

[ASTM A53/A53M](#), Type E or S, Grade B, weight class as indicated. Provide steel pipe containing a minimum of 50 percent recycled content. Submit data identifying percentage of [recycled content for steel pipe](#).

2.3 BOLTS, NUTS, AND WASHERS

Submit the certified manufacturer's mill reports which clearly show the applicable ASTM mechanical and chemical requirements together with the actual test results for the supplied fasteners.

2.3.1 Common Grade Bolts

2.3.1.1 Bolts

ASTM A307, Grade A, plain finish hot dipped zinc coating where indicated. The bolt heads and the nuts of the supplied fasteners must be marked with the manufacturer's identification mark, the strength grade and type specified by ASTM specifications.

2.3.1.2 Nuts

ASTM A563, Grade A, heavy hex style.

2.3.1.3 Self-Locking Nuts

Provide nuts with a locking pin set in the nut. The locking pin must slide along the bolt threads, and by reversing the direction of the locking pin, the nut can be removed without damaging the nut or bolt. Provide stainless steel locking pins.

2.3.1.4 Washers

ASTM F844.

2.3.2 High-Strength Bolts

High strength bolts and nuts must be shipped together in the same shipping container. Fasteners indicated to be galvanized shall be tested by the supplier to show that the galvanized nut with the supplied lubricant provided may be rotated from the snug tight condition well in excess of the rotation required for pretensioned installation without stripping. The supplier shall supply nuts that have been lubricated and tested with the supplied bolts.

2.3.2.1 Bolts

ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325, Grade A490, where indicated. Type 1 Heavy Hex Head Style, plain finish hot dipped zinc coating where indicated.

2.3.2.2 Nuts

ASTM A563, Grade and Style as specified in the applicable ASTM bolt standard.

2.3.2.3 Direct Tension Indicator Washers

ASTM F959/F959M. Provide ASTM B695, Class 55, Type 1 galvanizing. Submit product data for direct tension indicator washers.

2.3.2.4 Washers

ASTM F436/F436M, plain carbon steel.

2.3.3 Tension Control Bolts

ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852 (F2280 where indicated), Type 1, twistoff style assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon steel nuts, and hardened carbon steel washers. Assembly finish must be plain. Submit product data for tension control bolts.

2.3.4 Foundation Anchorage

2.3.4.1 Anchor Rods

ASTM F1554 Gr 36 55, Class 1A.

2.3.4.2 Anchor Nuts

ASTM A563, Grade A, hex style.

2.3.4.3 Anchor Washers

ASTM F844.

2.3.4.4 Anchor Plate Washers

ASTM A36/A36M.

2.4 STRUCTURAL STEEL ACCESSORIES

2.4.1 Welding Electrodes and Rods

AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Submit product data for welding electrodes and rods.

2.4.2 Non-Shrink Grout

ASTM C1107/C1107M, with no ASTM C827/C827M shrinkage. Grout must be nonmetallic. Submit product data for non-shrink grout.

2.4.3 Welded Shear Stud Connectors

ASTM A29/A29M, Grades 1010 through 1020. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Table 7.1, Type B.

2.5 GALVANIZING

ASTM F2329/F2329M, ASTM F1136/F1136M, ASTM F2833 or ASTM B695 for threaded parts or ASTM A123/A123M for structural steel members, as applicable, unless specified otherwise galvanize after fabrication where practicable.

2.6 FABRICATION

Fabrication must be in accordance with the applicable provisions of AISC 325. Fabrication and assembly must be done in the shop to the greatest extent possible. Punch, subpunch and ream, or drill bolt holes perpendicular to the surface of the member.

Compression joints depending on contact bearing must have a surface roughness not in excess of 500 micro inch as determined by ASME B46.1, and ends must be square within the tolerances for milled ends specified in ASTM A6/A6M.

Shop splices of members between field splices will be permitted only where indicated on the Contract Drawings. Splices not indicated require the approval of the Contracting Officer.

2.6.1 Markings

Prior to erection, identify members by a painted erection mark. Connecting parts assembled in the shop for reaming holes in field connections must be match marked with scratch and notch marks. Do not locate erection markings on areas to be welded. Do not locate match markings in areas that will decrease member strength or cause stress concentrations. Affix embossed tags to hot-dipped galvanized members.

2.6.2 Shop Primer

SSPC Paint 20 or SSPC Paint 29, (zinc rich primer). Shop prime structural steel, except as modified herein, in accordance with SSPC PA 1. Do not prime steel surfaces embedded in concrete, galvanized surfaces, surfaces to receive sprayed-on fireproofing, or surfaces within 0.5 inch of the toe of the welds prior to welding (except surfaces on which metal decking and shear studs are to be welded). If flash rusting occurs, re-clean the surface prior to application of primer. Apply primer in accordance with endorsement "SPE-P1", "SPE-P2", or "SPE-P3" (as appropriate for type of exposure) of AISC 420 or approved equal NACE or SSPC certification to a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mil. Submit shop primer product data.

Prime slip critical surfaces with a Class B coating in accordance with AISC 325. Submit test report for Class B coating.

Prior to assembly, prime surfaces which will be concealed or inaccessible after assembly. Do not apply primer in foggy or rainy weather; when the ambient temperature is below 45 degrees F or over 95 degrees F; or when the primer may be exposed to temperatures below 40 degrees F within 48 hours after application, unless approved otherwise by the Contracting Officer. Repair damaged primed surfaces with an additional coat of primer.

2.6.2.1 Cleaning

SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3, except steel exposed in spaces above ceilings, attic spaces, furred spaces, and chases that will be hidden to view in finished construction may be cleaned to SSPC SP 3 when recommended by the shop primer manufacturer. Maintain steel surfaces free from rust, dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants through final assembly.

2.7 DRAINAGE HOLES

Drill adequate drainage holes to eliminate water traps. Hole diameter must be 1/2 inch and location indicated on the detail drawings. Hole size and locations must not affect the structural integrity.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 ERECTION

- a. Erection of structural steel, except as indicated in item b. below, must be in accordance with the applicable provisions of AISC 325, AISC 303 and 29 CFR Part 1926, Subpart R.
- b. For low-rise structural steel buildings (60 feet tall or less and a

maximum of 2 stories), erect the structure in accordance with
AISC DESIGN GUIDE 10.

After final positioning of steel members, provide full bearing under base plates and bearing plates using nonshrink grout. Place nonshrink grout in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

3.1.1 STORAGE

Store the material out of contact with the ground in such manner and location as to minimize deterioration.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

Except as modified in this section, design connections indicated in accordance with **AISC 360**. Build connections into existing work. Do not tighten anchor bolts set in concrete with impact torque wrenches. Holes must not be cut or enlarged by burning. Bolts, nuts, and washers must be clean of dirt and rust, and lubricated immediately prior to installation.

3.2.1 Common Grade Bolts

Tighten **ASTM A307** bolts to a "snug tight" fit. "Snug tight" is the tightness that exists when plies in a joint are in firm contact. If firm contact of joint plies cannot be obtained with a few impacts of an impact wrench, or the full effort of a man using a spud wrench, contact the Contracting Officer for further instructions.

3.2.2 High-Strength Bolts

Provide direct tension indicator washers in all **ASTM F3125/F3125M**, Grade **A325** and Grade **A490** bolted connections. Bolts must be installed in connection holes and initially brought to a snug tight fit. After the initial tightening procedure, fully tension bolts, progressing from the most rigid part of a connection to the free edges.

Fastener components shall be protected from dirt and moisture in closed containers at the site of the installation. Fastener components that are not incorporated into the work shall be returned to protected storage at the end of the work shift.

3.2.2.1 Installation of Direct Tension Indicator Washers (DTIW)

Where possible, install the DTIW under the bolt head and tighten the nut. If the DTIW is installed adjacent to the turned element, provide a flat washer between the DTIW and nut when the nut is turned for tightening, and between the DTIW and bolt head when the bolt head is turned for tightening. In addition to the DTIW, provide flat washers under both the bolt head and nut when **ASTM F3125/F3125M**, Grade **A490** bolts are used.

3.2.3 Tension Control Bolts

Bolts must be installed in connection holes and initially brought to a snug tight fit. After the initial tightening procedure, fully tension bolts, progressing from the most rigid part of a connection to the free edges.

3.3 GAS CUTTING

Use of gas-cutting torch in the field for correcting fabrication errors is not permitted on any major member in the structural framing. Use of a gas cutting torch will be permitted on minor members not under stress only after approval has been obtained from the Contracting Officer.

3.4 WELDING

Welding must be in accordance with [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#) and [AWS D1.8/D1.8M](#). Grind exposed welds smooth as indicated. Provide [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#) qualified welders, welding operators, and tackers.

Develop and submit the [Welding Procedure Specifications \(WPS\)](#) for all welding, including welding done using prequalified procedures. Submit for approval all WPS, whether prequalified or qualified by testing.

3.4.1 Removal of Temporary Welds, Run-Off Plates, and Backing Strips

Remove only from finished areas.

3.5 SHOP PRIMER REPAIR

Repair shop primer in accordance with the paint manufacturer's recommendation for surfaces damaged by handling, transporting, cutting, welding, or bolting.

3.5.1 Field Priming

Field prime steel exposed to the weather or located in building areas without HVAC for control of relative humidity. After erection, the field bolt heads and nuts, field welds, and any abrasions in the shop coat must be cleaned and primed with paint of the same quality as that used for the shop coat.

3.6 GALVANIZING REPAIR

Repair damage to galvanized coatings using [ASTM A780/A780M](#) zinc rich paint for galvanizing damaged by handling, transporting, cutting, welding, or bolting. Do not heat surfaces to which repair paint has been applied.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Perform field tests, and provide labor, equipment, and incidentals required for testing, except that electric power for field tests will be furnished as set forth in Division 1. Notify the Contracting Officer in writing of defective welds, bolts, nuts, and washers within 7 working days of the date of the inspection.

3.7.1 Welds

3.7.1.1 Visual Inspection

[AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#). Furnish the services of AWS-certified welding inspectors for fabrication and erection inspection and testing and verification inspections. A [Certified Welding Inspector](#) must perform visual inspection on 100 percent of all welds. Document this inspection in the Visual Weld Inspection Log. Submit certificates indicating that certified welding inspectors meet the requirements of [AWS QC1](#).

Inspect proper preparation, size, gaging location, and acceptability of all welds; identification marking; operation and current characteristics of welding sets in use.

3.7.1.2 Nondestructive Testing

Nondestructive testing must be in accordance with [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#). Ultrasonic testing must be performed in accordance with Table 6.2 or 6.3 of [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#). Test locations must be selected by the Contracting Officer. All personnel performing NDT must be certified in accordance with [ANSI/ASNT CP-189](#) in the method of testing being performed. Submit certificates showing compliance with [ANSI/ASNT CP-189](#) for all [NDT technicians](#). If more than 20 percent of welds made by a welder contain defects identified by testing, then all groove welds made by that welder must be tested by ultrasonic testing, and all fillet welds made by that welder must be inspected by magnetic particle testing (MT) or dye penetrant testing (PT) as approved by the Contracting Officer. When groove welds made by an individual welder are required to be tested, magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing may be used only in areas inaccessible to ultrasonic testing. Retest all repaired areas. Submit [weld inspection reports](#).

Testing frequency: Provide the following types and number of tests:

<u>Test Type</u>	<u>Number of Tests</u>
Ultrasonic	40 percent of CJP Welds
Magnetic Particle	30 percent of PJP and Fillet Welds
Dye Penetrant	30 percent of PJP and Fillet Welds

3.7.2 Direct Tension Indicator Washers

3.7.2.1 Direct Tension Indicator Washer Compression

Test direct tension indicator washers in place to verify that they have been compressed sufficiently to provide the 0.015 inch gap, as required by [ASTM F959/F959M](#). Submit [direct tension indicator washer inspection reports](#).

3.7.2.2 Direct Tension Indicator Gaps

In addition to the above testing, an independent testing agency as approved by the Contracting Officer, must test in place the direct tension indicator gaps on 20 percent of the installed direct tension indicator washers to verify that the [ASTM F959/F959M](#) direct tension indicator gaps have been achieved. If more than 10 percent of the direct tension indicators tested have not been compressed sufficiently to provide the average gaps required by [ASTM F959/F959M](#), test all in place direct tension indicator washers to verify that the [ASTM F959/F959M](#) direct tension indicator gaps have been achieved. Test locations must be selected by the Contracting Officer.

3.7.3 High-Strength Bolts

3.7.3.1 Testing Bolt, Nut, and Washer Assemblies

Test a minimum of 3 bolt, nut, and washer assemblies from each mill certificate batch in a tension measuring device at the job site prior to the beginning of bolting start-up. Demonstrate that the bolts and nuts, when used together, can develop tension not less than the provisions specified in [AISC 360](#), depending on bolt size and grade. The bolt tension must be developed by tightening the nut. A representative of the manufacturer or supplier must be present to ensure that the fasteners are properly used, and to demonstrate that the fastener assemblies supplied satisfy the specified requirements. Submit [bolt testing reports](#).

3.7.3.2 Inspection

Inspection procedures must be in accordance with [AISC 360](#). Confirm and report to the Contracting Officer that the materials meet the project specification and that they are properly stored. Confirm that the faying surfaces have been properly prepared before the connections are assembled. Observe the specified job site testing and calibration, and confirm that the procedure to be used provides the required tension. Monitor the work to ensure the testing procedures are routinely followed on joints that are specified to be fully tensioned.

Inspect calibration of torque wrenches for high-strength bolts.

3.7.3.3 Testing

The Government has the option to perform nondestructive tests on 5 percent of the installed bolts to verify compliance with pre-load bolt tension requirements. Provide the required access for the Government to perform the tests. The nondestructive testing will be done in-place using an ultrasonic measuring device or any other device capable of determining in-place pre-load bolt tension. The test locations must be selected by the Contracting Officer. If more than 10 percent of the bolts tested contain defects identified by testing, then all bolts used from the batch from which the tested bolts were taken, must be tested at the Contractor's expense. Retest new bolts after installation at the Contractor's expense.

3.7.4 Testing for Embrittlement

[ASTM A143/A143M](#) for steel products hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Submit [embrittlement test reports](#).

3.7.5 Inspection and Testing of Steel Stud Welding

Perform verification inspection and testing of steel stud welding conforming to the requirements of [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#), Stud Welding Clause. The Contracting Officer will serve as the verification inspector. Bend test studs that do not show a full 360 degree weld flash or have been repaired by welding as required by [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#), Stud Welding Clause. Studs that crack under testing in the weld, base metal or shank will be rejected and replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 21 00

STEEL JOIST FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)
Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon
Structural Steel

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC PA 1 (2016) Shop, Field, and Maintenance
Coating of Metals

SSPC Paint 15 (1999; E 2004) Steel Joist Shop Primer

SSPC SP 2 (1982; E 2000; E 2004) Hand Tool Cleaning

STEEL JOIST INSTITUTE (SJI)

SJI LOAD TABLES (2010; Errata 1 2011; Errata 2 2012) 42nd
Edition Catalog of Standard Specifications
Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel
Joists and Joist Girders

SJI MANUAL (2009) 80 Years of Open Web Steel Joist
Construction

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1926 Safety and Health Regulations for
Construction

29 CFR 1926.756 Steel Erection; Beams and Columns

29 CFR 1926.757 Steel Erection; Open Web Steel Joists

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Welder Qualification

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Steel Joist Framing; G

SD-03 Product Data

Recycled Content Of Steel Products; S

SD-05 Design Data

Design Calculations; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Erection Inspection

Welding Inspections

SD-07 Certificates

Certification of Compliance

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Perform all work in compliance with the requirements set forth in 29 CFR 1926.

1.3.1 Drawing Requirements

Submit drawings of steel joist framing including fabrication, specifications for shop painting, and identification markings of joists. Show joist type and size, layout in plan, all applicable loads, deflection criteria, and erection details including methods of anchoring, framing at openings, type, size, and location and connections for and spacing of bridging, requirements for field welding, and details of accessories as applicable. Show profiles for nonstandard joist configurations.

1.3.2 Certification of Compliance

Prior to construction commencement, submit certification for welder qualification, in compliance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, welding operation, and tacker, stating the type of welding and positions qualified for, the code and procedure qualified under, date qualified, and the firm and individual certifying the qualification tests. Submit certification of compliance for the following:

- a. **SJI MANUAL**
- b. Steel Joist Institute Member Fabricator
- c. **29 CFR 1926**
- d. **29 CFR 1926.757**
- e. Statement from steel joist manufacturer, that work was performed in accordance with approved construction documents and with SJI standard specifications, in accordance with **ICC IBC** Section 1704.2.5.2.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Handle, transport, and store joists in a manner to prevent damage affecting their structural integrity. Verify piece count of all joist products upon delivery and inspect all joists products for damage. Report any damage to the joist supplier. Store all items off the ground in a well-drained location protected from the weather and easily accessible for inspection and handling. Store joists with top chord down and with joists in a vertical position. Store deep joists horizontally if they were shipped on their sides.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Designate steel joists on the drawings in accordance with the standard designations of the Steel Joist Institute. Joists of other standard designations or joists with properties other than those shown may be substituted for the joists designated provided the structural properties are equal to or greater than those of the joists shown and provided all other specified requirements are met.

2.2 STEEL JOISTS

Provide steel joists conforming to **SJI LOAD TABLES**. Design joists designated K, KCS, LH and DLH to support the loads given in the applicable standard load tables of **SJI LOAD TABLES**. Submit **design calculations** for special steel joists, net uplift loads, non-SJI standard details, and field splices. Include cover letter signed and sealed by the joist manufacturer's registered design professional.

2.2.1 Steel Joist Camber

Camber joists according to **SJI LOAD TABLES**.

2.2.2 Special Steel Joists

Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding the design loads indicated with a live-load deflection less than L/240 for roof joists and L/360 for floor joists.

2.2.3 Steel Joist Substitutes and Outriggers

Provide joist substitutes and outriggers conforming to **SJI LOAD TABLES** with steel angle or channel members.

2.3 RECYCLED CONTENT

Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products of postconsumer recycled content plus one half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

2.4 ACCESSORIES AND FITTINGS

2.4.1 Bridging

Provide bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI LOAD TABLES for type of joist, chord size, spacing and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.

2.4.2 Bearing Plates

Fabricate steel bearing plats from ASTM A36/A36M steel of size and thickness indicated.

2.4.3 Ceiling Extensions

Furnish ceiling extensions, either bottom-chord elements or a separate extension unit of enough strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within 1/2 inch of finished wall surface unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 SHOP PAINTING

SSPC Paint 15. Shop prime joists, except as modified herein, in accordance with SSPC PA 1. Clean joists in accordance with SSPC SP 2 before priming. Do not prime joists to receive sprayed-on fireproofing. If flash rusting occurs, re-clean the surface prior to application of primer. For joists which require finish painting under Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS, the primer paint must be compatible with the finish paint.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 ERECTION

Install joists in conformance with SJI LOAD TABLES for the joist series indicated, and the requirements of 29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1926.757 and 29 CFR 1926.756. Handle and set joists avoiding damage to the members. Place the "tag end" of joists as shown on the joist placement plans. Ensure that square-end joists are erected right side up. Distribute temporary loads so that joist capacity is not exceeded. Remove damaged joists from the site, except when field repair is approved, and such repairs are satisfactorily made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Do not repair, field modify, or alter any joists without specific written instructions from the Designer of Record and/or joist manufacturer.

Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Do not apply loads to bridging. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams. Do not cut away vertical leg of bridging where bridging makes an elevation transition; weld a separate piece of bridging at the transition. Perform all welding in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.2 BEARING PLATES

Where indicated on the drawings, provide bearing plates to accept full bearing after the supporting members have been plumbed and properly positioned, but prior to placing superimposed loads. The area under the plate must be damp-packed solidly with bedding mortar, except where nonshrink grout is indicated on the drawings. Provide bedding mortar and grout as specified in Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

3.3 PAINTING

3.3.1 Touch-Up Painting

After erection of joists, touch-up connections and areas of abraded shop coat with paint of the same type used for the shop coat.

3.3.2 Field Painting

Paint joists requiring a finish coat in conformance with the requirements of Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.4 VISUAL INSPECTIONS

Perform the following visual inspections:

- a. Verify that all joists are spaced properly.
- b. Verify that there is sufficient joist bearing on steel beams, concrete, and masonry.
- c. Verify all bridging lines are properly spaced and anchored.
- d. Verify that damage has not occurred to the joists during erection.
- e. Verify the joists are aligned vertically and there is no lateral sweep in the joists.
- f. Where concentrated loads are present on the joists verify that they are located in accordance with the joist placement plan.
- g. Verify welding of bridging and joist seats in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Section 6. Perform erection inspection and field welding inspections with AWS certified welding inspectors.
- h. Verify proper bolting of diagonal bridging and joist seats where the bolts are snug-tight.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 30 00

STEEL DECKS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN IRON AND STEEL INSTITUTE (AISI)

AISI D100 (1991; R 2008) Cold-Formed Steel Design Manual

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016) Structural Welding Code - Steel

AWS D1.3/D1.3M (2018) Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

ASTM A653/A653M (2019) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A780/A780M (2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings

ASTM A792/A792M (2010) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A1008/A1008M (2016) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable

ASTM D746 (2014) Standard Test Method for Brittleness Temperature of Plastics and Elastomers by Impact

ASTM D1056	(2014) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded Rubber
ASTM D1149	(2007; R 2012) Standard Test Method for Rubber Deterioration - Surface Ozone Cracking in a Chamber
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
FM GLOBAL (FM)	
FM APP GUIDE	(updated on-line) Approval Guide http://www.approvalguide.com/
FM DS 1-28R	(1998) Data Sheet: Roof Systems
SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)	
SSPC Paint 20	(2002; E 2004) Zinc-Rich Primers (Type I, Inorganic, and Type II, Organic)
STEEL DECK INSTITUTE (SDI)	
ANSI/SDI C	(2017) Standard for Composite Steel Floor Deck - Slabs
ANSI/SDI NC	(2017) Standard for Non-Composite Steel Floor Deck
ANSI/SDI QA/QC	(2017) Standard for Quality Control and Quality Assurance for Installation of Steel Deck
ANSI/SDI RD	(2017) Standard for Steel Roof Deck
SDI DDM04	(2015; Errata 1-3 2016; Add 1 2015; Add 2 20162006) Diaphragm Design Manual; 4th Edition
SDI DDP	(1987; R 2000) Deck Damage and Penetrations
SDI MOC3	(2016) Manual of Construction with Steel Deck (3rd Edition)
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)	
UFC 3-301-01	(2013; with Change 4, 2018) Structural Engineering
U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)	
29 CFR 1926	Safety and Health Regulations for Construction

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 580 (2006; Reprint Nov 2018Mar 2019) UL
Standard for Safety Tests for Uplift
Resistance of Roof Assemblies

UL Fire Resistance (2014) Fire Resistance Directory

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor QC approval. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29, SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Accessories

Deck Units

Galvanizing Repair Paint

Mechanical Fasteners

Touch-Up Paint

Welding Equipment

Welding Rods and Accessories

Recycled Content of Steel Products; S

SD-04 Samples

Metal Roof Deck Units

Flexible Closure Strips

SD-05 Design Data

Deck Units; G

SD-07 Certificates

Powder-Actuated Tool Operator

Welder Qualifications

Welding Procedures

Fire Safety

Wind Storm Resistance

Manufacturer's Certificate

Stud Manufacture's Certification

Stud Manufacture's Test Reports

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.3.1 Deck Units

Furnish deck units and accessory products from a manufacturer regularly engaged in manufacture of steel decking. Provide [manufacturer's certificates](#) attesting that the decking material meets the specified requirements.

1.3.2 Certification of [Powder-Actuated Tool Operator](#)

Provide manufacturer's certificate attesting that the operators are authorized to use the low velocity powder-actuated tool.

1.3.3 Qualifications for Welding Work

Follow [Welding Procedures](#) of [AWS D1.3/D1.3M](#) for sheet steel and [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#) for stud welding.

Submit qualified [Welder Qualifications](#) in accordance with [AWS D1.3/D1.3M](#) for sheet steel and [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#) for stud welding, or under an equivalent approved qualification test. Perform tests on test pieces in positions and with clearances equivalent to those actually encountered. Test specimens shall be made in the presence of Contracting Officer and shall be tested by an approved testing laboratory at the Contractor's expense. If a test weld fails to meet requirements, perform an immediate retest of two test welds until each test weld passes. Failure in the immediate retest will require the welder be retested after further practice or training, performing a complete set of test welds.

Submit manufacturer's catalog data for [Welding Equipment](#) and [Welding Rods and Accessories](#).

1.3.4 Regulatory Requirements

1.3.4.1 [Fire Safety](#)

Test roof deck as a part of a roof deck construction assembly of the type used for this project, listing as fire classified in the [UL Fire Resistance](#), or listing as Class I construction in the [FM APP GUIDE](#), and so labeled.

1.3.4.2 [Wind Storm Resistance](#)

Provide roof construction assembly capable of withstanding a nominal uplift pressure as indicated on the drawings when tested in accordance with the uplift pressure test described in the [FM DS 1-28R](#) or as described in [UL 580](#) and in general compliance with [UFC 3-301-01](#).

1.3.5 Fabrication Drawings

Show type and location of units, location and sequence of connections, bearing on supports, methods of anchoring, attachment of accessories, adjusting plate details, cant strips, ridge and valley plates, metal closure strips, size and location of holes to be cut and reinforcement to be provided, the manufacturer's erection instructions and other pertinent details.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver deck units to the site in a dry and undamaged condition. Store and handle steel deck in a manner to protect it from corrosion, deformation, and other types of damage. Do not use decking for storage or as working platform until units have been fastened into position. Exercise care not to damage material or overload decking during construction. The maximum uniform distributed storage load must not exceed the design live load. Stack decking on platforms or pallets and cover with weathertight ventilated covering. Elevate one end during storage to provide drainage. Maintain deck finish at all times to prevent formation of rust. Repair deck finish using touch-up paint. Replace damaged material.

1.5 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR ROOF DECKS

1.5.1 Properties of Sections

Properties of metal roof deck sections must comply with engineering design width as limited by the provisions of [AISI D100](#).

1.5.2 Allowable Loads

Indicate total uniform dead and live load for detailing purposes.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DECK UNITS

Submit manufacturer's design calculations, or applicable published literature for the structural properties of the proposed deck units.

Provide products with an average [recycled content of steel products](#) so postconsumer recycled content plus one half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

2.1.1 Roof Deck

Conform to [ASTM A792/A792M](#) or [ASTM A1008/A1008M](#) for deck used in conjunction with insulation and built-up roofing. Fabricate roof deck units of the steel design thickness required by the design drawings and galvanized. Furnish sample of [Metal Roof Deck Units](#) used to illustrate actual cross section dimensions and configurations.

2.1.2 Composite Deck

Conform to [ASTM A653/A653M](#) or [ASTM A1008/A1008M](#) for composite deck assembly. Fabricate deck used as the tension reinforcing in composite deck of the steel design thickness required by the design drawings. Zinc-coat in conformance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#), G60 coating class.

2.1.3 Length of Deck Units

Provide deck units of sufficient length to span three or more spacings where possible.

2.1.4 Touch-Up Paint

Provide a high zinc-dust content paint for regalvanizing welds in galvanized steel conforming to [ASTM A780/A780M](#).

Provide touch-up paint for zinc-coated units of an approved [galvanizing repair paint](#) with a high-zinc dust content. Touch-up welds with paint conforming to [SSPC Paint 20](#) in accordance with [ASTM A780/A780M](#). Maintain finish of deck units and accessories by using touch-up paint whenever necessary to prevent the formation of rust.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

Provide accessories of same material as deck, unless specified otherwise. Provide manufacturer's standard type accessories, as specified.

2.2.1 Adjusting Plates

Provide adjusting plates, or segments of deck units, of same thickness and configuration as deck units in locations too narrow to accommodate full size units. Provide factory cut plates of predetermined size where possible.

2.2.2 End Closures

Fabricated of sheet metal by the deck manufacturer. Provide end closures minimum [0.0295 inch](#) thick to close open ends at exposed edges of floors, parapets, end walls, eaves, and openings through deck.

2.2.3 Partition Closures

Provide closures for closing voids above interior walls and partitions that are perpendicular to the direction of the configurations. Provide rubber, plastic, or sheet steel closures above typical partitions. Provide sheet steel closures above fire-resistant interior walls and partitions located on both sides of wall or partition. Provide glass fiber blanket insulation in the space between pairs of closures at acoustical partitions.

2.2.4 Flexible Closure Strips for Roof Decks

Provide strips made of vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber material specified and premolded to the configuration required to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends and sides of steel roof decking.

Conforming to [ASTM D1056](#), Grade 2A1, with the following additional properties:

Brittleness temperature of [minus 40 degrees F](#) when tested in accordance with [ASTM D746](#).

Flammability resistance with a flame spread rating of less than 25 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

Resistance to ozone must be "no cracks" after exposure of a sample kept under a surface tensile strain of 25 percent to an ozone concentration of 100 parts per million of air by volume in air for 100 hours at 104 degrees F and tested in accordance with ASTM D1149.

Provide a elastomeric type adhesive as recommended by the manufacturer of the flexible closure strips.

2.2.5 Closure Plates for Composite Deck

Support and retain concrete at each floor level. Provide edge closures at all edges of the slab of sufficient strength and stiffness to support the wet concrete. Provide metal closures for all openings in composite steel deck 1/4 inch and over.

2.2.6 Sheet Metal Collar

Where deck is cut for passage of pipes, ducts, columns, etc., and deck is to remain exposed, provide a neatly cut sheet metal collar to cover edges of deck. Do not cut deck until after installation of supplemental supports.

2.2.7 Cover Plates

Sheet metal to close panel edge and end conditions, and where panels change direction or butt. Polyethylene-coated, self-adhesive, 2 inch wide joint tape may be provided in lieu of cover plates on flat-surfaced decking butt joints.

Fabricate cover plates for abutting floor deck units from the specified structural-quality steel sheets not less than nominal 18 gage thick before galvanizing. Provide 6 inch wide cover plates and form to match the contour of the floor deck units.

2.2.8 Roof Sump Pans

Sump pans must be provided for roof drains and must be minimum 0.075 inch thick steel, recessed type. Shape sump pans to meet roof slope by the supplier or by a sheet metal specialist. Provide bearing flanges of sump pans to overlap steel deck a minimum of 3 inch. Shape, size, and reinforce the opening in bottom of the sump pan to receive roof drain.

2.2.9 Column Closures

Sheet metal, minimum 0.0358 inch thick or metal rib lath.

2.2.10 Access Hole Covers

Sheet metal, minimum 0.0474 inch thick.

2.2.11 Hanger

Provide clips or loops for utility systems and suspended ceilings of one or more of the following types:

- a. Lip tabs or integral tabs where noncellular decking or flat plate of cellular section is 0.0474 inch thick or more, and a structural concrete fill is used over deck.

- b. Slots or holes punched in decking for installation of pigtails.
- c. Tabs driven from top side of decking and arranged so as not to pierce electrical cells.
- d. Decking manufacturer's standard as approved by the Contracting Officer.

2.2.12 Shear Connectors

Provide shear connectors in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M headed stud Type B. Submit stud manufacture's certification that the studs delivered conform to the material requirements. Submit stud manufacture's test reports for the last completed in-plant quality control mechanical tests.

2.2.13 Cant Strips for Roof Decks

Fabricate cant strips from the specified commercial-quality steel sheets not less than nominal 0.0358 inch thick before galvanizing. Bend strips to form a 45-degree cant not less than 5 inch wide, with top and bottom flanges a minimum 3 inch wide. Length of strips 10 feet.

2.2.14 Ridge and Valley Plates for Roof Decks

Fabricate plates from the specified structural-quality steel sheets, not less than nominal 0.0358 inch thick before galvanizing. Provide plates of minimum 4-1/2 inch wide and bent to provide tight fitting closures at ridges and valleys. Provide a minimum length of ridge and valley plates of 10 feet.

2.2.15 Metal Closure Strips for Roof Decks

Fabricate strips from the specified commercial-quality steel sheets not less than nominal 0.0358 inch thick before galvanizing. Provide strips from the configuration required to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends and sides of steel roof decking.

2.2.16 Galvanized Steel Angles for Roof Decks

Provide hot-rolled carbon steel angles conforming to ASTM A36/A36M, and hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.

2.2.17 Mechanical Fasteners

Provide mechanical fasteners, such as powder actuated fasteners, pneumatically driven fasteners or self-drilling screws, for anchoring the deck to structural supports and adjoining units as indicated.

2.2.18 Miscellaneous Accessories

Furnish the manufacturer's standard accessories to complete the deck installation. Furnish metal accessories of the same material as the deck and with the minimum design thickness as follows: saddles, 0.0474 inch welding washers, 0.0598 inch other metal accessories, 0.0358 inch unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Prior to installation of decking units and accessories, examine worksite to verify that as-built structure will permit installation of decking system without modification.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Install steel deck units in accordance with 29 CFR 1926, Subpart R - Steel Erection, ANSI/SDI QA/QC, and approved shop drawings. Place units on structural supports, properly adjusted, leveled, and aligned at right angles to supports before permanently securing in place. Damaged deck and accessories including material which is permanently stained or contaminated, deformed, or with burned holes shall not be installed. Extend deck units over three or more supports unless absolutely impractical. Report inaccuracies in alignment or leveling to the Contracting Officer and make necessary corrections before permanently anchoring deck units. Locate deck ends over supports only. Lap 2 inch roof deck ends, butted composite floor deck ends. Do not use unanchored deck units as a work or storage platform. Do not fill unanchored deck with concrete. Permanently anchor units placed by the end of each working day. Do not support suspended ceilings, light fixtures, ducts, utilities, or other loads by steel deck unless indicated. Distribute loads by appropriate means to prevent damage.

3.2.1 Attachment

Immediately after placement and alignment, and after correcting inaccuracies, permanently fasten steel deck units to structural supports and to adjacent deck units by welding with normal 5/8 inch diameter puddle welds, or fastened with screws, powder-actuated fasteners, or pneumatically driven fasteners as indicated on the design drawings and in accordance with manufacturer's recommended procedure and ANSI/SDI C, ANSI/SDI NC or ANSI/SDI RD. Clamp or weight deck units to provide firm contact between deck units and structural supports while performing welding or fastening. Attachment of adjacent deck units by button-punching is prohibited.

3.2.1.1 Welding

Perform welding in accordance with AWS D1.3/D1.3M using methods and electrodes recommended by the manufacturers of the base metal alloys being used. Ensure only operators previously qualified by tests prescribed in AWS D1.3/D1.3M make welds. Immediately recertify, or replace qualified welders, that are producing unsatisfactory welding. Do not use welding washers at the connections of the deck to supports. Do not use welding washers at sidelaps. Holes and similar defects will not be acceptable. Attach all partial or segments of deck units to structural supports in accordance with Section 2.5 of SDI DDM04. Attach shear connectors as shown and welded as per AWS D1.1/D1.1M through the steel deck to the steel member. Immediately clean welds by chipping and wire brushing. Heavily coat welds, cut edges and damaged portions of coated finish with zinc-dust paint conforming to ASTM A780/A780M.

3.2.1.2 Mechanical Fastening

Anchor deck to structural supports and adjoining units with mechanical

fasteners. Drive the powder-actuated fasteners with a low-velocity piston tool by an operator authorized by the manufacturer of the powder-actuated tool. Drive screws to properly clamp deck to supporting steel.

3.2.1.3 Sidelap Fastening

Lock sidelaps between adjacent floor deck units together by welding or screws as indicated.

3.2.2 Openings

Cut or drill all holes and openings required and be coordinated with the drawings, specifications, and other trades. Frame and reinforce openings through the deck in conformance with SDI DDP. Reinforce holes and openings 6 to 12 inch across by 0.0474 inch thick steel sheet at least 12 inch wider and longer than the opening and be fastened to the steel deck at each corner of the sheet and at a maximum of 6 inch on center. Reinforce holes and openings larger than 12 inch by steel channels or angles installed perpendicular to the steel joists and supported by the adjacent steel joists. Install steel channels or angles perpendicular to the deck ribs and fasten to the channels or angles perpendicular to the steel joists. Deck manufacturer shall approve holes or openings larger than 6 inch in diameter prior to drilling or cutting.

3.2.3 Deck Damage

SDI MOC3, for repair of deck damage.

3.2.4 Touch-Up Paint

3.2.4.1 Roof Deck

After roof decking installation, wire brush, clean, and touchup paint the scarred areas on top and bottom surfaces of metal roof decking. The scarred areas include welds, weld scars, bruises, and rust spots. Touchup galvanized surfaces with galvanizing repair paint. Touchup painted surfaces with repair paint of painted surfaces.

3.2.4.2 Floor Deck

For floor decking installation, wire brush, clean, and touchup paint the scarred areas on the top and bottom surfaces of the metal floor decking and on the surface of supporting steel members. Include welds, weld scars, bruises, and rust spots for scarred areas. Touched up the galvanized surfaces with galvanizing repair paint. Touch up the painted surfaces with paint for the repair of painted surfaces.

3.2.5 Accessory Installation

3.2.5.1 Adjusting Plates

Provide in locations too narrow to accommodate full-size deck units and install as shown on shop drawings.

3.2.5.2 End Closures

Provide end closure to close open ends of cells at columns, walls, and openings in deck.

3.2.5.3 Closures Above Partitions

Provide for closing voids between cells over partitions that are perpendicular to direction of cells. Provide a one-piece closure strip for partitions 4 inch nominal or less in thickness and two-piece closure strips for wider partitions. Provide sheet metal closures above fire-rated partitions at both sides of partition with space between filled with fiberglass insulation. Provide flexible rubber closures above acoustic-rated partitions at both sides of partition with space between filled with blanket insulation.

3.2.5.4 Cover Plates

Provide metal cover plates, or joint tape, at joints between cellular decking sheets to be used as electrical raceways. Where concrete leakage would be a problem, provide metal cover plates, or joint tape, at joints between decking sheets, cellular or noncellular, to be covered with concrete fill.

3.2.5.5 Column Closures

Provide for spaces between floor decking and columns which penetrate the deck. Field cut closure plate to fit column in the field and tack weld to decking and columns.

3.2.5.6 Access Hole Covers

Provide access whole covers to seal holes cut in decking to facilitate welding of the deck to structural supports.

3.2.5.7 Hangers

Provide as indicated to support utility system and suspended ceilings. Space devices as indicated.

3.2.6 Concrete Work

Prior to placement of concrete, inspect installed decking to ensure that there has been no permanent deflection or other damage to decking. Replace decking which has been damaged or permanently deflected as approved by the Contracting Officer. Place concrete on metal deck in accordance with Construction Practice of ANSI/SDI C or ANSI/SDI NC.

3.2.7 Preparation of Fire-Proofed Surfaces

Provide deck surfaces, both composite and noncomposite, which are to receive sprayed-on fireproofing, galvanized and free of all grease, mill oil, paraffin, dirt, salt, and other contaminants which impair adhesion of the fireproofing. Complete any required cleaning prior to steel deck installation using a cleaning method that is compatible with the sprayed-on fireproofing.

3.3 ROOF SUMP PANS

Place sump pans over openings in roof decking and fusion welded to top surface of roof decking. Do not exceed spacing of welds of 12 inch with not less than one weld at each corner. Field cut opening in the bottom of each roof sump pan to receive the roof drain as part of the work of this section.

3.4 CANT STRIPS FOR ROOF DECKS

Provide strips to be fusion welded to surface of roof decking, secured to wood nailers by galvanized screws or to steel framing by galvanized self-tapping screws or welds. Do not exceed spacing of welds and fasteners of 12 inch. Lap end joints a minimum 3 inch and secure with galvanized sheet metal screws spaced a maximum 4 inch on center.

3.5 RIDGE AND VALLEY PLATES FOR ROOF DECKS

Provide plates to be fusion welded to top surface of roof decking. Lap end joints a minimum 3 inch. For valley plates, provide endlaps to be in the direction of water flow.

3.6 CLOSURE STRIPS FOR ROOF DECKS

Provide closure strips at open, uncovered ends and edges of the roof decking and in voids between roof decking and top of walls and partitions where indicated. Install closure strips in position in a manner to provide a weathertight installation.

3.7 ROOF INSULATION SUPPORT FOR ROOF DECKS

Provide metal closure strips for support of roof insulation where rib openings in top surface of metal roof decking occur adjacent to edges and openings. Weld metal closure strips in position.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION FOR ROOF DECKS

Upon completion of the deck, sweep surfaces clean and prepare for installation of the roofing.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.9.1 Headed Stud Inspection

In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:

- a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
- b. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.

3.9.2 Deck Weld Inspection

Visual inspect welds in accordance with AWS D1.3/D1.3M.

3.9.3 Decks Not Receiving Concrete

Inspect the decking top surface for distortion after installation. For roof decks not receiving concrete, verify distortion by placing a straight edge across three adjacent top flanges. The maximum allowable gap between the straight edge and the top flanges should not exceed manufacturing and

construction tolerances of supporting members. When gap is more than the allowable, provide corrective measures or replacement. Reinspect decking after performing corrective measures or replacement.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 40 00

COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE (ACI)

ACI 318 (2014; Errata 1-2 2014; Errata 3-5 2015; Errata 6 2016; Errata 7-9 2017) Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318-14) and Commentary (ACI 318R-14)

AMERICAN IRON AND STEEL INSTITUTE (AISI)

AISI S100 (2012) North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members

AISI S110 (2007; Suppl 1; Reaffirmed 2012) Standard for Seismic Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Systems - Special Bolted Moment Frames

AISI S200 (2007) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provision

AISI S201 (2007) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Product Data

AISI S202 (2011) Code of Standard Practice for Cold-formed Steel Structural Framing

AISI S211 (2007) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Wall Stud Design

AISI S212 (2007) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design

AISI S213 (2007; Suppl 1 2009) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Lateral Design

AISI S214 (2012) North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)

Structural Welding Code - Steel

AWS D1.3/D1.3M (2018) Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

ASTM A153/A153M (2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

ASTM A307 (2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength

ASTM A370 (2018) Standard Test Methods and Definitions for Mechanical Testing of Steel Products

ASTM A653/A653M (2019) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A1003/A1003M (2015) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Carbon, Metallic- and Nonmetallic-Coated for Cold-Formed Framing Members

ASTM C955 (2017) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing Members

ASTM B695 (2004; R 2016) Standard Specification for Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel

ASTM C1007 (2011a) Standard Specification for Installation of Load Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs and Related Accessories

ASTM C1513 (2018) Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Connections

ASTM E119 (2018c; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials

ASTM E1190 (2018) Standard Test Methods for Strength of Power-Actuated Fasteners Installed in Structural Members

ASTM E329 (2018) Standard Specification for Agencies

Engaged in Construction Inspection,
Testing, or Special Inspection

ASTM E488/E488M (2015) Standard Test Methods for Strength
of Anchors in Concrete and Masonry Elements

ASTM F1554 (2018) Standard Specification for Anchor
Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield
Strength

ASTM F1941 (2010) Standard Specification for
Electrodeposited Coatings on Threaded
Fasteners (Unified Inch Screw Threads
(UN/UNR))

ASTM F2329/F2329M (2015) Standard Specification for Zinc
Coating, Hot-Dip, Requirements for
Application to Carbon and Alloy Steel
Bolts, Screws, Washers, Nuts, and Special
Threaded Fasteners

ICC EVALUATION SERVICE, INC. (ICC-ES)

ICC ES AC193 (2012) Acceptance Criteria for Mechanical
Anchors in Concrete Elements

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-301-01 (2013; with Change 4, 2018) Structural
Engineering

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor QC approval. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29, SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Framing Components; G

SD-03 Product Data

Steel Studs, Joists, Tracks, Bracing, Bridging and Accessories

Recycled Content of Steel Products; S

SD-05 Design Data

Metal Framing Calculations; G

SD-07 Certificates

Load-Bearing Cold-Formed Metal Framing

Welds

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Steel framing and related accessories shall be stored and handled in accordance with the [AISI S202](#), "Code of Standard Practice for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing".

1.4 LOAD-BEARING COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

Include top and bottom tracks, bracing, fastenings, and other accessories necessary for complete installation. Framing members shall have the structural properties indicated. Where physical structural properties are not indicated, they shall be as necessary to withstand all imposed loads. Design framing in accordance with [AISI S100](#). Non-load-bearing metal framing, furring, and ceiling suspension systems are specified in Section [09 22 00](#) SUPPORTS FOR PLASTER AND GYPSUM BOARD. Metal suspension systems for acoustical ceilings are specified in Section [09 51 00](#) ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS.

Submit mill certificates or test reports from independent testing agency, qualified in accordance with [ASTM E329](#), showing that the steel sheet used in the manufacture of each cold-formed component complies with the minimum yield strengths and uncoated steel thickness specified. Test reports shall be based on the results of three coupon tests in accordance with [ASTM A370](#).

1.5 MAXIMUM DEFLECTION

Deflections of structural members shall not exceed the more restrictive of the limitations of [ICC IBC](#) and [UFC 3-301-01](#).

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a registered professional engineer.
- b. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to [ASTM E329](#) for testing indicated.
- c. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- d. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - (1) [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#), "Structural Welding Code - Steel".
 - (2) [AWS D1.3/D1.3M](#), "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel".

- e. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per [ASTM E119](#) by, and displaying a classification label from, a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- f. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with:
 - (1) [AISI S100](#), "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members".
 - (2) [AISI S110](#), "Standard for Seismic Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Systems - Special Bolted Moment Frames".
 - (3) [AISI S200](#), "North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provision".
 - (4) [AISI S201](#), "North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Product Data".
 - (5) [AISI S202](#), "Code of Standard Practice for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing".
 - (6) [AISI S211](#), "North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Wall Stud Design".
 - (7) [AISI S212](#), "North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design".
 - (8) [AISI S213](#), "North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Lateral Design".

1.6.1 Drawing Requirements

Submit [framing components](#) to show sizes, thicknesses, layout, material designations, methods of installation, and accessories including the following:

- a. Cross sections, plans, and/or elevations showing component types and locations for each framing application; including shop coatings and material thicknesses for each framing component.
- b. Connection details showing fastener type, quantity, location, and other information to assure proper installation.
- c. Drawings depicting panel configuration, dimensions, components, locations, and construction sequence if the Contractor elects to install prefabricated/prefinished frames.

Sign and seal fabrication drawings by a registered professional engineer.

1.6.2 Design Data Required

Submit [metal framing calculations](#) with design criteria and structural loading to verify sizes, thickness, and spacing of members and connections signed and sealed by a registered professional engineer. Show methods and practices used in installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL STUDS, JOISTS, TRACKS, BRACING, BRIDGING AND ACCESSORIES

Framing components shall comply with ASTM C955 and the following.

- a. Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- b. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1003/A1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
 - (1) Grade: As required by structural performance.
 - (2) Coating: G90.
- c. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - (1) Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As required by design.
 - (2) Flange Width: As required by design.
- d. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and as follows:
 - (1) Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs.
 - (2) Flange Width: As required by design.

2.1.1 Studs and Joists of 54 mils (0.054 Inch) and Heavier

Galvanized steel, ASTM A653/A653M and ASTM A1003/A1003M, SS Grade 50, G90.

2.1.2 Studs and Joists of 43 mils (0.043 Inch) and Lighter

Studs and Joists of 43 mils (0.043 Inch) and Lighter, Track, and Accessories (All thicknesses): Galvanized steel, ASTM A653/A653M and ASTM A1003/A1003M, SS, Grade 33 33,000 psi G60.

2.1.3 Sizes, Thickness, Section Modulus, and Other Structural Properties

Size and thickness as required.

2.2 MARKINGS

Studs and track shall have product markings stamped on the web of the section. The markings shall be repeated throughout the length of the member at a maximum spacing of 4 feet on center and shall be legible and easily read. The product marking shall include the following:

- a. An ICC number.
- b. Manufacturer's identification.
- c. Minimum delivered uncoated steel thickness.
- d. Protective coating designator.

- e. Minimum yield strength.

2.3 CONNECTIONS

2.3.1 Steel-To-Concrete Connections

- a. Anchor Rods: [ASTM F1554](#), Grade 36; galvanized per [ASTM A153/A153M](#).
- b. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors: Adhesive or expansion anchors fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with allowable load capacities in accordance with [ICC ES AC193](#) and [ACI 318](#) greater than or equal to the design load as determined by testing per [ASTM E488/E488M](#) conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- c. Power-Actuated Fasteners: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with allowable load capacities in accordance with ICC-ES AC 70 greater than or equal to the design load as determined by testing per [ASTM E1190](#) conducted by a qualified testing agency.

2.3.2 Steel-To-Steel Connections

- a. Screws: [ASTM C1513](#), corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel screws of the type and size indicated. Provide low-profile head beneath sheathing and manufacturer's standard elsewhere. Electroplated to a minimum of 5 micron zinc coating per [ASTM F1941](#) or hot-dipped galvanized per [ASTM A123/A123M](#) or [ASTM A153/A153M](#).
- b. Bolts: [ASTM A307](#) coated by hot-dip process per [ASTM F2329/F2329M](#) or zinc-coated by mechanical-deposition process per [ASTM B695](#), Class 55.
- c. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.4 PLASTIC GROMMETS

Supply plastic grommets for stud webs as recommended by stud manufacturer, to protect electrical wires and plumbing piping. Prevent metal-to-metal contact between wiring/piping and studs.

2.5 SEALER GASKET

Closed-cell neoprene foam, [1/4-inch](#) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track on concrete slab or foundation.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FASTENING

Fasten framing members together by welding or by using self-drilling, self-tapping screws. Electrodes and screw connections shall be as required and indicated in the design calculations.

3.1.1 Welds

All welding shall be performed in accordance with [AWS D1.3/D1.3M](#), as modified by [AISI S100](#). All welders, welding operations, and welding procedures shall be qualified according to [AWS D1.3/D1.3M](#). Submit

certified copies of welder qualifications test records showing qualification in accordance with AWS D1.3/D1.3M. All welds shall be cleaned and coated with rust inhibitive galvanizing paint. Do not field weld materials lighter than 43 mils.

3.1.2 Screws

Screws shall be of the self-drilling self-tapping type, size, and location as required. Screw penetration through joined materials shall not be less than three exposed threads. Minimum spacings and edge distances for screws shall be as specified in AISI S100. Screws covered by sheathing materials shall have low profile heads.

3.1.3 Anchors

Anchors shall be of the type, size, and location as required.

3.1.4 Powder-Actuated Fasteners

Powder-actuated fasteners shall be of the type, size, and location as required.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Install cold-formed framing in accordance with ASTM C1007 and AISI S200.

Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S202 and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

3.2.1 Tracks

Provide accurately aligned runners at top and bottom of studs. Install sealer gasket under bottom of track on concrete slab or foundation. Anchor tracks as indicated in design calculations. Butt weld joints in tracks or splice with stud inserts. Fasteners shall be at least 3 inches from the edge of concrete slabs.

3.2.2 Studs

Cut studs square and set with firm bearing against webs of top and bottom tracks. Position studs vertically in tracks and space as indicated in design. Do not splice studs. Provide at least two studs at jambs of doors and other openings 2 feet wide or larger. Provide jack studs over openings, as necessary, to maintain indicated stud spacing. Provide tripled studs at corners, positioned to receive interior and exterior finishes. Fasten studs to top and bottom tracks by welding or screwing both flanges to the tracks. Framed wall openings shall include headers and supporting components as shown on the drawings. Headers shall be installed in all openings that are larger than the stud spacing in a wall. In curtain wall construction, provide for vertical movement where studs connect to the structural frame. Provide horizontal bracing in accordance with the design calculations and AISI S100. Bracing shall be not less than the following:

<u>LOAD</u>	<u>HEIGHT</u>	<u>BRACING</u>
Wind load only	Up to 10 feet	One row at mid-height
	Over 10 feet	Rows 5'-0" o.c. maximum
Axial load	Up to 10 feet	Two rows at 1/3 points
	Over 10 feet	Rows 3'-4" o.c. maximum

3.2.3 Joists

- a. Provide a stud directly under each joist. The maximum spacing of studs as indicated shall be maintained.
- b. Install, bridge, and brace cold-formed steel trusses according to AISI S200, AISI S214, AISI's "Code of Standard Practice for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing," and manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- c. Install temporary bracing and supports. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- d. Do not alter, cut, or remove framing members or connections of trusses.

3.2.4 Erection Tolerances

- a. Framing members which will be covered by finishes such as wallboard, plaster, or ceramic tile set in a mortar setting bed, shall be within the following limits:
 - (1) Layout of walls and partitions: 1/4 inch from intended position;
 - (2) Plates and runners: 1/4 inch in 8 feet from a straight line;
 - (3) Studs: 1/4 inch in 8 feet out of plumb, not cumulative; and
 - (4) Face of framing members: 1/4 inch in 8 feet from a true plane.
- b. Framing members which will be covered by ceramic tile set in dry-set mortar, latex-portland cement mortar, or organic adhesive shall be within the following limits:
 - (1) Layout of walls and partitions: 1/4 inch from intended position;
 - (2) Plates and runners: 1/8 inch in 8 feet from a straight line;

- (3) Studs: $1/8$ inch in 8 feet out of plumb, not cumulative; and
 - (4) Face of framing members: $1/8$ inch in 8 feet from a true plane.
- End of Section --

SECTION 05 50 13

MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA DAF45 (2003; Reaffirmed 2009) Designation System
for Aluminum Finishes

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 303 (2016) Code of Standard Practice for Steel
Buildings and Bridges

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY PROFESSIONALS (ASSP)

ASSP A10.3 (2013) Safety Requirements for
Powder-Actuated Fastening Systems American
National Standard for Construction and
Demolition Operations

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)
Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B18.2.1 (2012; Errata 2013) Square and Hex Bolts
and Screws (Inch Series)

ASME B18.2.2 (2015) Nuts for General Applications:
Machine Screw Nuts, Hex, Square, Hex
Flange, and Coupling Nuts (Inch Series)

ASME B18.6.2 (1998; R 2010) Slotted Head Cap Screws,
Square Head Set Screws, and Slotted
Headless Set Screws: Inch Series

ASME B18.6.3 (2013; R 2017) Machine Screws, Tapping
Screws, and Machine Drive Screws (Inch
Series)

ASME B18.21.1 (2009; R 2016) Washers: Helical
Spring-Lock, Tooth Lock, and Plain Washers
(Inch Series)

ASME B18.21.2M (1999; R 2014) Lock Washers (Metric Series)

ASME B18.22M	(1981; R 2017) Metric Plain Washers
ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)	
ASTM A36/A36M	(2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A47/A47M	(1999; R 2018; E 2018) Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
ASTM A48/A48M	(2003; R 2012) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings
ASTM A53/A53M	(2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A123/A123M	(2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A153/A153M	(2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A307	(2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A500/A500M	(2018) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes
ASTM A653/A653M	(2019) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A780/A780M	(2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
ASTM A786/A786M	(2015a) Standard Specification for Hot-Rolled Carbon, Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy, and Alloy Steel Floor Plates
ASTM A924/A924M	(2018) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM B26/B26M	(2014; E 2015) Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings
ASTM B108/B108M	(2015) Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Permanent Mold Castings

ASTM B209	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
ASTM B209M	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric)
ASTM B221	(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes
ASTM B221M	(2013) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric)
ASTM C1513	(2018) Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Connections
ASTM D1187/D1187M	(1997; E 2011; R 2011) Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal
ASTM E488/E488M	(2015) Standard Test Methods for Strength of Anchors in Concrete and Masonry Elements
ASTM F1554	(2018) Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

MPI 79	(2012) Primer, Alkyd, Anti-Corrosive for Metal
--------	--

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM MBG 531	(2017) Metal Bar Grating Manual
---------------	---------------------------------

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC SP 3	(1982; E 2004) Power Tool Cleaning
SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3	(2007) Commercial Blast Cleaning

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1	(2014) Safety and Health Requirements Manual
------------	--

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Cover Plates and Frames; G

Expansion Joint Covers, Installation Drawings; G

Bollards/Pipe Guards; G

Embedded Angles and Plates, Installation Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Cover Plates and Frames; G

Expansion Joint Covers; G

Each Downspout Terminations Type; G

SD-04 Samples

Expansion Joint Covers

SD-07 Certificates

Certified Mill Test Reports for Chemistry and Mechanical
Properties; G

1.3 QUALIFICATION OF WELDERS

Qualify welders in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Use procedures, materials, and equipment of the type required for the work.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

Protect from corrosion, deformation, and other types of damage. Store items in an enclosed area free from contact with soil and weather. Remove and replace damaged items with new items.

1.5 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

1.5.1 Fabrication Drawings

Submit fabrication drawings showing layout(s), connections to structural system, and anchoring details as specified in AISC 303.

1.5.2 Installation Drawings

Submit templates, erection, and installation drawings indicating thickness, type, grade, class of metal, and dimensions. Show construction details, reinforcement, anchorage, and installation in relation to the building construction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Provide exposed fastenings of compatible materials (avoid contact of dissimilar metals). Coordinate color and finish with the material to which fastenings are applied. Submit the manufacturer's certified mill reports which clearly show the applicable ASTM mechanical and chemical requirements together with the actual test results for the supplied

materials.

2.1.1 Structural Carbon Steel

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A36/A36M](#).

2.1.2 Structural Tubing

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A500/A500M](#).

2.1.3 Steel Pipe

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A53/A53M](#), Type E or S, Grade B.

2.1.4 Fittings for Steel Pipe

Provide standard malleable iron fittings in accordance with [ASTM A47/A47M](#).

2.1.5 Gratings

- a. Provide gray cast iron in accordance with [ASTM A48/A48M](#), Class 40.
- b. Provide metal plank grating, non-slip requirement, aluminum in accordance with [ASTM B209M](#) [ASTM B209](#), 6061-T6 and steel in accordance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#), Z275 G90.
- c. Provide metal bar type grating in accordance with [NAAMM MBG 531](#).

2.1.6 Floor Plates, Patterned

Provide floor plate in accordance with [ASTM A786/A786M](#). Provide diamond tread steel plate not less than 14 gage.

2.1.7 Anchor Bolts

Provide in accordance with [ASTM F1554](#). Where exposed, provide anchor bolts of the same material, color, and finish as the metal to which they are applied.

2.1.7.1 Expansion Anchors, Sleeve Anchors, and Adhesive Anchors

Provide [type and diameter](#) of anchors as indicated. Minimum embedment shall be in accordance with ICC ESR report for the anchor. Design values listed are as tested in accordance with [ASTM E488/E488M](#).

2.1.7.2 Lag Screws and Bolts

Provide in accordance with [ASME B18.2.1](#), type and grade best suited for the purpose.

2.1.7.3 Toggle Bolts

Provide in accordance with [ASME B18.2.1](#).

2.1.7.4 Bolts, Nuts, Studs and Rivets

Provide in accordance with [ASME B18.2.2](#) or [ASTM A307](#).

2.1.7.5 Powder Actuated Fasteners

Follow safety provisions in accordance with [ASSP A10.3](#).

2.1.7.6 Screws

Provide in accordance with [ASME B18.2.1](#), [ASME B18.6.2](#), [ASME B18.6.3](#) and [ASTM C1513](#).

2.1.7.7 Washers

Provide plain washers in accordance with [ASME B18.22M](#), [ASME B18.21.1](#). Provide beveled washers for American Standard beams and channels, square or rectangular, tapered in thickness, and smooth. Provide lock washers in accordance with [ASME B18.21.2M](#), [ASME B18.21.1](#).

2.1.8 Aluminum Alloy Products

Provide in accordance with [ASTM B209M](#), [ASTM B209](#) for sheet plate, [ASTM B221M](#), [ASTM B221M](#), [ASTM B221](#) for extrusions and [ASTM B26/B26M](#) or [ASTM B108/B108M](#) for castings. Provide aluminum extrusions at least 1/8 inch thick and aluminum plate or sheet at least 0.050 inch thick.

2.2 FABRICATION FINISHES

2.2.1 Galvanizing

Hot-dip galvanize items specified to be zinc-coated, after fabrication where practicable. Provide galvanizing in accordance with [ASTM A123/A123M](#), [ASTM A153/A153M](#), [ASTM A653/A653M](#) or [ASTM A924/A924M](#), Z275 G90.

2.2.2 Galvanize

Anchor bolts, grating fasteners, washers, and parts or devices necessary for proper installation, unless indicated otherwise.

2.2.3 Repair of Zinc-Coated Surfaces

Repair damaged surfaces with galvanizing repair method and paint in accordance with [ASTM A780/A780M](#) or by application of stick or thick paste material specifically designed for repair of galvanizing, as approved by Contracting Officer. Clean areas to be repaired and remove slag from welds. Heat, with a torch, surfaces to which stick or paste material will be applied. Heat to a temperature sufficient to melt the metals in the stick or paste. Spread molten material uniformly over surfaces to be coated and wipe off excess material.

2.2.4 Shop Cleaning and Painting

2.2.4.1 Surface Preparation

Blast clean surfaces in accordance with [SSPC SP 6/NACE No.3](#). Surfaces that will be exposed in spaces above ceiling or in furred spaces and chases may be cleaned in accordance with [SSPC SP 3](#) in lieu of being blast cleaned. Wash cleaned surfaces which become contaminated with rust, dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants with solvents until thoroughly clean. Steel to be embedded in concrete must be free of dirt and grease prior to embed. Do not paint or galvanize bearing surfaces, including contact surfaces within slip critical joints. Shop coat these surfaces with rust

prevention.

2.2.4.2 Pretreatment, Priming and Painting

Apply pre-treatment, primer, and paint in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. On surfaces concealed in the finished construction or not accessible for finish painting, apply an additional prime coat to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.0 mil. Tint additional prime coat with a small amount of tinting pigment.

2.2.5 Nonferrous Metal Surfaces

Protect by plating, anodic, or organic coatings.

2.2.6 Aluminum Surfaces

2.2.6.1 Surface Condition

Before finishes are applied, remove roll marks, scratches, rolled-in scratches, kinks, stains, pits, orange peel, die marks, structural streaks, and other defects which will affect uniform appearance of finished surfaces.

2.2.6.2 Aluminum Finishes

Unexposed sheet, plate and extrusions may have mill finish as fabricated. Sandblast castings' finish, medium, AA DAF45. Unless otherwise specified, provide all other aluminum items with an anodized finish. Provide a coating thickness not less than that specified for protective and decorative type finishes for items used in interior locations or architectural Class I type finish for items used in exterior locations. Provide in accordance with AA DAF45. Provide a polished satin finish on items to be anodized.

2.3 COVER PLATES AND FRAMES

Fabricate cover plates of 1/4 inch thick rolled steel weighing not more than 90 pounds per plate with a raised diamond tread pattern nonslip top surface. Provide galvanized plate. Reinforce to sustain a live load of 12,000 pound axle (6,000 pound wheel). Provide structural steel shapes and plates for frames, with square steel bars welded to frame for anchoring to concrete and securely fastened to the structure as indicated. Miter and weld all corners. Butt joint straight runs. Allow for expansion on straight runs over 15 feet. Provide flush drop handles for removal of plates; form from 1/4 inch round stock. Remove sharp edges and burrs from cover plates and exposed edges of frames. Weld all connections and grind top surface smooth. Weld bar stops every six inches. Provide 1/8 inch clearance at edges and between cover plates.

2.4 EXPANSION JOINT COVERS

Provide expansion joint covers constructed of extruded aluminum with anodized satin aluminum finish for walls and ceilings and standard mill finish for floor covers and exterior covers. Furnish plates, backup angles, expansion filler strips and anchors as indicated.

2.5 BOLLARDS/PIPE GUARDS

Provide 6-inch galvanized weight steel pipe in accordance with

ASTM A53/A53M. Anchor posts in concrete as indicated and fill solidly with concrete with minimum compressive strength of 2500 psi.

2.6 DOWNSPOUT TERMINATIONS

Provide cast iron downspout boot with cleanout access and manufacturer's standard cast iron strap. Size boot to fit downspout.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS PLATES AND SHAPES

Provide items that do not form a part of the structural steel framework, such as lintels, sill angles, miscellaneous mountings and frames. Provide lintels fabricated from structural steel shapes over openings in masonry walls and partitions as indicated and as required to support wall loads over openings. Provide with connections and fasteners or welds. Construct to have at least 8 in bearing on masonry at each end.

Provide angles and plates in accordance with ASTM A36/A36M, for embedment as indicated. Galvanize embedded items exposed to the elements in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.

2.8 STRUCTURAL STEEL SECURITY GATES AND FRAMES

Provide security steel tube gate frames, swing gates with steel tube frame, and steel tube infills as detailed on drawings. Steel tube gate frames, provide jamb anchors at locations as indicated on drawings. Swing gates and steel tube infills shall be power coated for maintenance-free protection powder coat color shall be as indicated on drawings. Swing gate hardware shall include the following:

- a. 5/8 inch diameter galvanized steel head and foot bolts on inactive leaf.
- b. Hinged hasp and staple for pad lock welded to door frames.
- c. Hinges welded to steel tube jamb and steel tube gate frames with nonremovable pins.
- d. Finish for hardware to match gates and frames.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Install items at locations indicated in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Verify all field dimensions prior to fabrication. Include materials and parts necessary to complete each assembly, whether indicated or not. Miss-alignment and miss-sizing of holes for fasteners is cause for rejection. Conceal fastenings where practicable. Joints exposed to weather must be watertight.

3.2 WORKMANSHIP

Provide miscellaneous metalwork that is true and accurate in shape, size, and profile. Make angles and lines continuous and straight. Make curves consistent, smooth and unfaceted. Provide continuous welding along the entire area of contact except where tack welding is permitted. Do not tack weld exposed connections. Unless otherwise indicated and approved, provide a smooth finish on exposed surfaces. Provide countersunk rivets

where exposed. Provide coped and mitered corner joints aligned flush and without gaps.

3.3 ANCHORAGE, FASTENINGS, AND CONNECTIONS

Provide anchorage as necessary, whether indicated or not, for fastening miscellaneous metal items securely in place. Include slotted inserts, expansion shields, powder-driven fasteners, toggle bolts (when approved for concrete), through bolts for masonry, headed shear studs, machine and carriage bolts for steel, through bolts, lag bolts, and screws for wood. Do not use wood plugs. Provide non-ferrous attachments for non-ferrous metal. Provide exposed fastenings of compatible materials (avoid contact of dissimilar metals), that generally match in color and finish the surfaces to which they are applied. Conceal fastenings where practicable. Provide all fasteners flush with the surfaces they fasten, unless indicated otherwise.

3.4 BUILT-IN WORK

Where necessary and not otherwise indicated, form built-in metal work for anchorage with concrete or masonry. Provide built-in metal work in ample time for securing in place as the work progresses.

3.5 WELDING

Perform welding, welding inspection, and corrective welding in accordance with [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#). Use continuous welds on all exposed connections. Grind visible welds smooth in the finished installation. Provide welded headed shear studs in accordance with [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#), Clause 7, except as otherwise specified. Provide in accordance with the safety requirements of [EM 385-1-1](#).

3.6 DISSIMILAR METALS

Where dissimilar metals are in contact, protect surfaces with a coating in accordance with [MPI 79](#) to prevent galvanic or corrosive action. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete, plaster, mortar, masonry, wood, or absorptive materials subject to wetting, protect in accordance with [ASTM D1187/D1187M](#), asphalt-base emulsion. Clean surfaces with metal shavings from installation at the end of each work day.

3.7 EXPANSION JOINT COVERS

Provide in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Verify installation allows specified movement prior to completion of work

3.8 COVER PLATES AND FRAMES

Provide tops of cover plates and frames flush with finished surface. Test for trip hazards and adjust for any encountered lippage.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF BOLLARDS/PIPE GUARDS

Set bollards/pipe guards vertically in concrete piers. Fill hollow cores with concrete having a compressive strength of [3000 psi](#).

3.10 INSTALLATION OF DOWNSPOUT TERMINATIONS

Secure downspouts terminations to downspouts and substrate per

manufacturer's instructions.

3.11 INSTALLATION MISCELLANEOUS PLATES AND SHAPES

Provide lintels fabricated from structural steel shapes over openings in masonry walls and partitions as required to support wall loads over openings. Provide with connections and fasteners and welds. Construct to have at least 8 inches bearing on masonry at each end.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 05 51 33

METAL LADDERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN LADDER INSTITUTE (ALI)

ALI A14.3 (2008; R 2018) Ladders - Fixed - Safety Requirements

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SAFETY PROFESSIONALS (ASSP)

ASSP Z359.16 (2016) Safety Requirements for Climbing Ladder Fall Arrest Systems

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016) Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

ASTM A153/A153M (2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

ASTM A653/A653M (2019) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A780/A780M (2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings

ASTM A924/A924M (2018) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.23 (Nov 2016) Ladders

29 CFR 1910.29

(Nov 2016) Fall Protection System and
Falling Object Protection - Criteria and
Practices

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Ladders, Installation Drawings

SD-03 Product Data

Ladders

Ladder Safety Devices (Climbing Ladder Fall Arrest Systems)

SD-07 Certificates

Fabricator Certification for Ladder Assembly

1.3 CERTIFICATES

Provide fabricator certification for ladder assembly stating that the ladder and associated components have been fabricated according to the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.23.

1.4 QUALIFICATION OF WELDERS

Qualify welders in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Use procedures, materials, and equipment of the type required for the work.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

Protect from corrosion, deformation, and other types of damage. Store items in an enclosed area free from contact with soil and weather. Remove and replace damaged items with new items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Structural Carbon Steel

ASTM A36/A36M.

2.2 FABRICATION FINISHES

2.2.1 Galvanizing

Hot-dip galvanize items specified to be zinc-coated, after fabrication where practicable. Galvanizing: ASTM A123/A123M, ASTM A153/A153M, ASTM A653/A653M or ASTM A924/A924M, G90, as applicable.

2.2.2 Galvanize

Anchor bolts, washers, and parts or devices necessary for proper installation, unless indicated otherwise.

2.2.3 Repair of Zinc-Coated Surfaces

Repair damaged surfaces with galvanizing repair method and paint conforming to [ASTM A780/A780M](#) or by application of stick or thick paste material specifically designed for repair of galvanizing, as approved by Contracting Officer. Clean areas to be repaired and remove slag from welds. Heat surfaces to which stick or paste material is applied, with a torch to a temperature sufficient to melt the metallics in stick or paste; spread molten material uniformly over surfaces to be coated and wipe off excess material.

2.3 LADDERS

Fabricate vertical ladders conforming to [29 CFR 1910.23](#) and Section 5 of [ALI A14.3](#). Ladders shall be capable of supporting their maximum intended load. Use [2 1/2 by 3/8 inch](#) steel flats for stringers and [3/4 inch](#) diameter steel rods for rungs. Ladder rungs, step and cleats must be spaced not less than [10 inches](#) and not more than [16 inches](#) wide (measured before installation of ladder safety system), spaced no more than [14 inches](#) apart, plug welded or shouldered and headed into stringers. Install ladders so that the maximum perpendicular distance from the centerline of the steps or rungs, or grab bars, or both, to the nearest permanent object in the back of the ladder or to the finished wall surface will not be less than [7 inches](#), except for the elevator pit ladders, which have a minimum perpendicular distance of [4.5 inches](#). Provide heavy clip angles welded to the stringer and riveted to the supporting wall. Drilled clip angles for not less than two [1/2 inch](#) diameter expansion bolts. Provide intermediate clip angles not over [48 inches](#) on centers. The top rung of the ladder must be level with the top of the access level, parapet or landing served by the ladder except for hatches or wells. Extend the side rails of through or side step ladders [42 inches](#) above the access level. Provide ladder access protective swing gates at the top of access/egress level. The drawings must indicate ladder locations and details of critical dimensions and materials.

2.3.1 Ladder Safety Devices (Climbing Ladder Fall Arrest Systems)

Conform to [29 CFR 1910.29](#), Section 7 of [ALI A14.3](#) and [ASSP Z359.16](#). Install ladder safety devices on ladders over [20 feet](#) long or more. The ladder safety systems must meet the design requirement of the ladders which they serve. The ladder safety system must be capable of sustaining a minimum static load of [1,000 pounds](#). The applied loads transferred to the climbing ladder mounting locations as a result of a fall shall be specified by the manufacturer of the climbing ladder fall arrest system. Each ladder safety system must allow the worker to climb up and down using both hands and does not require the employee continuously, hold, push, or pull any part of the system while climbing. The connection between the carrier or lifeline and the point of attachment to the body harness does not exceed [9 inches](#). The ladder safety system consists of a rigid or flexible carrier. Mountings for the rigid carriers are attached at each end of the carrier, with intermediate mountings spaced as necessary, along the entire length of the carrier. Mountings for flexible carrier are attached at each end of the carrier and cable guides for flexible carriers are installed at least [25 feet](#) apart but not more than [40 feet](#) apart along

the entire length of the carrier. The design and installation of mountings and cable guides does not reduce the design strength of the ladder.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Install items at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's instructions. Verify all measurements and take all field measurements necessary before fabrication. Provide Exposed fastenings of compatible materials, generally matching in color and finish, and harmonize with the material to which fastenings are applied. Include materials and parts necessary to complete each item, even though such work is not definitely shown or specified. Poor matching of holes for fasteners will be cause for rejection. Conceal fastenings where practicable. Thickness of metal and details of assembly and supports must provide strength and stiffness. Formed joints exposed to the weather to exclude water. Items listed below require additional procedures.

3.2 WORKMANSHIP

Metalwork must be well formed to shape and size, with sharp lines and angles and true curves. Drilling and punching must produce clean true lines and surfaces. Continuously weld along the entire area of contact. Do not tack weld exposed connections of work in place. Grid smooth exposed welds. Provide smooth finish on exposed surfaces of work in place, unless otherwise approved. Where tight fits are required, mill joints. Cope or miter corner joints, well formed, and in true alignment. Install in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and approved drawings, cuts, and details.

3.3 ANCHORAGE, FASTENINGS, AND CONNECTIONS

Provide anchorage where necessary for fastening metal items securely in place. Include for anchorage not otherwise specified or indicated slotted inserts. Make exposed fastenings of compatible materials, generally matching in color and finish, to which fastenings are applied. Conceal fastenings where practicable.

3.4 WELDING

Perform welding, welding inspection, and corrective welding, in accordance with [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#). Use continuous welds on all exposed connections. Grind visible welds smooth in the finished installation.

3.5 FINISHES

3.5.1 Field Preparation

Remove rust preventive coating just prior to field erection, using a remover approved by the rust preventive manufacturer. Surfaces, when assembled, must be free of rust, grease, dirt and other foreign matter.

3.6 LADDERS

Secure to the adjacent construction with the clip angles attached to the stringer. Secure to masonry or concrete with not less than two [1/2 inch](#) diameter expansion bolts. Install intermediate clip angles not over [48](#)

inches on center. Install brackets as required for securing of ladders welded or bolted to structural steel or built into the masonry or concrete. Ends of ladders must not rest upon floor.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 52 00

METAL RAILINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS
(AASHTO)

AASHTO M 314 (1990; R 2013) Standard Specification for
Steel Anchor Bolts

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)
Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B18.2.1 (2012; Errata 2013) Square and Hex Bolts
and Screws (Inch Series)

ASME B18.6.1 (2016) Wood Screws (Inch Series)

ASME B18.6.3 (2013; R 2017) Machine Screws, Tapping
Screws, and Machine Drive Screws (Inch
Series)

ASME B18.21.1 (2009; R 2016) Washers: Helical
Spring-Lock, Tooth Lock, and Plain Washers
(Inch Series)

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A27/A27M (2017) Standard Specification for Steel
Castings, Carbon, for General Application

ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon
Structural Steel

ASTM A47/A47M (1999; R 2018; E 2018) Standard
Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron
Castings

ASTM A53/A53M (2018) Standard Specification for Pipe,
Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated,
Welded and Seamless

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc
(Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and
Steel Products

ASTM A153/A153M	(2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A283/A283M	(2013) Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates
ASTM A307	(2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A449	(2014) Standard Specification for Hex Cap Screws, Bolts, and Studs, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105/90 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength, General Use
ASTM A500/A500M	(2018) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes
ASTM A512	(2006; R 2012) Standard Specification for Cold-Drawn Buttweld Carbon Steel Mechanical Tubing
ASTM C514	(2004; R 2014) Standard Specification for Nails for the Application of Gypsum Board
ASTM C636/C636M	(2013) Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels
ASTM E488/E488M	(2015) Standard Test Methods for Strength of Anchors in Concrete and Masonry Elements
ASTM F3125/F3125M	(2015a) Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts, Steel and Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, 120 ksi (830 MPa) and 150 ksi (1040 MPa) Minimum Tensile Strength, Inch and Metric Dimensions

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM AMP 521	(2001; R 2012) Pipe Railing Systems Manual
---------------	--

1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Preinstallation Meetings

Within 30 days of contract award, submit [fabrication drawings](#) to the Contracting Officer for the following items:

- a. Iron and steel hardware
- b. Steel railings and handrails
- c. Anchorage and fastening systems

Submit manufacturer's catalog data, including two copies of manufacturers specifications, load tables, dimension diagrams, and anchor details for the following items:

- a. Protective coating
- b. Steel railings and handrails
- c. Anchorage and fastening systems

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication Drawings; G

Iron and Steel Hardware; G

Steel Shapes, Plates, Bars and Strips; G

SD-03 Product Data

Structural-Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars; G

Structural-Steel Tubing; G

Cold-Drawn Steel Tubing; G

Concrete Inserts; G

Masonry Anchorage Devices; G

Protective Coating; G

Steel Railings and Handrails; G

Anchorage and Fastening Systems; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation Instructions

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FABRICATION

Preassemble items in the shop to the greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only to the extent necessary for shipping and handling. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

For the fabrication of work exposed to view, use only materials that are smooth and free of surface blemishes, including pitting, seam marks,

roller marks, rolled trade names, and roughness. Remove blemishes by grinding, or by welding and grinding, before cleaning, treating, and applying surface finishes, including zinc coatings.

Provide railing and handrail detail plans and elevations at not less than 1 inch to 1 foot. Provide details of sections and connections at not less than 3 inches to 1 foot. Also, detail setting drawings, diagrams, templates for installation of anchorages, including concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and miscellaneous metal items having integral anchors.

Use materials of size and thicknesses indicated or, if not indicated, of the size and thickness necessary to produce adequate strength and durability in the finished product for its intended use. Work the materials to the dimensions indicated on approved detail drawings, using proven details of fabrication and support. Use the type of materials indicated or specified for the various components of work.

Form exposed work true to line and level, with accurate angles and surfaces and straight sharp edges. Ensure that all exposed edges are eased to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch. Bend metal corners to the smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing the work.

Weld corners and seams continuously and in accordance with the recommendations of AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Grind exposed welds smooth and flush to match and blend with adjoining surfaces.

Form the exposed connections with hairline joints that are flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners wherever possible. Use exposed fasteners of the type indicated or, if not indicated, use countersunk Phillips flathead screws or bolts.

Provide anchorage of the type indicated and coordinated with the supporting structure. Fabricate anchoring devices and space as indicated and as required to provide adequate support for the intended use of the work.

Use hot-rolled steel bars for work fabricated from bar stock unless work is indicated or specified to be fabricated from cold-finished or cold-rolled stock.

2.1.1 Steel Handrails

Fabricate joint posts, rail, and corners by one of the following methods:

- a. Flush-type rail fittings of commercial standard, welded and ground smooth, with railing splice locks secured with 3/8 inch hexagonal-recessed-head setscrews.
- b. Mitered and welded joints made by fitting post to top rail and intermediate rail to post, mitering corners, groove-welding joints, and grinding smooth. Butt railing splices and reinforce them by a tight-fitting interior sleeve not less than 6 inches long.
- c. Railings may be bent at corners in lieu of jointing, provided that bends are made in suitable jigs and the pipe is not crushed.

2.1.2 Protective Coating

Shop-prime the steelwork as indicated in accordance with Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS except the following:

- a. steel surfaces encased in concrete
- b. steel surfaces for welding

2.2 COMPONENTS

2.2.1 Structural Steel Plates, Shapes And Bars

Provide structural-size shapes and plates, except plates to be bent or cold-formed, conforming to ASTM A36/A36M, unless otherwise noted.

Provide steel plates, to be bent or cold-formed, conforming to ASTM A283/A283M, Grade C.

Provide steel bars and bar-size shapes conforming to ASTM A36/A36M, unless otherwise noted.

2.2.2 Structural-Steel Tubing

Provide structural-steel tubing, hot-formed, welded or seamless, conforming to ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B, unless otherwise noted.

2.2.3 Cold-Drawn Steel Tubing

Provide tubing conforming to ASTM A512, sunk-drawn, butt-welded, cold-finished, and stress-relieved.

2.2.4 Steel Pipe

Provide pipe conforming to ASTM A53/A53M, type as selected, Grade B; primed finish, unless galvanizing is required; standard weight (Schedule 40).

2.2.5 Concrete Inserts

Provide threaded-type concrete inserts consisting of galvanized ferrous castings, internally threaded to receive 3/4 inch diameter machine bolts; either malleable iron conforming to ASTM A47/A47M or cast steel conforming to ASTM A27/A27M, hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M.

Provide wedge-type concrete inserts consisting of galvanized box-type ferrous castings designed to accept 3/4 inch diameter bolts having special wedge-shaped heads, made of either malleable iron conforming to ASTM A47/A47M or cast steel conforming to ASTM A27/A27M and hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M.

Provide carbon steel bolts having special wedge-shaped heads, nuts, washers, and shims, galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M. Provide slotted-type concrete inserts consisting of a galvanized 1/8 inch thick pressed-steel plate conforming to ASTM A283/A283M, made of box-type welded construction with a slot designed to receive 3/4 inch diameter square-head bolt with knockout cover; and hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.

2.2.6 Masonry Anchorage Devices

Provide masonry anchorage devices consisting of expansion shields complying with [AASHTO M 314](#), [ASTM E488/E488M](#) and [ASTM C514](#) as follows:

Provide lead expansion shields for machine screws and bolts [1/4 inch](#) and smaller; head-out embedded nut type, single-unit class, Group I, Type 1, Class 1.

Provide lead expansion shields for machine screws and bolts larger than [1/4 inch](#) in size; head-out embedded nut type, multiple-unit class, Group I, Type 1, Class 2.

Provide bolt anchor expansion shields for lag bolts; zinc-alloy, long-shield anchor class, Group II, Type 1, Class 1.

Provide bolt anchor expansion shields for bolts; closed-end bottom-bearing class, Group II, Type 2, Class 1.

Provide tumble-wing-type toggle bolts conforming to [ASTM F3125/F3125M](#), [ASTM A449](#) and [ASTM C636/C636M](#), type, class, and style as required.

2.2.7 Fasteners

Provide galvanized zinc-coated fasteners in accordance with [ASTM A153/A153M](#) where built into exterior walls or floor systems. Select fasteners for the type, grade, and class required for the installation of steel stair items.

Provide standard hexagon-head bolts, conforming to [ASTM A307](#), [Grade A](#).

Provide square-head lag bolts conforming to [ASME B18.2.1](#).

Provide cadmium-plated steel machine screws conforming to [ASME B18.6.3](#).

Provide flat-head carbon steel wood screws conforming to [ASME B18.6.1](#).

Provide plain round, general-assembly-grade, carbon steel washers conforming to [ASME B18.21.1](#).

Provide helical spring, carbon steel lockwashers conforming to [ASME B18.2.1](#).

2.2.8 Steel Railings And Handrails

Design handrails to resist a concentrated load of [250 lb](#) in any direction at any point of the top of the rail or [50 lb per foot](#) applied horizontally to the top of the rail, whichever is more severe. [NAAMM AMP 521](#), provide the same size rail and post. Provide pipe collars of the same material and finish as the handrail and posts.

2.2.8.1 Steel Handrails

Provide steel handrails, including inserts in concrete, structural tubing conforming to [ASTM A500/A500M](#), Grade A or B of equivalent strength. Provide steel railings of [1-1/2 inch](#) nominal size as indicated and shop-painted.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Adjust stair railings and handrails before securing in place in order to ensure proper matching at butting joints and correct alignment throughout their length. Space posts as indicated. Plumb posts in each direction. Secure posts and rail ends to building construction as follows:

- a. Anchor posts in concrete by means of pipe sleeves set and anchored into concrete. Provide sleeves of galvanized, standard-weight, steel pipe, not less than 6 inches long, and having an inside diameter not less than 1/2 inch greater than the outside diameter of the inserted pipe post. Provide steel plate closure secured to the bottom of the sleeve, with closure width and length not less than 1 inch greater than the outside diameter of the sleeve. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill the annular space between the post and sleeve with nonshrink grout or a quick-setting hydraulic cement. Cover anchorage joint with a round steel flange welded to the post.
- b. Anchor posts to steel with oval steel flanges, angle type or floor type as required by conditions, welded to posts and bolted to the steel supporting members.
- c. Anchor rail ends into concrete and masonry with round steel flanges welded to rail ends and anchored into the wall construction with lead expansion shields and bolts.
- d. Anchor rail ends to steel with oval or round steel flanges welded to tail ends and bolted to the structural-steel members.

Secure handrails to walls by means of wall brackets and wall return fitting at handrail ends. Provide brackets of malleable iron castings, with not less than 3 inch projection from the finished wall surface to the center of the pipe, drilled to receive one 3/8 inch bolt. Locate brackets not more than 60 inches on center. Provide wall return fittings of cast iron castings, flush type, with the same projection as that specified for wall brackets. Secure wall brackets and wall return fittings to building construction as follows:

- a. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use bolt anchor expansion shields and lag bolts.
- b. For hollow masonry and stud partition anchorage, use toggle bolts having square heads.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Submit manufacturer's installation instructions for the following products to be used in the fabrication of steel stair railings and hand rail work:

- a. Structural-steel plates, shapes, and bars
- b. Structural-steel tubing
- c. Cold-finished steel bars
- d. Hot-rolled carbon steel bars

- e. Cold-drawn steel tubing
- f. Protective coating
- g. Masonry anchorage devices
- h. Steel railings and handrails
- i. Aluminum railings and handrails
- j. Anchorage and fastening systems

Provide complete, detailed fabrication and installation drawings for all [iron and steel hardware](#), and for all [steel shapes, plates, bars, and strips](#) used in accordance with the design specifications cited in this section.

3.2.1 Steel Handrail

Install handrail in pipe sleeves embedded in concrete and filled with nonshrink grout or quick-setting anchoring cement with anchorage covered with standard pipe collar pinned to post by means of pipe sleeves secured to wood with screws by means of masonry with expansion shields and bolts or toggle bolts or by means of base plates bolted to stringers or structural-steel frame work. Secure rail ends by steel pipe flanges anchored by expansion shields and bolts, through-bolted to a back plate or by [1/4 inch](#) lag bolts to studs or solid backing.

3.2.2 Touchup Painting

Immediately after installation, clean field welds, bolted connections, abraded areas of the shop paint, and exposed areas painted with the paint used for shop painting. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry-film thickness of [2 mils](#).

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.3.1 Field Welding

Ensure that procedures of manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds made, and methods used in correcting welding work comply with [AWS D1.1/D1.1M](#).

-- End of Section --

SECTION 05 72 00

DECORATIVE METAL SPECIALTIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

- | | |
|-----------|--|
| AA ADM | (2015) Aluminum Design Manual |
| AA ASM-35 | (2000) Specifications for Aluminum Sheet Metal Work in Building Construction, Construction Manual Series Section 5 |
| AA DAF45 | (2003; Reaffirmed 2009) Designation System for Aluminum Finishes |
| AA PK-1 | (2015) Pink Sheets: Designations and Chemical Composition Limits for Aluminum Alloys in the Form of Castings & Ingot |

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| AWS A5.3/A5.3M | (1999; R 2007) Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Electrodes for Shielded Metal Arc Welding |
| AWS D1.2/D1.2M | (2014) Structural Welding Code - Aluminum |

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| ASME B18.2.1 | (2012; Errata 2013) Square and Hex Bolts and Screws (Inch Series) |
| ASME B18.2.2 | (2015) Nuts for General Applications: Machine Screw Nuts, Hex, Square, Hex Flange, and Coupling Nuts (Inch Series) |
| ASME B18.6.1 | (2016) Wood Screws (Inch Series) |
| ASME B18.6.3 | (2013; R 2017) Machine Screws, Tapping Screws, and Machine Drive Screws (Inch Series) |
| ASME B18.13 | (2017; ERTA 2018) Screw and Washer Assemblies - Sems (Inch Series) |
| ASME B18.21.1 | (2009; R 2016) Washers: Helical Spring-Lock, Tooth Lock, and Plain Washers (Inch Series) |

ASME B18.24 (2004; Addenda A 2006; R 2011) Part
Identifying Number (PIN) Code System
Standard for B18 Fastener Products

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A27/A27M (2017) Standard Specification for Steel
Castings, Carbon, for General Application

ASTM A47/A47M (1999; R 2018; E 2018) Standard
Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron
Castings

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc
(Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and
Steel Products

ASTM A153/A153M (2016) Standard Specification for Zinc
Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel
Hardware

ASTM A283/A283M (2013) Standard Specification for Low and
Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel
Plates

ASTM B26/B26M (2014; E 2015) Standard Specification for
Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM B211/B211M (2019) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Rolled or Cold Finished
Bar, Rod, and Wire

ASTM B221 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

ASTM B221M (2013) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric)

ASTM B247 (2015) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Die Forgings, Hand
Forgings, and Rolled Ring Forgings

ASTM B316/B316M (2010) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Rivet and Cold-Heading
Wire and Rods

ASTM C514 (2004; R 2014) Standard Specification for
Nails for the Application of Gypsum Board

ASTM C636/C636M (2013) Standard Practice for Installation
of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for
Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels

ASTM D1730 (2009; R 2014) Standard Practices for

Preparation of Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy
Surfaces for Painting

ASTM D1752

(2018) Standard Specification for
Preformed Sponge Rubber, Cork and Recycled
PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete
Paving and Structural Construction

ASTM G71

(1981; R 2014) Standard Guide for
Conducting and Evaluating Galvanic
Corrosion Tests in Electrolytes

ASTM G82

(1998; R 2014) Standard Guide for
Development and Use of a Galvanic Series
for Predicting Galvanic Corrosion
Performance

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

CS 23.00/AWS C2.23M/NACE #12

(2003) Specification for the Application
of Thermal Spray Coatings (Metallizing) of
Aluminum, Zinc, and Their Alloys and
Composites for the Corrosion Protection of
Steel

SSPC PA 1

(2016) Shop, Field, and Maintenance
Coating of Metals

SSPC PS 11.01

(1982; E 2004) Black (or Dark Red) Coal
Tar Epoxy Polyamide Painting System

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Existing Conditions; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Ornamental Metal Items; G

Installation Drawings; G

Shop and Field Connections; G

Construction Details; G

SD-03 Product Data

Materials; G

Ornamental Metal Items; G

Aluminum-Alloy Extrusions

Aluminum-Alloy Sheets And Plates

Aluminum-Alloy Castings

Aluminum-Alloy Forgings

SD-04 Samples

Manufacturer's Standard Color Charts; G

Shop Paint; G

Finish Paint; G

Aluminum Finishes; G

Anchorage Devices and Fasteners; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Welding Tests; G

SD-07 Certificates

Welding Procedures

Ornamental Metal Items; G

Welder Qualifications

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Cleaning Materials; S

Preventative Maintenance and Inspection

Maintenance Instructions

Application Methods

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

1.3.1 Samples

Submit samples for each type of [anchorage devices and fasteners](#).

Submit samples for [aluminum finishes](#), one for each type used in the project. Provide samples of standard size as used in construction. After approval, full-sized samples may be used in construction, provided that each sample is clearly identified and its location recorded.

1.3.2 Color Charts

Submit [manufacturer's standard color charts](#) for [shop paint](#) and [finish paint](#) for approval by the Contracting Officer before work begins.

1.3.3 Qualifications for Welding Work

Submit [welding procedures](#) and [welding tests](#) in accordance with [AWS D1.2/D1.2M](#). Prepare all test specimens in the presence of the Contracting Officer and have specimens tested by an approved testing laboratory at the Contractor's expense.

Submit certification of [welder qualifications](#) by tests in accordance with [AWS D1.2/D1.2M](#). In addition, perform test on trail pieces in positions and with clearances equivalent to those actually encountered during construction. If a test weld fails to meet the requirements, complete an immediate retest of two test welds. Failure in either of the two immediate retests mandates that the welder be retested after further practice or training, and provide a complete new set of tests welds.

1.3.4 Field Measurements

Records of existing conditions may be provided by the Contracting Officer before the start of work. Submit survey data showing [existing conditions](#) before preparation of shop drawings and fabrication.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Store all architectural metal items off the ground on clean raised platforms or pallets one level high in dry locations with adequate ventilation, such as an enclosed building or closed trailer.

Keep materials free from dirt and grease and protected from corrosion.

Store packaged materials in their original, unbroken containers in a dry area, until ready for installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 [MATERIALS](#)

Submit manufacturer's catalog data for the following items, listing all ornamental metal accessories including casting, forgings, fasteners, and anchorage devices.

2.1.1 Concrete Inserts

Use galvanized wedge-type concrete inserts, and box-type, ferrous castings, with integral anchor loop at back of box and designed to accept bolts having special wedge-shape heads. Ensure that ferrous castings are malleable iron conforming to [ASTM A47/A47M](#), Grade 32510 or Grade 35018, Grade 22010 or Grade 24118, or medium-strength cast steel conforming to [ASTM A27/A27M](#), Grade U-60-30. Ensure that inserts are hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with [ASTM A153/A153M](#). Provide hot-dip galvanized carbon steel bolts with special wedge-shape heads, nuts, washers, and shims, in accordance with [ASTM A153/A153M](#).

Provide slotted-type concrete inserts and hot-dip galvanized, welded-construction, box-type, pressed steel plate, with slots to receive square-head bolts and to provide lateral adjustment of the bolt. Ensure that the insert body less anchorage lugs is at least of [4 1/2 inches](#) long. Provide inserts with knockout cover. Use plate at least [1/8 inch](#) thick conforming to [ASTM A283/A283M](#), Grade C. Ensure that inserts are

hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with [ASTM A123/A123M](#).

Provide concrete inserts that are nonremovable when embedded in concrete of [3000-pounds per square inch](#) compressive strength and subjected to a [6000-pound](#) tension load test in an axial direction. Ensure that concrete indicates no evidence of failure attributable to the anchoring device itself.

2.1.2 Masonry Anchorage Devices

Provide expansion shield masonry anchorage devices conforming to [ASTM C514](#), Group, Type, and Class as follows:

- a. Lead expansion shields for machine screws and bolts [1/4 inch](#) and smaller, head-out embedded-nut type, single-unit class, conforming to Group I, Type 1, Class 1.
- b. Lead expansion shields for machine screws and bolts larger than [1/4 inch](#), head-out embedded-nut type, multiple-unit class, conforming to Group I, Type 1, Class 2.
- c. Bolt anchor expansion shields for lag bolts, zinc-alloy long-shield anchors class, conforming to Group II, Type 1, Class 1.
- d. Bolt anchor expansion shields for bolts, closed-end bottom bearing class, conforming to Group II, Type 2, Class 1.

2.1.3 Toggle Bolts

Provide corrosion-resistant chromium-nickel steel conforming to AISI Type 303, 304, or 316 toggle bolts of the class and style best suited for the work, conforming to [ASTM C636/C636M](#), Type II.

2.1.4 Standard Bolts and Nuts

Provide standard bolts, regular hexagon-head, corrosion-resistant steel, coarse-thread series, conforming to, Type II.

Provide standard nuts, plain hexagon, regular-style, corrosion-resistant steel, conforming to [ASME B18.2.2](#), Type II, Style 4.

2.1.5 Lag Bolts

Provide lag bolts, square-head, gimlet point or cone point, corrosion-resistant steel, conforming to [ASME B18.2.1](#), Type I, Grade C.

2.1.6 Machine Screws

Provide machine screws, corrosion-resistant steel, cross-recess drive, flathead, conforming to [ASME B18.6.3](#), Type III, Style 2C or 3C.

2.1.7 Wood Screws

Provide wood screws, corrosion-resistant steel, single-thread, flathead with cross-recess drive, conforming to [ASME B18.6.1](#).

2.1.8 Plain Washers

Provide plain washers, round, general-assembly, corrosion-resistant steel,

conforming to [ASME B18.21.1](#), Type A, Grade I, Class B.

2.1.9 Lock Washers

Provide lock washers, helical-spring, corrosion-resistant steel (nonmagnetic), conforming to [ASME B18.13](#) and [ASME B18.21.1](#).

2.1.10 Welding Filler Metal

Provide aluminum-alloy welding filler metal for welding of aluminum alloys, conforming to [AWS A5.3/A5.3M](#) and as recommended by the aluminum producer for the work.

2.2 FABRICATION

Submit fabrication drawings for [ornamental metal items](#).

2.2.1 Workmanship

Fabricate metalwork to the shape and size, with lines, angles, and curves true to form. Provide necessary rabbets, lugs, and brackets so that the work can be assembled. Conceal fasteners where practical.

Design exterior ornamental metal items to withstand expansion and contraction of the component parts at an ambient temperature of [100 degrees F](#) without causing harmful buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of fasteners, or other harmful effects.

Ensure that the welded fabrication meets requirements as specified in [AWS D1.2/D1.2M](#). Execute all welds behind finished surfaces without distortion or discoloration of the exposed side. Clean flux from welded joints and dress all exposed and contact surfaces.

Drill or punch holes for fasteners.

Mill joints to a close fit. Cope or miter the corner joints to a well-formed shape and true alignment with the adjacent item. Fabricate and form joints exposed to weather to prevent water intrusion.

Ensure that all castings are sound and free from warp or defects that impair their strength and appearance, with a smooth finish and sharp well-defined vertical and horizontal lines on all exposed surfaces.

2.2.2 [Aluminum-Alloy Extrusions](#)

Provide aluminum fabrications conforming to [AA ADM](#), [AA ASM-35](#), and [AA PK-1](#).

Provide 6063, temper T5 extrusions conforming to [ASTM B221](#) [ASTM B221M](#).

Provide aluminum-alloy and tempered extrusions recommended by the aluminum producer with the specified finish of integral-color anodized coating having mechanical properties equal to or exceeding those of aluminum alloy 6063, temper T5, conforming to [ASTM B221](#) [ASTM B221M](#).

2.2.3 [Aluminum-Alloy Sheets and Plates](#)

Provide aluminum alloy 3003, temper H16 sheets and plates, conforming to [ASTM B209](#) unless otherwise specified.

Provide aluminum alloy 5005, temper H16 sheets and plates with a clear anodized coating conforming to [ASTM B209](#).

Provide aluminum-alloy and tempered sheets and plates recommended by the aluminum producer with the specified finish of integral-color anodized coating having mechanical properties equal to or exceeding those of alloy 5005, temper H16, conforming to [ASTM B209](#).

2.2.4 Aluminum-Alloy Castings

Provide aluminum alloy 5140, temper F sand castings, conforming to [ASTM B26/B26M](#).

Provide aluminum-alloy castings as recommended by the Aluminum Association with a clear anodized coating.

Provide aluminum-alloy castings containing the casting alloy and condition recommended by the aluminum producer with the specified finish of integral-color anodized coating having mechanical properties equal to or exceeding those of alloy 5140, temper F, conforming to [ASTM B26/B26M](#).

2.2.5 Aluminum-Alloy Forgings

Provide aluminum-alloy 6061, temper T6 forgings, conforming to [ASTM B247](#).

Provide aluminum-alloy and tempered forgings recommended by the aluminum producer with the specified finish of integral-color anodized coating having mechanical properties equal to or exceeding those of aluminum alloy 6061, temper T6, conforming to [ASTM B247](#).

2.2.6 Metals for Fasteners

Provide fastener identification conforming to [ASME B18.24](#).

Provide aluminum-alloy bolts and screws made from rod conforming to [ASTM B211/B211M](#), alloy 2024, and temper T351.

Provide aluminum-alloy nuts made from rod conforming to [ASTM B211/B211M](#), alloy 6061, and temper T6.

Provide aluminum-alloy washers made from sheet conforming to [ASTM B209](#), alloy 2024, and temper T4.

Provide aluminum-alloy rivets made from rod or wire conforming to [ASTM B316/B316M](#), alloy 6053, and temper T61.

Provide corrosion-resistant steel fasteners made of chromium-nickel steel, AISI Type 303, 304, or 316, with form and condition best suited for the application.

2.2.7 Shop Paint for Aluminum

Provide a shop paint with an inhibitive epoxy polyamide primer conforming to [SSPC PS 11.01](#), [CS 23.00/AWS C2.23M/NACE #12](#), [ASTM G71](#) and [ASTM G82](#).

2.2.8 Protection of Aluminum from Dissimilar Materials

Protect aluminum surfaces that will come in contact with dissimilar metals, or masonry, concrete, or wood, with epoxy polyamide conforming to

SSPC PS 11.01, and topcoated with aliphatic polyurethane conforming to ASTM G71 and ASTM G82.

Prepare aluminum surfaces to be painted by the acid pickling method conforming to ASTM D1730, Type B, Method 2 or Method 3.

Apply paint to dry, clean surfaces by brush or spraying to provide a minimum dry-film thickness of 1.5 mils.

2.2.9 Aluminum Finishes

Provide a finish for exposed-to-view aluminum surfaces of architectural metal items conforming to AA DAF45 and finished as specified for each of the following items:

- a. Match the finish color and appearance to that of the aluminum finish sample approved for each architectural metal item within the aluminum producer's standard color range.

2.2.10 Ornamental Metal Items

2.2.10.1 Aluminum Joint Cover Assemblies

Design aluminum joint cover assemblies for horizontal movement and the joint width indicated.

Provide mill finish for exposed-to-view surfaces.

Provide floor joint cover assemblies consisting of a continuous frame unit on each side of floor-to-floor joints or on one side of floor-to-wall joints as required by construction conditions. Include floor cover plates, filler strips, anchors, and other accessories as required to complete the installation, and as follows:

Fabricate floor frame units from aluminum-alloy extrusions with an integral curb edge bar for the expansion joint edges. Provide integral grooves to receive anchor bolts, and floor cover plate with filler strip surfaces that will finish flush to the finished floor elevation when the floor cover assembly is installed. Provide corrosion-resistant coated aluminum alloy or steel anchor bolts and nuts, spaced not more than 3 inches from each end and not more than 18 inches on center between end anchors. Furnish coated steel anchor bolts and nuts conforming to SSPC PA 1. Provide frame splice connectors as required to complete the installation.

2.2.10.1.1 Floor Cover Plates

Provide recessed floor cover plates, 1/4 inch aluminum-alloy extrusions with recess to receive resilient floor covering, with a recess depth as required to provide a resilient floor covering surface flush with the finished floor elevation.

Provide floor cover plates of the patterns and widths indicated, and lengths as long as practical to be lifted by two people, with metal thickness not less than 1/4 inch. Drill and countersink fixed edge of floor cover plates to receive flathead screws, spaced not more than 3 inches from each cover plate end and not more than 18 inches on center between the end screw holes. Provide corrosion-resistant steel screws for securing floor cover plates.

Provide lifting eyelet attachment points per plate.

2.2.10.1.2 Wall And Ceiling Joint Cover Assemblies

Provide rubber and cork composition tape filler strips with pressure-sensitive adhesive coating on one face and smooth suede surface on the exposed face, conforming to [ASTM D1752](#), not less than [1 1/2 inches](#) wide and a depth as required to provide a surface flush with the finished floor elevation.

Provide wall and ceiling joint cover assemblies consisting of continuous anchor strips on one side of the wall or ceiling expansion joint; wall and ceiling cover plates; and seals, anchors, and other accessories as required to complete the installation, and as follows:

- a. Provide aluminum-alloy wall and ceiling anchor strip extrusions fabricated to provide an integral curb bar edge and integral lugs to receive snap-on cover plates. Field-drill fixed edge of anchor strips with holes to receive screws, spaced not more than [3 inches](#) from each end and not more than [12 inches](#) on center between the end screw holes. Provide cadmium-plated screws with masonry anchorage devices or toggle bolts as required by construction conditions.
- b. Provide aluminum-alloy wall and ceiling cover plate extrusions of the patterns and widths indicated, designed for snap-on application over anchor strips, fabricated with integral grooves to receive sealing gaskets, and having a smooth exposed-to-view surface.

Provide vinyl sealing gaskets for exterior wall joint cover assemblies and wall and ceiling joint cover assemblies.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Submit [installation drawings](#) for ornamental metal items, [shop and field connections](#) and [construction details](#) showing location, dimensions, size, and weight or gauge as applicable of each ornamental item; type and location of shop and field connections; and other pertinent construction and erection details. Show on drawings location and details of anchorage devices embedded in cast-in-place concrete and masonry construction.

3.1.1 Anchorage Devices Embedded In Other Construction

Install decorative metal work in accordance with the approved shop drawings and descriptive data for each ornamental metal item, as specified.

Securely fasten decorative metal items plumb and true to horizontal and vertical lines and levels.

3.1.2 Holes for Other Work

Provide holes where indicated for securing other work to metal work.

3.1.3 Fastening to Construction-In-Place

Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for fastening ornamental metal items to construction-in-place. Include threaded

fasteners for concrete inserts embedded in cast-in-place concrete; masonry anchorage devices and threaded fasteners for solid masonry and concrete-in-place; toggle bolts for hollow masonry and stud partitions; through-bolting for masonry and wood construction; lag bolts and wood screws for wood construction; and threaded fasteners for structural steel. Provide fastening as indicated and as specified. Do not fasten to wood plugs in masonry or concrete-in-place.

3.1.4 Cutting and Fitting

Perform required cutting, drilling, and fitting for the installation of ornamental metal work. Execute cutting, drilling, and fitting carefully; when required; fit in-place work before fastening.

3.1.5 Setting Masonry Anchorage Devices

Set all masonry anchorage devices in masonry or concrete-in-place construction in accordance with the anchorage device manufacturer's printed instructions. Drill anchorage holes to the depth, diameter, and size recommended by the manufacturer of the particular anchorage device used. Leave drilled anchorage holes rough, not reamed, and free of drill dust.

3.1.6 Threaded Connections

Countersink flat bolts and screw heads where anchors are exposed to view, and tightly secure threaded connections so that the threads are entirely concealed by fitting, unless otherwise specified.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.2.1 Finished Ornamental Metal Work Requirements

Ornamental metal work will be rejected for any of the following deficiencies:

- a. Finish of exposed-to-view aluminum surfaces having color or appearance that is outside the color or appearance range of the approved samples for aluminum finish.
- b. Installed ornamental metal items having stained, discolored, abraded, or otherwise damaged exposed-to-view aluminum surfaces that cannot be removed by cleaning or repairing.
- c. Installed ornamental metal items that do not match the approved sample.
- d. Aluminum surfaces in contact with dissimilar materials that are not protected as specified.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

Before final acceptance, wash exposed-to-view aluminum surfaces with clean water and soap and rinse with clean water. Do not use acid solutions, steel wool, or other harsh abrasives. Remove stains that remain after cleaning or restore the finish in accordance with the aluminum producer's recommendations

Perform all [preventative maintenance and inspection](#) in accordance with the aluminum producer's recommended [cleaning materials](#) and [application methods](#)

including precautions in the use of cleaning materials that maybe detrimental to the aluminum finish when improperly applied.

3.4 MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS

Submit the aluminum producer's recommended [maintenance instructions](#) for cleaning materials and application.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 06 10 00

ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN FOREST FOUNDATION (AFF)

ATFS STANDARDS (2015) American Tree Farm System Standards
of Sustainability 2015-2020

AMERICAN LUMBER STANDARDS COMMITTEE (ALSC)

ALSC PS 20 (2015) American Softwood Lumber Standard

AMERICAN WOOD COUNCIL (AWC)

AWC WFCM (2012) Wood Frame Construction Manual for
One- and Two-Family Dwellings

AMERICAN WOOD PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (AWPA)

AWPA BOOK (2015) AWPA Book of Standards

AWPA M2 (2016) Standard for the Inspection of
Preservative Treated Wood Products for
Industrial Use

AWPA M6 (2013) Brands Used on Preservative Treated
Materials

AWPA P5 (2015) Standard for Waterborne
Preservatives

AWPA P18 (2014) Nonpressure Preservatives

AWPA U1 (2017) Use Category System: User
Specification for Treated Wood

APA - THE ENGINEERED WOOD ASSOCIATION (APA)

APA L870 (2010) Voluntary Product Standard, PS
1-09, Structural Plywood

CALIFORNIA AIR RESOURCES BOARD (CARB)

CARB 93120 (2007) Airborne Toxic Control Measure
(ATCM) to Reduce Formaldehyde Emissions
from Composite Wood Products

CSA GROUP (CSA)

CSA Z809-08 (R2013) Sustainable Forest Management

FOREST STEWARDSHIP COUNCIL (FSC)

FSC STD 01 001 (2015) Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship

PROGRAMME FOR ENDORSEMENT OF FOREST CERTIFICATION (PEFC)

PEFC ST 2002:2013 (2015) PEFC International Standard Chain of Custody of Forest Based Products Requirements

SUSTAINABLE FOREST INITIATIVE (SFI)

SFI 2015-2019 (2015) Standards, Rules for Label Use, Procedures and Guidance

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 770 Formaldehyde Standards for Composite Wood Products

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-06 Test Reports

Preservative-treated Lumber and Plywood

SD-07 Certificates

Certificates of Grade

Preservative Treatment

1.3 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Deliver materials to the site in an undamaged condition. Store materials off the ground to provide proper ventilation, with drainage to avoid standing water, and protection against ground moisture and dampness. Store materials with a moisture barrier at both the ground level and as a cover forming a well ventilated enclosure. Remove defective and damaged materials and provide new materials. Store separated reusable wood waste convenient to cutting station and area of work.

1.4 GRADING AND MARKING

1.4.1 Lumber

Mark each piece of board lumber or each bundle of small pieces of lumber with the grade mark of a recognized association or independent inspection agency. Such association or agency must be certified by the Board of Review, American Lumber Standards Committee, to grade the species used. Surfaces that are to be exposed to view must not bear grademarks, stamps, or any type of identifying mark.

1.4.2 Plywood

Mark each sheet with the mark of a recognized association or independent inspection agency that maintains continuing control over the quality of the plywood. The mark must identify the plywood by species group or span rating, exposure durability classification, grade, and compliance with [APA L870](#). Surfaces that are to be exposed to view must not bear grademarks or other types of identifying marks.

1.4.3 [Preservative-Treated](#) Lumber

The Contractor is responsible for the quality of treated wood products. Each treated piece must be inspected in accordance with [AWPA M2](#) and permanently marked or branded, by the producer, in accordance with [AWPA M6](#). The Contractor must provide Contracting Officer's Representative (COR) with the inspection report of an approved independent inspection agency that offered products comply with applicable AWPA Standards. The appropriate Quality Mark on each piece will be accepted, in lieu of inspection reports, as evidence of compliance with applicable AWPA treatment standards.

1.5 SIZES AND SURFACING

[ALSC PS 20](#) for dressed sizes of yard and structural lumber. Lumber must be surfaced four sides. Size references, unless otherwise specified, are nominal sizes, and actual sizes must be within manufacturing tolerances allowed by the standard under which the product is produced.

1.6 MOISTURE CONTENT

Air-dry or kiln-dry lumber. Kiln-dry treated lumber after treatment. Maximum moisture content of wood products must be as follows at the time of delivery to the job site:

- a. Lumber and board, 19 percent maximum

1.7 [PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT](#)

Treat wood products with waterborne wood preservatives conforming to [AWPA P5](#). Pressure treatment of wood products must conform to the requirements of [AWPA BOOK](#) Use Category System Standards U1 and T1. Pressure-treated wood products must not contain arsenic, chromium, or other agents classified as carcinogenic, probably carcinogenic, or possibly carcinogenic to humans (compounds in Groups 1, 2A, or 2B) by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC), Lyon, France. Pressure-treated wood products must not exceed the limits of the U.S. EPA's Toxic Characteristic Leaching Procedure (TCLP), and must not be classified as hazardous waste. Submit certification from treating plant

stating chemicals and process used and net amount of preservatives retained are in conformance with specified standards. In accordance with **AWPA U1** provide non-copper preservative treatment such as EL2, PTI or SBX, DOT for products in direct contact with sheet metal.

- a. 0.25 pcf intended for above ground use.
- b. All wood must be air or kiln dried after treatment. Specific treatments must be verified by the report of an approved independent inspection agency, or the AWPA Quality Mark on each piece. Do not incise surfaces of lumber that will be exposed. **Minimize cutting and avoid breathing sawdust.** Brush coat areas that are cut or drilled after treatment with either the same preservative used in the treatment or with a 2 percent copper naphthenate solution. Plastic lumber must not be preservative treated. The following items must be preservative treated:
 - (1) Wood plates, furring, and sleepers that are less than **24 inches** from the ground, furring and nailers that are set into or in contact with concrete or masonry.
 - (2) Nailers, edge strips, blocking, and curbs for roof decks as indicated on drawings.

1.7.1 Existing Structures

Use borate, permathrin, or a sodium silicate wood mineralization process to treat wood. Use borate for interior applications only.

1.7.2 New Construction

Use a boron-based preservative conforming to **AWPA P18**, sodium silicate wood mineralization process, or Ammoniacal Copper Quaternary Compound to treat wood. Use boron-based preservatives for above-ground applications only.

1.8 CERTIFICATIONS

1.8.1 Certified Wood Grades

Provide **certificates of grade** from the grading agency on graded but unmarked lumber or plywood attesting that materials meet the grade requirements specified herein.

1.8.2 Certified Sustainably Harvested Wood

Provide wood certified as sustainably harvested by **FSC STD 01 001**, **ATFS STANDARDS**, **CSA Z809-08**, **SFI 2015-2019**, or other third party program certified by **PEFC ST 2002:2013**. Provide a letter of Certification of Sustainably Harvested Wood signed by the wood supplier. Identify certifying organization and their third party program name and indicate compliance with chain-of-custody program requirements. Submit sustainable wood certification data; identify each certified product on a line item basis. Submit copies of invoices bearing certification numbers.

1.8.3 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

Submit required indoor air quality certifications in one submittal package.

1.8.3.1 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by [UL 2818](#) (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.8.3.2 Composite Wood, Wood Structural Panel and Agrifiber Products

For purposes of this specification, composite wood and agrifiber products include particleboard, medium density fiberboard (MDF), strawboard, panel substrates, and door cores. Provide products certified to meet requirements of both [40 CFR 770](#) and [CARB 93120](#). Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

Conform to [AWC WFCM](#) and install in accordance with the [National Association of Home Builders \(NAHB\) Advanced Framing Techniques: Optimum Value Engineering](#), unless otherwise indicated or specified. Select lumber sizes to minimize waste. Fit lumber and other rough carpentry, set accurately to the required lines and levels, and secure in place in a rigid manner.

3.2 MISCELLANEOUS

3.2.1 Wood Nailers, Nailer Strips, Blocking, and Curbs

Provide sizes and configurations indicated or specified and anchored securely to continuous construction.

3.2.1.1 Nailing Strips

Provide nailing strips as indicated.

3.2.2 Wood Blocking

Provide proper sizes and shapes at proper locations for the installation and attachment of wood and other finish materials, fixtures, equipment, and items indicated or specified.

3.2.3 Wood Furring

Provide where shown and as necessary for facing materials specified. Except as shown otherwise, furring strips must be nominal one by 3, continuous, and spaced [16 inches](#) o.c. Erect furring vertically or horizontally as necessary. Furring must be plumb, rigid, and level and

must be shimmed as necessary to provide a true, even plane with surfaces suitable to receive the finish required.

3.2.4 Temporary Closures

Provide with hinged doors and padlocks and install during construction at exterior doorways and other ground level openings that are not otherwise closed. Cover windows and other unprotected openings with polyethylene or other approved material, stretched on wood frames. Provide dustproof barrier partitions to isolate areas as directed.

3.2.5 Temporary Centering, Bracing, and Shoring

Provide for the support and protection of masonry work during construction as specified in Section 04 20 00 MASONRY.

3.3 WASTE MANAGEMENT OF WOOD PRODUCTS

In accordance with the Waste Management Plan and as specified. Separate members larger than 16 inches, and multiple offcuts of any size larger than 12 inches. Clearly separate damaged wood and other scrap lumber for acceptable alternative uses on site, including bracing, blocking, cripples, ties, and shims.

Separate treated, stained, painted, and contaminated wood and place in designated area for hazardous materials. Dispose of according to local regulations. Do not leave any wood, shavings, sawdust, or other wood waste buried in fill or on the ground. Prevent sawdust and wood shavings from entering the storm drainage system. Do not burn scrap lumber that has been pressure treated, or lumber that is less than one year old.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 06 41 16.00 10

PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI A161.2 (1998) Decorative Laminate Countertops,
Performance Standards for Fabricated High
Pressure

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM F547 (2017) Standard Terminology of Nails for
Use with Wood and Wood-Base Materials

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.9 (2015) Cabinet Hardware

COMPOSITE PANEL ASSOCIATION (CPA)

CPA A208.2 (2016) Medium Density Fiberboard (MDF) for
Interior Applications

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA LD 3 (2005) Standard for High-Pressure
Decorative Laminates

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

UL ENVIRONMENT (ULE)

ULE Greenguard UL Greenguard Certification Program

WINDOW AND DOOR MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (WDMA)

ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A (2013) Interior Architectural Wood Flush
Doors

WOODWORK INSTITUTE (WI)

NAAWS 3.1 (2017; 2018 Errata Edition) North American
Architectural Woodwork Standards

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Work in this section includes laminate clad custom casework cabinets and vanities as shown on the drawings and as described in this specification. This Section includes high-pressure laminate surfacing and cabinet hardware. Comply with EPA requirements in accordance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. All exposed and semi-exposed surfaces, whose finish is not otherwise noted on the drawings or finish schedule, shall be sanded smooth and shall receive a clear finish of polyurethane. Wood finish may be shop finished or field applied in accordance with Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

1.3 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING

Materials in this technical specification may contribute towards contract compliance with sustainability requirements. See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING for project local/regional materials, low-emitting materials, recycled content, certified wood and rapidly renewable materials requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Shop Drawings

Installation

SD-03 Product Data

Wood Materials

Wood Finishes

Finish Schedule

Certification

SD-04 Samples

Plastic Laminates; G

Cabinet Hardware; G

SD-07 Certificates

Quality Assurance; S

Laminate Clad Casework; S

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 General Requirements

Unless otherwise noted on the drawings, all materials, construction methods, and fabrication shall conform to and comply with the custom grade quality standards as outlined in **NAAWS 3.1**, Section for laminate clad cabinets. These standards shall apply in lieu of omissions or specific requirements in this specification. Contractors and their personnel engaged in the work shall be able to demonstrate successful experience with work of comparable extent, complexity and quality to that shown and specified. Submit a quality control statement which illustrates compliance with and understanding of **NAAWS 3.1** requirements, in general, and the specific **NAAWS 3.1** requirements provided in this specification. The quality control statement shall also certify a minimum of ten years Contractor's experience in laminate clad casework fabrication and construction. The quality control statement shall provide a list of a minimum of five successfully completed projects of a similar scope, size, and complexity.

1.5.2 Mock-ups

Prior to final approval of **shop drawings**, provide a full-size mock-up of a typical vanity, floor cabinet, and wall cabinet, including all components and hardware necessary to illustrate a completed unit with a minimum of one door and one drawer assembly. The completed mock-up shall include countertops and back splashes where specified. The mock-up shall utilize specified finishes in the patterns and colors as indicated on drawings. Upon disapproval, rework or remake the mock-up until approval is secured. Remove rejected units from the jobsite. Approved mock-up may remain as part of the finished work. Submit shop drawings showing all fabricated casework items in plan view, elevations and cross-sections to accurately indicate materials used, details of construction, dimensions, methods of fastening and erection, and installation methods proposed. Shop drawing casework items shall be clearly cross-referenced to casework items located on the project drawings. Shop drawings shall include a color schedule of all casework items to include all countertop, exposed, and semi-exposed cabinet finishes to include finish material manufacturer, pattern, and color.

1.5.3 Sustainable Design **Certification**

Product shall be third party certified in accordance with **ULE Greenguard** Gold, **SCS** Scientific Certification Systems Indoor Advantage Gold or equal. Certification shall be performed annually and shall be current.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Casework may be delivered knockdown or fully assembled. Deliver all units to the site in undamaged condition, stored off the ground in fully enclosed areas, and protected from damage. The storage area shall be well ventilated and not subject to extreme changes in temperature or humidity.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

Coordinate work with other trades. Units shall not be installed in any room or space until painting, and ceiling installation are complete within the room where the units are located. Floor cabinets shall be installed before finished flooring materials are installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD MATERIALS

2.1.1 Lumber

All framing lumber shall be kiln-dried Grade III to dimensions as shown on the drawings. Frame front, where indicated on the drawings, shall be nominal 3/4-inch hardwood.

2.1.2 Panel Products

2.1.2.1 Plywood

All plywood panels used for framing purposes shall be veneer core hardwood plywood, NAAWS 3.1 Grade AA. Nominal thickness of plywood panels shall be as indicated in this specification and on the drawings.

2.1.2.2 Medium Density Fiberboard

Medium density fiberboard (MDF) shall be an acceptable panel substrate where noted on the drawings. Medium density fiberboard shall meet the minimum standards listed in CPA A208.2.

2.2 SOLID POLYMER MATERIAL

Solid surfacing casework components shall conform to the requirements of Section 06 61 16 SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS.

2.3 HIGH PRESSURE DECORATIVE LAMINATE (HPDL)

All plastic laminates shall meet the requirements of ANSI/NEMA LD 3 and ANSI A161.2 for high-pressure decorative laminates. Design, colors, surface finish and texture, and locations shall be as indicated on the drawings. Submit two samples of each plastic laminate pattern and color. Samples shall be a minimum of 5 by 7 inches in size. Plastic laminate types and nominal minimum thicknesses for casework components shall be as indicated in the following paragraphs.

2.3.1 Horizontal General-Purpose Standard (HGS) Grade

Horizontal general-purpose standard grade plastic laminate shall be 0.048 inch (plus or minus 0.005 inch) in thickness. This laminate grade is intended for horizontal surfaces where postforming is not required.

2.3.2 Vertical General-Purpose Standard (VGS) Grade

Vertical general-purpose standard grade plastic laminate shall be 0.028 inch (plus or minus 0.004 inch) in thickness. This laminate grade is intended for exposed exterior vertical surfaces of casework components where postforming is not required.

2.3.3 Horizontal General-Purpose Postformable (HGP) Grade

Horizontal general-purpose postformable grade plastic laminate shall be 0.042 inch (plus or minus 0.005 inch) in thickness. This laminate grade is intended for horizontal surfaces where post forming is required.

2.3.4 Vertical General Purpose Postformable (VGP) Grade

Vertical general purpose postformable grade plastic laminate shall be 0.028 inch (plus or minus 0.004 inch) in thickness. This laminate grade is intended for exposed exterior vertical surfaces of components where postforming is required for curved surfaces.

2.3.5 Cabinet Liner Standard (CLS) Grade

Cabinet liner standard grade plastic laminate shall be 0.020 inch in thickness. This laminate grade is intended for light duty semi-exposed interior surfaces of casework components.

2.3.6 Backing Sheet (BK) Grade

Undecorated backing sheet grade laminate is formulated specifically to be used on the backside of plastic laminated panel substrates to enhance dimensional stability of the substrate. Backing sheet thickness shall be 0.020 inch. Backing sheets shall be provided for all laminated casework components where plastic laminate finish is applied to only one surface of the component substrate.

2.4 THERMOSET DECORATIVE OVERLAYS (MELAMINE)

Thermoset decorative overlays (melamine panels) shall be used for cabinet surfaces.

2.5 EDGE BANDING

Edge banding for casework doors and drawer fronts shall be PVC vinyl and shall be 0.020 inch thick. Material width shall be as indicated on the drawings. Color and pattern shall be as indicated on the drawings.

2.6 CABINET HARDWARE

Submit one sample of each cabinet hardware item specified to include hinges, pulls, and drawer glides. All hardware shall conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.9, unless otherwise noted, and shall consist of the following components:

2.6.1 Door Hinges

Frameless concealed type, BHMA No. B51602.

2.6.2 Cabinet Pulls

As indicated on drawings.

2.6.3 Drawer Slide

Side mounted type, BHMA No. _____ with full extension and a minimum 100-pound load capacity. Slides shall include an integral stop to avoid accidental drawer removal.

2.6.4 Adjustable Shelf Support System

Pin supports.

2.7 FASTENERS

Nails, screws, and other suitable fasteners shall be the size and type best suited for the purpose and shall conform to [ASTM F547](#) where applicable.

2.8 ADHESIVES, CAULKS, AND SEALANTS

2.8.1 Adhesives

Adhesives shall be of a formula and type recommended by AWI. Adhesives shall be selected for their ability to provide a durable, permanent bond and shall take into consideration such factors as materials to be bonded, expansion and contraction, bond strength, fire rating, and moisture resistance. Adhesives shall meet local regulations regarding VOC emissions and off-gassing.

2.8.1.1 Wood Joinery

Adhesives used to bond wood members shall be a Type II for interior use polyvinyl acetate resin emulsion. Adhesives shall withstand a bond test as described in [ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A](#).

2.8.1.2 Laminate Adhesive

Adhesive used to join high-pressure decorative laminate to wood shall be adhesive consistent with AWI and laminate manufacturer's recommendations. PVC edgebanding shall be adhered using a polymer-based hot melt glue.

2.8.2 Caulk

Caulk used to fill voids and joints between laminated components and between laminated components and adjacent surfaces shall be clear, 100 percent silicone.

2.8.3 Sealant

Sealant shall be of a type and composition recommended by the substrate manufacturer to provide a moisture barrier at sink cutouts and all other locations where unfinished substrate edges may be subjected to moisture.

2.9 WOOD FINISHES

Paint, stain, varnish and their applications required for [laminate clad casework](#) components shall be as indicated in Section [09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS](#). Color and location shall be as indicated on the drawings.

2.10 ACCESSORIES

2.10.1 Grommets

Grommets shall be plastic material for cutouts with a diameter of 3 [inches](#). Locations shall be as indicated on the drawings.

2.11 FABRICATION

Verify field measurements as indicated in the [shop drawings](#) before fabrication. Fabrication and assembly of components shall be accomplished at the shop site to the maximum extent possible. Construction and

fabrication of cabinets and their components shall meet or exceed the requirements for AWI custom grade unless otherwise indicated in this specification. Cabinet style, in accordance with **NAAWS 3.1**, Section 400-G descriptions, shall be as indicated on the drawings.

2.11.1 Base and Wall Cabinet Case Body

2.11.1.1 Cabinet Components

Frame members shall be glued-together, kiln-dried hardwood lumber. Top corners, bottom corners, and cabinet bottoms shall be braced with either hardwood blocks or water-resistant glue and nailed in place metal or plastic corner braces. Cabinet components shall be constructed from the following materials and thicknesses:

2.11.1.1.1 Body Members (Ends, Divisions, Bottoms, and Tops)

3/4 inch medium density fiberboard (MDF) panel product.

2.11.1.1.2 Face Frames and Rails

3/4 inch hardwood lumber.

2.11.1.1.3 Shelving

3/4 inch medium density fiberboard (MDF) panel product.

2.11.1.1.4 Cabinet Backs

1/4 inch medium density fiberboard (MDF) panel product.

2.11.1.1.5 Drawer Sides, Backs, and Subfronts

1/2 inch hardwood lumber.

2.11.1.1.6 Drawer Bottoms

1/4 inch medium density fiberboard (MDF) panel product.

2.11.1.1.7 Door and Drawer Fronts

3/4-inch medium density fiberboard (MDF) panel product.

2.11.1.2 Joinery Method for Case Body Members

2.11.1.2.1 Tops, Exposed Ends, and Bottoms

- a. Steel "European" assembly screws (**1-1/2 inch** from end, **5 inch** on center, fasteners will not be visible on exposed parts).

2.11.1.2.2 Exposed End Corner and Face Frame Attachment

2.11.1.2.2.1 Mitered Joint

Lock miter or spline or biscuit, glued under pressure (no visible fasteners).

2.11.1.2.2.2 Non-Mitered Joint (90 degree)

Butt joint glued under pressure (no visible fasteners).

2.11.1.2.2.3 Butt Joint

glued and nailed

2.11.1.2.3 Cabinet Backs (Wall Hung Cabinets)

Wall hung cabinet backs must not be relied upon to support the full weight of the cabinet and its anticipated load for hanging/mounting purposes. Method of back joinery and hanging/mounting mechanisms should transfer the load to case body members. Fabrication method shall be:

2.11.1.2.3.1 Full Overlay

Full overlay, plant-on backs with minimum back thickness of 1/2 inch and minimum No. 12 plated (no case hardened) screws spaced a minimum 3 inches on center. Edge of back shall not be exposed on finished sides. Anchor strips are not required when so attached.

2.11.1.2.4 Wall Anchor Strips

Wall Anchor Strips shall be required for all cabinets with backs less than 1/2 inch thick. Strips shall consist of minimum 1/2 inch thick lumber, minimum 2-1/2 inches width; securely attached to wall side of cabinet back - top and bottom for wall hung cabinets, top only for floor standing cabinets.

2.11.2 Cabinet Floor Base

Floor cabinets shall be mounted on a base constructed of nominal 2 inch thick lumber. Base assembly components shall be treated lumber. Finished height for each cabinet base shall be as indicated on the drawings. Bottom edge of the cabinet door or drawer face shall be flush with top of base as indicated on the drawings.

2.11.3 Cabinet Door and Drawer Fronts

Door and drawer fronts shall be fabricated from 3/4 inch medium density fiberboard (MDF). All door and drawer front edges shall be surfaced with PVC edgebanding, color as indicated on the drawings.

2.11.4 Drawer Assembly

2.11.4.1 Drawer Components

Drawer components shall consist of a removable drawer front, sides, backs, and bottom. Drawer components shall be constructed of the following materials and thicknesses:

2.11.4.1.1 Drawer Sides and Backs For Transparent Finish

1/2 inch thick solid hardwood lumber.

2.11.4.1.2 Drawer Sides and Back For Thermoset Decorative Overlay (Melamine) Finish

1/2 inch thick MDF fiberboard substrate.

2.11.4.1.3 Drawer Bottom

1/4 inch thick veneer core panel product for transparent or plastic laminate finish.

2.11.4.2 Drawer Assembly Joinery Method

Multiple dovetail (all corners) or French dovetail front/dadoed back, glued under pressure.

2.11.5 Shelving

2.11.5.1 General Requirements

Shelving shall be fabricated from 3/4 inch medium density fiberboard (MDF). All shelving top and bottom surfaces shall be finished with HPDL plastic laminate. Shelf edges shall be finished in a PVC edgebanding.

2.11.5.2 Shelf Support System

The shelf support system shall be:

2.11.5.2.1 Pin Hole Method

Drill holes on the interior surface of the cabinet side walls. Evenly space holes in two vertical columns. Space the holes in each column at 1 inch increments starting 6 inches from the cabinet interior bottom and extending to within 6 inches of the top interior surface of the cabinet. Drill holes to provide a level, stable surface when the shelf is resting on the shelf pins. Coordinate hole diameter with pin insert size to provide a firm, tight fit.

2.11.6 Laminate Clad Countertops

2.11.6.1 Edge Style

Front and exposed side countertop edges shall be in shapes and to dimensions as shown on the drawings. The countertop edge material shall be Solid Surface Material.

2.11.7 Laminate Application

Laminate application to substrates shall follow the recommended procedures and instructions of the laminate manufacturer and ANSI/NEMA LD 3, using tools and devices specifically designed for laminate fabrication and application. Provide a balanced backer sheet (Grade BK) wherever only one surface of the component substrate requires a plastic laminate finish. Apply required grade of laminate in full uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes using one piece for full length only, using adhesives specified herein or as recommended by the manufacturer. Fit corners and joints hairline. All laminate edges shall be machined flush, filed, sanded, or buffed to remove machine marks and eased (sharp corners removed). Clean up at easing shall be such that no overlap of the member eased is visible. Fabrication shall conform to ANSI A161.2. Laminate

types and grades for component surfaces shall be as follows unless otherwise indicated on the drawings:

2.11.7.1 Base/Wall Cabinet Case Body

- a. Exterior (exposed) surfaces to include exposed and semi-exposed face frame surfaces: HPDL Grade VGS.
- b. Interior (semi-exposed) surfaces to include interior back wall, bottom, and side walls: Thermoset Decorative Overlay (melamine).

2.11.7.2 Adjustable Shelving

2.11.7.2.1 Top and Bottom Surfaces

Thermoset Decorative Overlay (melamine).

2.11.7.2.2 All Edges

PVC edgebanding.

2.11.7.3 Fixed Shelving

2.11.7.3.1 Top and Bottom Surfaces

Thermoset Decorative Overlay (melamine).

2.11.7.3.2 Exposed Edges

HPDL Grade VGS.

2.11.7.4 Door, Drawer Fronts, Access Panels

2.11.7.4.1 Exterior (Exposed) and Interior (Semi-Exposed) Faces

HPDL Grade VGS.

2.11.7.4.2 Edges

PVC edgebanding.

2.11.7.5 Drawer Assembly

All interior and exterior surfaces: Thermoset Decorative Overlay (melamine).

2.11.7.6 Countertops and Splashes

All exposed and semi-exposed surfaces: Solid Surface Material.

2.11.7.7 Tolerances

Flushness, flatness, and joint tolerances of laminated surfaces shall meet the [NAAWS 3.1](#) custom grade requirements.

2.11.8 Finishing

2.11.8.1 Filling

No fasteners shall be exposed on laminated surfaces. All nails, screws, and other fasteners in nonlaminated cabinet components shall be countersunk and the holes filled with wood filler consistent in color with the wood species.

2.11.8.2 Sanding

All surfaces requiring coatings shall be prepared by sanding with a grit and in a manner that scratches will not show in the final system.

2.11.8.3 Coatings

Types, method of application and location of casework finishes shall be in accordance with the [finish schedule](#), drawings and Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS. All cabinet reveals shall be painted. Submit descriptive data which provides narrative written verification of all types of construction materials and finishes, methods of construction, etc. not clearly illustrated on the submitted shop drawings. Data shall provide written verification of conformance with [NAAWS 3.1](#) for the quality indicated to include materials, tolerances, and types of construction. Both the manufacturer of materials and the fabricator shall submit available literature which describes re-cycled product content, operations and processes in place that support efficient use of natural resources, energy efficiency, emissions of ozone depleting chemicals, management of water and operational waste, indoor environmental quality, and other production techniques supporting sustainable design and products.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 [INSTALLATION](#)

Installation shall comply with applicable requirements for [NAAWS 3.1](#) custom quality standards. Countertops and fabricated assemblies shall be installed level, plumb, and true to line, in locations shown on the drawings. Cabinets and other [laminated clad casework](#) assemblies shall be attached and anchored securely to the floor and walls with mechanical fasteners that are appropriate for the wall and floor construction.

3.1.1 Anchoring Systems

3.1.1.1 Floor

Base cabinets shall utilize a floor anchoring system as detailed on the drawings. Anchoring and mechanical fasteners shall not be visible from the finished side of the casework assembly. Cabinet assemblies shall be attached to anchored bases without visible fasteners as indicated in the drawings. Where assembly abuts a wall surface, anchoring shall include a minimum [1/2 inch](#) thick lumber or panel product hanging strip, minimum [2-1/2 inch](#) width; securely attached to the top of the wall side of the cabinet back.

3.1.1.2 Wall

Cabinet and vanity to be wall mounted shall utilize minimum [1/2 inch](#) thick lumber or panel product hanging strips, minimum [2-1/2 inch](#) width; securely

attached to the wall side of the cabinet back, both top and bottom.

3.1.2 Countertops

Countertops shall be installed in locations as indicated on the drawings. Countertops shall be fastened to supporting casework structure with mechanical fasteners, hidden from view. All joints formed by the countertop or countertop splash and adjacent wall surfaces shall be filled with a clear silicone caulk. Loose back and side splashes shall be adhered to both the countertop surface perimeter and the adjacent wall surface with adhesives appropriate for the type of materials to be adhered. Joints between the countertop surface and splash shall be filled with clear silicone caulk in a smooth consistent concave bead. Bead size shall be the minimum necessary to fill the joint and any surrounding voids or cracks.

3.1.3 Hardware

Casework hardware shall be installed in types and locations as indicated on the drawings. Where fully concealed European-style hinges are specified to be used with particleboard or fiberboard doors, the use of plastic or synthetic insertion dowels shall be used to receive 3/16 inch "Euroscrews". The use of wood screws without insertion dowels is prohibited.

3.1.4 Doors, Drawers and Removable Panels

The fitting of doors, drawers and removable panels shall be accomplished within target fitting tolerances for gaps and flushness in accordance with NAAWS 3.1 custom grade requirements.

3.1.5 Plumbing Fixtures

Install sinks, sink hardware, and other plumbing fixtures in locations as indicated on the drawings and in accordance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 06 61 16

SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D570	(1998; E 2010; R 2010) Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics
ASTM D638	(2014) Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics
ASTM D696	(2016) Standard Test Method for Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion of Plastics Between -30 degrees C and 30 degrees C With a Vitreous Silica Dilatometer
ASTM D2583	(2013a) Indentation Hardness of Rigid Plastics by Means of a Barcol Impressor
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM G21	(2015) Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers
--------------------	--

CSA GROUP (CSA)

CSA B45.5-11/IAPMO Z124	(2011; Update 1 2012) Plastic Plumbing Fixtures - First Edition
-------------------------	---

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA LD 3	(2005) Standard for High-Pressure Decorative Laminates
----------------	--

NSF INTERNATIONAL (NSF)

NSF/ANSI 51 (2012) Food Equipment Materials

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

TILE COUNCIL OF NORTH AMERICA (TCNA)

TCNA Hdbk (2017) Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and
Stone Tile Installation

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- a. Work under this section includes countertops utilizing solid polymer (solid surfacing) fabrication as shown on the drawings and as described in this specification. Do not change source of supply for materials after work has started, if the appearance of finished work would be affected.
- b. In most instances, installation of solid polymer fabricated components and assemblies will require strong, correctly located structural support provided by other trades. To provide a stable, sound, secure installation, close coordination is required between the solid polymer fabricator/installer and other trades to ensure that necessary structural wall support, cabinet counter top structural support, proper clearances, and other supporting components are provided for the installation of wall panels, countertops, shelving, and all other solid polymer fabrications to the degree and extent recommended by the solid polymer manufacturer.
- c. Appropriate staging areas for solid polymer fabrications. Allow variation in component size and location of openings of plus or minus 1/8 inch.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings

Installation

SD-03 Product Data

Solid Polymer Material

Qualifications

Fabrications

Indoor air quality for solid surface seam and sealant products; S

SD-04 Samples

Material; G

Counter and Vanity Tops; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Solid Polymer Material

SD-07 Certificates

Fabrications

Qualifications

Indoor Air Quality for solid surface fabrication products; S

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Clean-up

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Indoor Air Quality

Submit required indoor air quality certifications and validations in one submittal package.

1.4.1.1 Indoor Air Quality for Solid Surface Fabricated Products

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by **UL 2818** (Greenguard) Gold, **SCS** Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Qualifications

To ensure warranty coverage, solid polymer fabricators must be certified to fabricate by the solid polymer material manufacturer being utilized. Mark all fabrications with the fabricator's certification label affixed in an inconspicuous location. Fabricators must have a minimum of 5 years of experience working with solid polymer materials. Submit solid polymer manufacturer's certification attesting to fabricator qualification approval.

1.5.2 Mock-ups

Submit [Detail Drawings](#) indicating locations, dimensions, component sizes, fabrication and joint details, attachment provisions, installation details, and coordination requirements with adjacent work. Prior to final approval of shop drawings, provide a full-size mock-up of a typical countertop where multiple units are required. The mock-up must include all solid polymer components required to provide a completed unit and utilize finishes in patterns and colors indicated on the drawings. Should the mock-up not be approved, re-work or remake it until approval is secured. Remove rejected units from the jobsite. Approved mock-up may remain as part of the finished work.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Do not deliver materials to project site until areas are ready for installation. Deliver components and materials to the site undamaged, in containers clearly marked and labeled with manufacturer's name. Store materials indoors with adequate precautions taken to prevent damage to finished surfaces. Provide protective coverings to prevent physical damage or staining following installation, for duration of project.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide manufacturer's warranty of ten years against defects in materials, excluding damages caused by physical or chemical abuse or excessive heat. Provide warranty for material and labor for replacement or repair of defective material for a period of ten years after component installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIAL

Provide [solid polymer material](#) that is a homogeneous filled solid polymer; not coated, laminated or of a composite construction; meeting [CSA B45.5-11/IAPMO Z124](#) requirements. Provide materials with the minimum physical and performance properties specified. Superficial damage to a depth of [0.01 inch](#) must be repairable by sanding or polishing. Provide material thickness as indicated on the drawings. Provide material not less than [1/2 inch](#) in thickness. Submit a minimum [4 by 4 inch](#) sample of each color and pattern for approval. Provide samples that indicate the full range of color and pattern variation. Retain approved samples as the standard for this work throughout the construction duration. Submit test report results from an independent testing laboratory attesting that the submitted solid polymer material meets or exceeds each of the specified performance requirements. Provide materials that meet the emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type).

Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for solid surface fabrication products](#).

2.1.1 Cast, 100 Percent Acrylic Polymer Solid Surfacing Material

Provide cast, 100 percent acrylic solid polymer material composed of acrylic polymer, mineral fillers, and pigments and meeting the following minimum performance requirements:

PROPERTY	REQUIREMENT (min. or max.)	TEST PROCEDURE
Tensile Strength	4000 psi (max.)	ASTM D638
Hardness	55-Barcol Impressor (min.)	ASTM D2583
Thermal Expansion	.000023 in/in/F (max.)	ASTM D696
Boiling Water Surface Resistance	No Change	ANSI/NEMA LD 3-3.05
High Temperature Resistance	No Change	ANSI/NEMA LD 3-3.06
Impact Resistance (Ball drop)		ANSI/NEMA LD 3-303
1/4 inch sheet	36 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
1/2 inch sheet	140 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
3/4 inch sheet	200 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
Mold & Mildew Growth	No growth	ASTM G21
Bacteria Growth	No growth	ASTM G21
Liquid Absorption (Weight in 24 hrs.)	0.1 percent max.	ASTM D570
Flammability		ASTM E84
Flame Spread	25 max.	
Smoke Developed	30 max.	
Sanitation	"Food Contact" approval	NSF/ANSI 51

2.1.2 Acrylic-modified Polymer Solid Surfacing Material

Provide cast, solid polymer material composed of a formulation containing acrylic and polyester polymers, mineral fillers, and pigments. Provide acrylic polymer content not less than 5 percent and not more than 10 percent to meet the following minimum performance requirements:

PROPERTY	REQUIREMENT (min. or max.)	TEST PROCEDURE
Tensile Strength	4100 psi (max.)	ASTM D638

PROPERTY	REQUIREMENT (min. or max.)	TEST PROCEDURE
Hardness	50-Barcol Impressor (min.)	ASTM D2583
Thermal Expansion	.000023 in/in/F (max.)	ASTM D696
Boiling Water Surface Resistance	No Change	ANSI/NEMA LD 3-3.05
High Temperature Resistance	No Change	ANSI/NEMA LD 3-3.06
Impact Resistance (Ball drop)		ANSI/NEMA LD 3-303
1/4 inch sheet	36 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
1/2 inch sheet	140 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
3/4 inch sheet	200 inches, 1/2 lb ball, no failure	
Mold & Mildew Growth	No growth	ASTM G21
Bacteria Growth	No growth	ASTM G21
Liquid Absorption (Weight in 24 hrs.)	0.6 percent max.	ASTM D570
Flammability		ASTM E84
Flame Spread	25 max.	
Smoke Developed	100 max.	
Sanitation	"Food Contact" approval	NSF/ANSI 51

2.1.3 Material Patterns and Colors

Provide patterns and colors for all solid polymer components and fabrications indicated on the project drawings. Pattern and color must be consistent in appearance, throughout the entire depth (thickness) of the solid polymer material.

2.1.4 Surface Finish

Provide exposed finished surfaces and edges with a uniform appearance. Exposed surface finish must be as indicated on the drawings.

2.2 ACCESSORY PRODUCTS

Provide accessory products, as specified below, manufactured by the solid polymer manufacturer or products approved by the solid polymer manufacturer for use with the solid polymer materials being specified.

2.2.1 Seam Adhesive

Provide a two-part adhesive kit to create permanent, inconspicuous, non-porous, hard seams and joints by chemical bond between solid polymer materials and components to create a monolithic appearance of the fabrication. Adhesive must be approved by the solid polymer manufacturer and color-matched to the surfaces being bonded where solid-colored, solid polymer materials are being bonded together. Provide clear or color matched seam adhesive where particulate patterned, solid polymer materials are being bonded together.

2.2.2 Panel Adhesive

Provide neoprene-based panel adhesive meeting [TCNA Hdbk](#), Underwriter's Laboratories (UL) listed. Use this adhesive to bond solid polymer components to adjacent and underlying substrates.

2.2.3 Silicone Sealant

Provide a mildew-resistant, FDA and OSHA Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) listed silicone sealant or caulk in a clear formulation. The silicone sealant must be approved for use by the solid polymer manufacturer. Use sealant to seal all expansion joints between solid polymer components and all joints between solid polymer components and other adjacent surfaces such as walls, floors, ceiling, and plumbing fixtures.

2.2.4 Seam and Sealant Emissions

Provide seam and other accessory materials that meet the emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type).

Provide validation of [indoor air quality for solid surface seam and sealant products](#).

2.2.5 Mounting Hardware

Provide mounting hardware, including sink/bowl clips, inserts and fasteners for attachment of undermount sinks and lavatories.

2.3 [FABRICATIONS](#)

Provide factory or shop fabricated components to sizes and shapes indicated, to the greatest extent practical, in accordance with approved Shop Drawings and manufacturer's requirements. Provide factory cutouts for sinks, lavatories, and plumbing fixtures where indicated on the drawings. Contours and radii must be routed to template, with edges smooth. Defective and inaccurate work will be rejected. Submit product data indicating product description, fabrication information, and compliance with specified performance requirements for solid polymer, joint adhesive, sealants, and heat reflective tape.

2.3.1 Joints and Seams

Form joints and seams between solid polymer components using manufacturer's approved seam adhesive. Provide inconspicuous joints in appearance and without voids to create a monolithic appearance.

2.3.2 Edge Finishing

Rout and finish component edges to a smooth, uniform appearance and finish. Provide edge shapes and treatments, including any inserts, as detailed on the drawings. Rout all cutouts, then sand all edges smooth. Repair or reject defective or inaccurate work.

2.3.3 Counter and Vanity Top Splashes

Fabricate backsplashes and end splashes from 1/2 inch thick solid surfacing material to be 4 inches high in conformance with dimensions and shapes as indicated on the drawings. Provide backsplashes and end splashes for all counter tops and vanity tops. Provide shop fabricated loose, to be field attached backsplashes.

2.3.3.1 End Splashes

Provide end splashes as loose for installation at the jobsite after horizontal surfaces to which they are to be attached have been installed.

2.3.4 Window Stools

Fabricate window stools from 1/2 inch thick solid surfacing, solid polymer material, including dimensions, edge shape, and other details as indicated on the drawings.

2.3.5 Counter and Vanity Tops

Fabricate all solid surfacing, solid polymer counter top and vanity top components from 1/2 inch thick material including details, dimensions, locations, and quantities as indicated on the Drawings. Provide complete counter tops with 4 inch high loose backsplash and loose endsplashes at all locations. Attach 2 inch wide reinforcing strip of polymer material under each horizontal counter top seam. Submit a minimum 1 foot wide by 6 inch deep, full size sample for each type of counter top shown on the project drawings. The sample must include the edge profile and backsplash as detailed on the project drawings. Provide solid polymer material of a pattern and color as indicated on the drawings. Provide sample that includes at least one seam and retain approved sample as standard for this work.

2.3.5.1 Counter Top With Sink

- a. Stainless Steel Sink. Provide countertops with sinks that include cutouts to template as furnished by the sink manufacturer. Provide manufacturer's standard sink mounting hardware for stainless steel installation as indicated on drawings. Seal seam between sink and counter top shall be sealed with silicone sealant. Install sink, faucet, and plumbing requirements in accordance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

2.3.5.2 Vanity Tops With Bowls

- a. Provide countertops with stainless steel bowls including cutouts to template as furnished by the sink manufacturer. Provide manufacturer's standard sink mounting hardware for stainless steel installation. Seal seam between sink and countertop with silicone sealant. Install sink, faucet, and plumbing requirements in accordance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

2.3.6 Solid Polymer Sinks

Provide polymer sinks that are a standard product of the solid polymer manufacturer, designed specifically to be installed in solid polymer countertops. Provide sinks with the same polymer composition as the adjoining counter top. Provide sink design that supports a seam adhesive flush installation method. Provide sink with a single bowl configuration. Provide sink dimension as indicated on the drawings.

2.3.7 Solid Polymer Vanity Bowls

Provide solid polymer vanity bowls that are a standard product of the solid polymer manufacturer, designed specifically to be installed in solid polymer vanity tops. Provide bowls of the same polymer composition as the adjoining counter top. Provide a bowl design that supports a seam adhesive flush installation method. Provide bowl dimension as indicated on the drawings.

2.3.8 Toilet Partition System

Provide floor mounted, solid polymer toilet system in locations as shown on the drawings. Panels and pilasters must be fabricated from manufacturer's standard 1/2 inch thick sheet product. Provide all necessary hardware for installation and mounting of the overall system, panels, pilasters, and doors.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Components

Do not install items that show visual evidence of biological growth. Install all components and fabricated units plumb, level, and rigid. Make field joints between solid polymer components using solid polymer manufacturer's approved seam adhesives, to provide a monolithic appearance with joints inconspicuous in the finished work. Attach metal or vitreous china sinks and lavatory bowls to counter tops using solid polymer manufacturer's recommended clear silicone sealant and mounting hardware. Install all solid polymer sinks and bowls using a color-matched seam adhesive. Install all plumbing connections to sinks and lavatories in accordance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

3.1.1.1 Loose Counter Top Splashes

Mount loose splashes in the locations noted on the drawings. Adhere loose splashes to the counter top with a color matched silicone sealant when the solid polymer components are solid colors. Use a clear silicone sealant to provide adhesion of particulate patterned solid polymer splashes to counter tops.

3.1.1.2 Wall Panels & Panel Systems

Use a neoprene-based panel adhesive for installation of wall panels and system components to substrates. Use seam adhesive to adhere all solid polymer components to each other with the exception of expansion joints and inside corners. Use a silicone sealant to join all inside corners and expansion joints between solid polymer components. Seal all joints between solid polymer components and non-solid polymer surfaces with a clear silicone sealant.

3.1.2 Silicone Sealant

Use a clear, silicone sealant or caulk to seal all expansion joints between solid polymer components and all joints between solid polymer components and other adjacent surfaces such as walls, floors, ceiling, and plumbing fixtures. Sealant bead must be smooth and uniform in appearance and use the minimum size necessary to bridge any gaps between the solid surfacing material and the adjacent surface. Install continuous bead that runs the entire length of the joint being sealed.

3.1.3 Plumbing

Make plumbing connections to sinks and lavatories in accordance with Section 22 00 00 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

3.2 CLEAN-UP

Clean all components after installation and cover to protect against damage during completion of the remaining project items. Components damaged after installation by other trades will be repaired or replaced at the General Contractor's cost. Component supplier will provide a repair/replace cost estimate to the General Contractor who must approve estimate before repairs are made. Submit a minimum of six copies of maintenance data indicating manufacturer's care, repair and cleaning instructions. Provide maintenance video if available. Submit maintenance kit for matte finishes.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 05 23

PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Employ an independent agency to conduct the pressure test on the building envelope in accordance with this specification section and [ASTM E779](#).

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING (ASNT)

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| ANSI/ASNT CP-189 | (2016) ASNT Standard for Qualification and Certification of Nondestructive Testing Personnel (ANSI/ASNT CP-105-2006) |
| ASNT CP-105 | (2011) ASNT Standard Topical Outlines for Qualification of Nondestructive Testing Personnel - Item No. 2821 |
| ASNT SNT-TC-1A | (2016) Recommended Practice for Personnel Qualification and Certification in Nondestructive Testing |

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| ASTM E779 | (2019) Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization |
| ASTM E1186 | (2017) Standard Practices for Air Leakage Site Detection in Building Envelopes and Air Barrier Systems |
| ASTM E1258 | (1988; R 2018) Standard Test Method for Airflow Calibration of Fan Pressurization Devices |
| ASTM E1827 | (2011; R 2017) Standard Test Methods for Determining Airtightness of Buildings Using an Orifice Blower Door |

INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR STANDARDIZATION (ISO)

- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| ISO 6781 | (1983) Thermal Insulation - Qualitative Detection of Thermal Irregularities in Building Envelopes - Infrared Method |
| ISO 6781-2 | (2010) Performance of Buildings - |

Detection of Heat, Air, and Moisture
Irregularities in Buildings by Infrared
Methods - Part2: Equipment Requirements

ISO 6781-3

(2015) Performance of Buildings -
Detection of Heat, Air, and Moisture
Irregularities in Buildings by Infrared
Methods - Part 3: Qualifications of
Equipment Operators, Data Analysts, and
Report Writers

1.3 DEFINITIONS

The following terms as they apply to this section:

1.3.1 Air Barrier Envelope

The surface that separates the inside air from the outside air. The combination of air barrier assemblies and air barrier components, connected by air barrier accessories are designed to provide a continuous barrier to the movement of air through an environmental separator. A single building may have more than one air barrier envelope. The air barrier surface includes the top, bottom, and sides of the envelope. The term "air barrier envelope" is also known as "air barrier system" or simply "air barrier".

1.3.2 Air Leakage Rate

How leaky, or conversely how air tight a building envelope is. The air leakage is normally described in terms of air flow rate for the surface area of the envelope at a defined differential pressure.

1.3.3 Bias Pressure

Also known as zero flow pressure, baseline pressure, offset pressure or background pressure. With the envelope not artificially pressurized, bias is the differential pressure that always exists between the envelope that has been prepared (sealed) for the pressure test and the outdoors. Bias pressure is made up of two components, fixed static offset (usually due to stack effect or the HVAC system) and fluctuating pressure (usually due to wind or a moving elevator). Because of pressure fluctuations many bias pressure readings are recorded and averaged for use in the calculations.

1.3.4 Blower Door

Commonly used term for an apparatus used to pressurize and depressurize the space within the building envelope and quantify air leakage through the envelope. The blower door typically includes a door fan and an air resistant fabric or a series of hard panels that extends to cover and seal the door opening between the fan shroud and door frame. The door fan is a calibrated fan capable of measuring air flow and is usually placed in the opening of an exterior door. With the air barrier otherwise sealed, air produced by the door fan pressurizes or de-pressurizes the envelope, depending on the fan's orientation.

1.3.5 Environmental Separator

The parts of a building that separate the controlled interior environment from the uncontrolled exterior environment, or that separate spaces within

a building that have dissimilar environments. The term "environmental separator" is also known as the "control layer".

1.3.6 Pressure Test

A generic term for a test in which the envelope is either pressurized or de-pressurized with respect to the outdoors.

1.3.6.1 Negative Pressure Test (Depressurization Test)

A test wherein air inside the envelope is drawn to the outdoors. This places the envelope at a lower (negative) pressure with respect to the outdoors.

1.3.6.2 Positive Pressure Test (Pressurization Test)

A test wherein outdoor air is pushed into the envelope. This air movement places the envelope at a higher (positive) pressure with respect to the outdoors.

1.4 WORK PLAN

Submit the following not later than 90 calendar days after contract award, but before start of pressure testing work, steps to be taken by the lead pressure test technician to accomplish the required testing.

a. Memorandum of test procedure.

(1) Proposed dates for conducting the pressure, thermographic and fog tests.

(2) Submit detailed pressure test procedures prior to the test.
Provide a plan view showing proposed locations (personnel doors or other similar openings) to install blower doors or flexible ducts (for trailer-mounted fans), if used.

b. Test equipment to be used.

c. Scaffolding, scissor lifts, power, electrical extension cords, duct tape, plastic sheeting and other Contractor's support equipment required to perform all tests.

d. Other Contractor's support personnel who will be on site for testing.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Work Plan; G

SD-03 Product Data

Thermal Imaging Camera; G

SD-07 Certificates

Pressure Test Agency

Thermographer Qualifications

Test Instruments

Date Of Last Calibration

SD-06 Test Reports

Pressure Test Procedures; G, S

Air Leakage Test Report; G, S

Diagnostic Test Report; G, S

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Modification of References

Perform all pressure and diagnostic tests according to the referenced publications listed in paragraph REFERENCES and as modified by this section. Consider the advisory or recommended provisions, of the referred references, as mandatory.

1.6.2 Qualifications

1.6.2.1 Pressure Test Agency

Submit, no later than 15 calendar days after contract award, information certifying that the pressure test agency is not affiliated with any other company participating in work on this contract. The work of the test agency is limited to pressure testing the building envelope, performing a thermography test and fog test, and investigating, through various methods, the location of air leaks through the air barrier. See paragraph PRESSURE TEST AGENCY for additional requirements. For thermographer qualifications, see paragraph THERMOGRAPHER QUALIFICATIONS.

Use the sample TEST AGENCY QUALIFICATIONS SHEET form (Appendix C), to submit the following information.

- a. Verification of 2 years of experience as an agency in pressure testing commercial and/or industrial buildings.
- b. List of at least ten commercial/industrial facilities with building envelopes that the agency has tested within the past 2 years. Include building name, address, and name of prime construction contractor and contractor's point-of-contact information.
- c. Confirmation of 2 years of commercial and or industrial building pressure test experience for the lead pressure test technician and the thermographer in using the specified **ASTM E779** testing standard. References from five Contracting Officers for facilities where the lead test technician has supervised commercial and or industrial

building pressure tests in the last 2 years.

- d. Verification that the lead pressure test technician has been employed by a building pressure testing agency in the capacity of a lead pressure test technician for not less than 1 year.

1.6.2.2 Thermographer Qualifications

To perform an infrared diagnostic evaluation, use a lead thermographer who has at least an active Level II Certification that is based on the requirements in [ASNT CP-105](#) or [ANSI/ASNT CP-189](#) and is in accordance with [ASNT SNT-TC-1A](#). The course of study is to be specifically focused on infrared thermography for building science. The thermographer must have at least two years of building science thermography experience in IR testing commercial or industrial buildings. The thermographer must also have experience in building envelopes and building science in order to make effective recommendations to the contractor should the envelope require additional sealing. Thermographic equipment operators, data analysts and report writers must comply with the requirements of [ISO 6781-3](#). Submit the thermographer's certificate for approval. Submit a list of at least ten commercial/industrial buildings on which the thermographer has performed IR thermography in the past two years. The thermographer is to have a current active certification. Submit certification at least 60 days prior to thermography testing.

1.6.3 Test Instruments and Date of Last Calibration

Submit a signed and dated list of test instruments, their application, manufacturer, model, serial number, range of operation, accuracy and date of most recent calibration. Calibration data applicable to fan systems must be in accordance with [ASTM E1258](#).

1.6.4 Test Reports

No later than 14 days after completion of the pressure test, submit electronic copies of an organized report and six bound paper copies in a durable 3-ring binder. The report is to contain a table of contents, an executive summary, an introduction, a results section and a discussion of the results. Submit the [air leakage test report](#) as described in paragraph AIR LEAKAGE TEST REPORT. Submit a [diagnostic test report](#) as described in paragraph LOCATING LEAKS BY DIAGNOSTIC TESTING. The diagnostic test report is to include the Thermographic Investigation Report and the Fog Test Report (if performed).

Submit field data and completed report forms found in the appendices. Use the sample forms, Test Agency Qualification Sheet, Air Leakage Test Form and Air Leakage Test Results Form to summarize the tests for the appropriate building envelope. Submit both electronically populated and field hand filled-in forms.

Report Data. Include in the report the following information for all tests:

- a. Date of issue
- b. Project title and number
- c. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency

- d. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections
- e. Names of individuals making the inspection or test
- f. Designation of the work and test method
- g. Identification of product and specification section
- h. Complete inspection or test data
- i. Test results and an interpretation of test results
- j. Comments or professional opinion on whether inspected or tested work complies with contract document requirements
- k. Recommendations on retesting

1.7 CLIMATE CONDITIONS SUITABLE FOR A PRESSURE TEST

As the test date approaches, monitor the weather forecast for the test site. Avoid testing on days forecast to experience high winds, rain, or snow. Monitor weather forecasts prior to shipping pressure test equipment to the site. Based on current and forecast weather conditions, the Contracting Officer's representative is to grant final approval for testing to occur.

1.7.1 Rain

For safety reasons, avoid testing during rain or if rain is anticipated during testing. If pneumatic hoses are installed and exposed to rain inspect the hose to insure rainwater has not migrated into the hose ends. Orient all exposed hose ends to keep them out of water puddles. Success in temporarily sealing outdoor ventilation components such as louvers and exhaust fans may also be compromised by rain. Don't seal roof-mounted ventilation components during times of potential lightning.

1.7.2 Wind

Because wind can skew pressure test results, test only on days and at times when winds are anticipated to be the calmest. Avoid pressure testing during gusty or high wind conditions. Avoid installing test fans on the windward side of the building if wind gusts during the test are anticipated to be greater than 10 miles per hour.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESSURE TEST EQUIPMENT

Depending on site conditions and size of the envelope, the test may be conducted using blower door equipment and/or trailer-mounted fans. The testing agency is to supply sufficient quantity of blower equipment that will produce a minimum of 75 Pa differential pressure between the envelope and outdoors using the test methods described herein. Supplying additional blower test equipment to provide additional airflow capacity or to act as a backup is highly recommended.

2.1.1 Blower Door Fans and Trailer Mounted Fans

Each air flow measuring system including blower door fans and trailer

mounted fans are to be calibrated within the last 5 years. Calibrated blower door fans and trailer mounted fans must measure accurately to within plus or minus 5 percent of the flow reading. Blower door equipment and trailer mounted fans are to be specifically designed to pressurize building envelopes. Each set of blower door equipment is to include fan(s), digital gage(s), door frame, door fabric or hard panels.

2.1.2 Digital Gages as Test Instruments

Use only digital gages as measuring instruments in the pressure test; analog gages are not acceptable. The gauges must be accurate to within 1.0 percent of the pressure reading or 0.15 Pa, whichever is greater. Each gage is to have been calibrated within two years of the test. The calibration is to be checked against a National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST, formerly National Bureau of Standards) traceable standard.

2.2 THERMAL IMAGING CAMERA REQUIREMENTS

The thermal imaging camera used in the thermography test must have a thermal sensitivity (Noise Equivalent Temperature Difference.) of +/- 0.18 degrees F at 86 degrees F or less. Ensure the camera's operating spectral range falls between 2 and 15 micrometers. Ensure the camera's IR image viewing screen resolution measures at least 320x240 pixels. Ensure the camera has a means of recording thermal images seen on the camera viewing screen. The camera is to display output as individual still frame images that also can be downloaded and inserted into an electronic Thermographic Investigation Report. All thermographic equipment must comply with the requirements of ISO 6781-2. Submit camera make and model, and catalog information that defines the camera thermal sensitivity for approval.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PRESSURE TEST AGENCY

The test agency is to be an independent third party subcontractor, not an affiliated or subsidiary of the prime contractor, subcontractors or A/E firm. The agency is to be regularly engaged in pressure testing of commercial/industrial building envelopes. If using blower door or trailer-mounted fans, the lead test technician must have at least two years of experience in using such equipment in building envelope pressurization tests. Formal training using pressure test equipment is highly recommended. Submit the name, address and floor areas of each of these five buildings for approval.

3.1.1 Field Work

The lead pressure test technician and thermographer are to be present at the project site while testing is performed and is to be responsible for conducting, supervising, and managing of their respective test work. Management includes health and safety of test agency employees.

3.1.2 Reporting Work

The lead pressure test technician is to prepare, sign, and date the test agenda, equipment list, and submit a certified Air Leakage Test Report. The thermographer is to prepare, sign, and date the test agenda, equipment list, and submit a certified Thermographic Investigation Report. The contractor is to prepare a final report that identifies improvements that

were made to the envelope to reduce air leaks, mitigate thermal bridging, eliminate moisture migration, and repair insulation voids discovered during diagnostic tests. Jointly submit all reports.

3.2 ENVELOPE SURFACE AREA CALCULATION

The architectural air barrier boundary includes the floor, walls, and ceiling. After construction of the air barrier envelope is complete, field measure the envelope to ensure the physical measurements match the design drawings and the air barrier envelope surface area calculations are generated. If the calculation result is not within 10 percent of the defined air barrier boundary calculation result as indicated, submit the envelope surface area calculation and results for review.

3.3 PREPARING THE BUILDING ENVELOPE FOR THE PRESSURE TEST

3.3.1 Testing During Construction

The pressure test cannot be conducted until all components of the air barrier system have been installed. After all sealing as described herein has been completed, inspect the envelope to ensure it has been adequately prepared. During the pressure test, stop all ongoing construction within and neighboring the envelope which may impact the test or the air barrier integrity. The pressure test may be conducted before finishes that are not part of the air barrier envelope have been installed. For example, if suspended ceiling tile, interior gypsum board or cladding systems are not part of the air barrier the test can be conducted before they are installed. Recommend testing prior to installing the finished ceilings within the envelope and immediately surrounding it. The absence of finished ceilings allows for inspection and diagnostic testing of the roof/wall interface and for implementation of repairs to the air barrier, if necessary to comply with the maximum allowed leakage.

3.3.2 Sealing the Air Barrier Envelope

Seal all penetrations through the air barrier. Unavoidable penetrations due to electrical boxes or conduit, plumbing, and other assemblies that are not air tight are to be made so by sealing the assembly and the interface between the assembly and the air barrier or by extending the air barrier over the assembly. Support the air barrier so as to withstand the maximum positive and negative air pressure to be placed on the building without displacement or damage, and transfer the load to the structure. Durably construct the air barrier to last the anticipated service life of the assembly and to withstand the maximum positive and negative pressures placed on it during pressure testing. Do not install lighting fixtures that are equipped with ventilation holes through the air barrier.

3.3.3 Sealing Plumbing

Prime all plumbing traps located within the envelope full of water.

3.3.4 Close and Lock Doors

Close and lock all doors and windows in the envelope perimeter. For doors not equipped with latching hardware, temporarily secure them in the closed position. Secure the doors in such a way that they remain fully closed even when the maximum anticipated differential air pressure produced during the test acts on them.

3.3.5 Hold Excluded Building Areas at the Outdoor Pressure Level

Keep building areas immediately surrounding but excluded from the test envelope at the outdoor pressure level during the pressure test. Maintain these areas at the outdoor pressure level by propping exterior doors open, opening windows and de-energizing all air moving devices in or serving these areas.

3.3.6 Maintain an Even Pressure within the Envelope

Ensure the pressure differences within the envelope are minimized by opening all internal air pathways including propping open all interior doors. Distribute test fans throughout the envelope as necessary to ensure the internal pressures are uniform (within 10 percent of the average differential pressure). Ideally, do not install suspended ceilings until after all pressure tests have been completed. If, however the envelope includes finished suspended ceiling spaces, temporarily remove approximately 5 percent of all ceiling tiles or a minimum of 1 tile from each isolated suspended ceiling space, whichever comprises the greatest surface area. Temporarily remove additional ceiling tiles during testing to allow for inspection and diagnostic testing of the ceiling/wall interface. An alternative to removing ceiling tiles is to measure the differential pressure between each isolated suspended ceiling space and the outdoors when the area below the suspended ceiling is maintained at a differential pressure of 75 Pa with respect to the outdoors. If the suspended ceiling differential pressure measurement is within ten percent of the 75 Pa pressure below the suspended ceiling no ceiling tiles need to be removed.

3.3.7 Maintain Access to Mechanical and Electrical Rooms

Maintain access to mechanical rooms and electrical rooms associated with the envelope to allow for de-energizing ventilation equipment and resetting circuit breakers tripped by blower door equipment, if used.

3.3.8 Minimize Potential for Blowing Dust and Debris

Because high velocity air will be blown into and out of the envelope during the test, debris, including dust and litter, may become airborne. Airborne debris may become trapped or entangled in test equipment, thereby skewing test results. Ensure areas within and surrounding the envelope are free of dust, litter and construction materials that are easily airborne. If pressurizing existing, occupied areas, provide adequate notice to building occupants of blowing dust and debris, and general disruption of normal activities during the test.

3.3.9 De-energize Air Moving Devices

De-energize all air moving devices serving the envelope to keep air within the envelope as still as reasonably achievable. De-energize all fans that deliver air to, exhaust air from, or recirculate air within the envelope. Also de-energize all fans serving areas adjacent to but excluded from the envelope.

3.3.10 Installing Blower Door Equipment in a Door Opening

Where blower door fans are used, before installing blower door equipment, select a door opening that does not restrict air flow into and out of the envelope and has at least 5 feet clear distance in front of and behind the

door opening. Disconnect the door actuator and secure the door open to prevent it from being drawn into the fan by fan pressure. Avoid installing blower door equipment on the windward side of the building.

3.4 BUILDING ENVELOPE AIR TIGHTNESS REQUIREMENT

For each building envelope, perform the Architectural Only test and if noted below, the Architectural Plus HVAC System test. The purpose of the pressure (air leakage) test is to determine final compliance with the airtightness requirement by demonstrating the performance of the continuous air barrier. An effective air barrier envelope minimizes infiltration and exfiltration through unintended air paths (leaks). The tests may be performed in any desired order.

3.4.1 Architectural Only Test

The test envelope is the architectural air barrier boundary as defined on the contract drawings. This boundary includes connecting walls, roof and floor which comprise a complete, whole, and continuous three dimensional envelope. Perform both a positive pressure test and a negative pressure test on this envelope, unless otherwise directed.

3.4.1.1 Test Goal

Input data from the test into the Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization spreadsheet as described in paragraph CALCULATION PROGRAM via the Air Leakage Test Form. Compare output from the spreadsheet against the maximum allowable leakage defined in Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM. The envelope passes the test if the leakage rate, as calculated using the spreadsheet, is equal to or lower than the Architectural Only leakage rate goal.

3.4.1.2 Preparing the Envelope for the Pressure Test - Seal All Openings through the Air Barrier

Temporarily close all perimeter windows, roof hatches and doors in the envelope perimeter except for those doors that are to remain open to accommodate blower door or trailer mounted fan test equipment installation. Seal, or isolate all other intentional openings, pathways and fenestrations through the architectural envelope prior to pressure testing. Follow the Recommended Test Envelope Conditions identified in ASTM E1827, Table 1, for the Closed Envelope condition. These openings may include boiler flues, fuel-burning water heater flues, fuel-burning kitchen equipment, clothes dryer vents, fireplaces, wall or ceiling grilles, diffusers etc. Before sealing flues, close their associated fuel valves and verify the associated pilot lights are extinguished. Prime all plumbing traps located within the envelope full of water. In lieu of applying tape and/or plastic, typical temporary sealing materials include tape and sheet plastic or a self-adhesive grille wrap. Use and apply tape and plastic in a manner that does not deface or remove paint or mar the finish of permanent surfaces. Be especially aware of residue that remains from tape applied to stainless steel surfaces such as kitchen hoods or rollup doors. For painted surfaces, use tape types that do not remove finish paint when the tape is removed. If paint is removed from the finished surface, repaint to match existing surfaces. Secure dampers closed either manually or by using the building's HVAC system controls. Use the table below for further guidance in building preparation.

Building Component	Envelope Condition
Air handling units, duct fans	As found (open) or temporarily sealed as necessary
Clothes dryer	Off
Clothes dryer vents	Temporarily sealed
Dampers - intake, exhaust	Physically closed or closed using control power or temporarily sealed
Diffusers, registers, grilles within the envelope	Temporarily sealed
Doors, personnel type, at the envelope perimeter	Secured closed
Doors, personnel type, within the envelope	Secured (propped) open
Doors, roll-up type, at the envelope perimeter	Closed (no additional sealing)
Exhaust hoods	Closed* and temporarily sealed
Fireplace hearth	Temporarily sealed *
Kitchen hoods	Temporarily sealed *
Pilot light and associated fuel valve	Extinguished and closed, respectively
Vented combustion appliance	Temporarily sealed *
Vented combustion appliance exhaust flue	Off
Windows	Secured closed
* If the building component has an associated manual or automatic damper, consider securing the damper closed in lieu of temporarily sealing.	

3.4.2 Architectural Plus HVAC System Test

This test envelope includes the architectural air barrier boundary as defined on the contract drawings plus all HVAC supply, return and exhaust systems that penetrate and terminate within said architectural air barrier boundary and that extends outward from said boundary. All associated ductwork, intake and exhaust dampers, and air moving devices, including air handling units and fans, are included in this test envelope even if they are physically located outside of the architectural air barrier boundary. The boundary extends to and includes the low leakage intake and exhaust dampers. Perform both a positive pressure test and a negative pressure test on this envelope, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4.2.1 Test Goal

Data from the test is to be input into the Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization spreadsheet as described in paragraph CALCULATION PROGRAM via the Air Leakage Test Form. If both a positive and negative pressure tests were performed, both data sets are together to be input in the

spreadsheet. Compare output from the spreadsheet against the leakage rate goal. The envelope passes the test if the leakage rate, as calculated using the spreadsheet, is equal to or lower than the Architectural Plus HVAC System leakage rate goal.

3.4.2.2 Preparing the Building for the Pressure Test

In preparation of this test, de-energize all air moving devices within this envelope by putting their controls in the Unoccupied mode. This allows the building's HVAC controls to close all associated motorized intake, exhaust, and relief dampers. Make no other changes to the HVAC systems. Temporarily sealing diffusers, grilles, registers, kitchen hoods, exhaust hoods, fans, air handling units and all other HVAC system elements with tape and/or plastic sheeting or any other means is not allowed. If the envelope includes a fireplace hearth do not seal it with tape and plastic. Use the table below for further guidance in building preparation.

Building Component	Envelope Condition
Air handling units, duct fans	As found (open)
Clothes dryer	Off
Clothes dryer vents	As found (no preparation)
Dampers - intake, exhaust	As found (no preparation)
Diffusers, registers, grilles within the envelope	As found (open)
Doors, personnel type, at the envelope perimeter	Secured closed
Doors, personnel type, within the envelope	Secured (propped) open
Doors, roll-up type, at the envelope perimeter	Closed (no preparation)
Exhaust hoods	Closed
Fireplace hearth	As found (open)
Kitchen hoods	As found (open)
Pilot light and associated fuel valve	Extinguished and closed, respectively
Vented combustion appliance	Off
Vented combustion appliance exhaust flue	As found (open)
Windows	Secured closed

3.5 CONDUCTING THE PRESSURE TEST

Notify the Contracting Officer at least 10 working days before conducting the pressure tests to provide the Government the opportunity to witness

the tests and to monitor weather forecasts for conditions favorable for testing. Do not pressure test until verifying that the continuous air barrier is in place and installed without failures in accordance with installation instructions. During the pressure test periodically inspect temporarily sealed items to ensure they are still sealed. Seals on temporarily sealed items tend to release more readily at higher pressures. Test data obtained after temporarily sealed items become unsealed cannot be used as input into the calculation program. Follow the Envelope Pressure Test Procedures in the paragraphs below. Submit detailed [pressure test procedures](#) indicating the test apparatus, the test methods and procedures, and the analysis methods to be employed for the building envelope pressure (air tightness) test. Submit these procedures not later than 60 days after Notice to Proceed.

3.5.1 Extend Pneumatic Tubes and Establish a Reference Differential Pressure

Confirm the various zones within the envelope have a relatively uniform interior pressure distribution by establishing a representative differential pressure between the envelope and the outdoors with blower door or trailer-mounted fans operating. The number of indoor pressure difference measurements (pneumatic hoses) required depends on the number of interior zones separated by bottle necks that could create significant pressure drops (e.g. doorways and stairwells). Extend at least four pneumatic hoses (differential pressure monitoring ports) to locations within the envelope that are physically opposite of each other. In multiple story buildings, especially those over three stories, extend hoses to multiple floors. Locate the hose ends away from the effects of air discharge from blower test equipment. Select one of the four (or more) interior hoses, one judged by the test agency to be the most unaffected by air velocity produced by blower test equipment, to serve as the interior reference pressure port. Extend at least one additional pneumatic hose to the outdoors (outdoor pressure port). To the end of this hose manifold at least four hoses together and terminate each hose on a different side of the building. With the envelope sealed and the blowers energized, measure the differential pressure using the interior reference pressure port and the four outdoor pressure ports. Then measure and record the differential pressure by individually using each of the remaining three interior hoses. Ensure each reading is within plus or minus 10 percent of the reference reading. Thus at an average 75 Pa maximum pressure difference across the envelope, the difference between the highest and lowest interior pressure difference measurements should be 15 Pa or less. If this condition cannot be met, attempt to create additional air pathways within the envelope to minimize pressure differences within the envelope. If necessary, move the interior hose ends. See step 2.13 of the Air Leakage Test Form in Appendix A.

3.5.2 Bias Pressure Readings

With the fan pressurization equipment de-energized and the envelope sealed, obtain the differential pressure between the outdoors and the envelope. Record 12 bias pressure readings before the pressure test and 12 bias pressure readings after the pressure test. Each reading is the average of ten or more 1-second measurements. Include positive and negative signs for each reading. To help dampen bias pressures that significantly contribute to test pressure, reduce temperature differences between indoor and outdoor air. Temperature differences can be reduced by operating test fan equipment for a few minutes to replace most of the indoor air with outdoor air.

3.5.3 Testing in Both Positive and Negative Directions

The preferred method for testing a building envelope is to test in both the pressurized and depressurized directions. Testing in one direction is only allowed if opposite direction testing cannot logistically be performed due to test equipment limitations or restrictions. After obtaining the pre-test bias differential pressure readings, conduct the pressure test. Record the envelope pressures (in units of Pascals) from one interior pneumatic hose (monitoring port) and the outdoor pneumatic hose(s), averaged or manifolded, with corresponding flows (in units of cfm) for each fan. Record the flow rates at at least 10 to 12 positive and 10 to 12 negative building pressure readings. If conducting both positive and negative pressure tests the lowest allowable test pressure is 40 Pa and the highest test pressure is 85 Pa. Keep at least 25 Pa difference between the lowest and highest test pressure readings. Include the 75 Pa pressure value between the lowest and highest readings. The 10 to 12 readings in each direction are to be roughly evenly spaced along the range of pressures and flows. After testing is complete de-energize the equipment used to provide pressurization and obtain an additional 10 to 12 post-test bias pressure readings. None of the bias pressure readings are allowed to exceed 30 percent of the minimum test pressure. If these limits are exceeded the test fails and must be repeated.

3.5.4 Single Direction Testing

After obtaining the 12 aforementioned bias pressure readings, conduct the positive pressure test. Obtain flow rates at 10 to 12 roughly evenly spaced pressure readings over a pressure range of 50 to 85 Pa. After the data is recorded, de-energize the blower equipment and obtain an additional 10 to 12 bias pressure readings. None of the bias pressure readings may exceed 10 percent of the minimum test pressure. If these limits are exceeded the test fails.

3.5.5 Pressure Testing - Special Cases

3.5.5.1 Pressure Testing a Building Addition

If the existing building is occupied, coordinate the pressure test with building representatives. In preparation of the test, de-energize the air handling system serving that portion of the existing building that shares surfaces with the new building addition. Pressure testing a new building addition may also require pressurizing that part of the existing building that shares surfaces in common with the new building addition. If an air barrier is applied to the common surfaces separating the existing building from the new addition, prior to the test prop open a sufficient quantity of doors and/or windows to keep the existing building at the same pressure as the outdoors. If an air barrier is not applied to the common surfaces separating the existing building from the new addition, pressurize that part of the existing building that shares surfaces in common with the building addition to the same level as the addition using separate test pressurization equipment.

3.5.6 Failed Pressure Test

If the pressure test fails to meet the established criteria, use diagnostic test methods described in paragraph LOCATING LEAKS BY DIAGNOSTIC TESTING to discover the leak locations. Provide additional permanent sealing measures to reduce or eliminate leak sources discovered

during diagnostic testing. Retest (perform another pressure test) after sealing has been completed. Repeat this sequence of documenting test results in the test report, performing diagnostic tests, documenting recommendations for additional sealing measures in the test report, sealing leak locations per recommendations, and re-testing as necessary until the building envelope passes the pressure test and is in compliance with the performance requirements.

3.5.7 Air Leakage Test Report

Report volumetric flow rates and corresponding differential pressures in cubic feet per minute (cfm) and Pascals (Pa), respectively, on the Air Leakage Test Form sample form found in Appendix A. Populate the accompanying spreadsheet file entitled Pressure Test Data Analysis with information obtained during the test. The spreadsheet uses equations found in ASTM E779 as a basis for calculating the envelope leakage rate. Other similar leakage rate calculation programs cannot be used or submitted for review. Submit a printout of the data input and output in the report. Should any air tightness (pressure) test fail, the pressure test report is to include data and results from all previous failed tests along with the final successful test data and results. Indicate if the resulting leakage rate did or did not meet the goal leakage requirement. Identify and document deficiencies in the building construction upon failure of a test to meet the specified maximum leakage rate.

Include the Test Agency Qualification Sheet, Air Leakage Test Form and Air Leakage Test Results Form in the written report. Document every test set-up condition with diagrams and photos to ensure the tests can be made repeatable. Document all pneumatic hose termination locations. Record in detail how the building envelope was prepared for the tests. Also describe in detail which building items were temporarily sealed. Include photos of test equipment and sealing measures in the report. Include an electronic (pdf) version of all test reports on a CD. If the building envelope fails to meet the leakage rate goal, provide recommendations to further seal the envelope and document these recommendations in the test report.

3.6 LOCATING LEAKS BY DIAGNOSTIC TESTING

Use diagnostic test methods described herein to discover obvious leaks through the envelope. Perform diagnostic tests on the building envelope regardless of the envelope meeting or failing to meet the designated leakage rate goal. Use diagnostic test methods in accordance with ASTM E1186 and in conjunction with pressurization equipment as necessary. Use the thermography diagnostic test to establish a baseline for envelope leakage. Apply additional diagnostic tests (find, feel, fog or other tests) as necessary to further define leak locations and pathways discovered using thermography or to find additional leaks not readily detected by thermography. Using a variety of diagnostic tests may help locate leaks that would otherwise go undetected if only a single diagnostic test were used. Pay special attention to locating leaks at interfaces where there is a change in materials or a change in direction of like materials. These interfaces, at a minimum, include roof/wall, wall/wall, floor/wall, wall/window, wall/door, wall/louver, roof mounted equipment/roof curb interfaces and all utility penetrations (ducts, pipes, conduit, etc) through the envelope's architecture. Also use diagnostic tests to check for leakage between the air duct and duct damper, when the damper, under normal control power, is placed in the closed position. Should leaks be discovered during diagnostic tests, thoroughly document

their exact locations on a floor plan so that sealing can be later applied, if required or as directed. If the envelope passes the leakage test, use the diagnostic test procedure described above to identify obvious leakage locations. Seal the leaks at the discretion of the COR based on the magnitude, location, potential for liquid moisture penetration or retention, potential for condensation, presence of daylight through an architectural surface or if the leakage location could potentially cause rapid deterioration or mold growth of, or in the building envelope materials and assemblies. Apply sealing measures after diagnostic testing is complete and all pressurization blowers are off. To verify that the applied sealing measures that are effective, re-test for leaks using the same diagnostic methods that discovered the leak. Reseal and retest until the envelope meets the leakage rate goal and all obvious leaks through the envelope are sealed.

3.6.1 Find Test

Use visual observation to locate daylight and/or artificial light streaming from the opposite side of the envelope. Observe all interfaces identified above.

3.6.2 Feel Test

Use the building's air handling system or blower door equipment to negatively pressurize the building envelope, to at least 25 Pa but no greater than 85 Pa, with respect to the outdoors. The larger the pressure difference, the easier discovering leaks by feeling them becomes. While inside the envelope, hand feel roof/wall, wall/wall, and floor/wall interfaces and utility penetrations (ducts, pipes, conduit, etc) for leaks and note the leak locations on a floor plan. The "Feel" test may also be used to check for leaks between the ductwork and ductwork damper. To do this, positively pressurize the envelope and check for air movement from the envelope exterior.

3.6.3 Infrared Thermography Test

Avoid performing thermography tests just after pressure testing the building envelope (pressurizing and/or depressurizing the building envelope) as thermography readings may be inaccurate due to excessive air-wash. Perform thermography either before the pressure test or wait an appropriate amount of time after pressure test completion for the temperatures within the building envelope to stabilize before starting the thermography tests. Coordinate thermography examination with the pressure test agency and the test agency's pressurization equipment. The pressure test agency is to allow adequate time for the thermographer to perform a complete thermographic examination, as described hereinafter, of the envelope interior and exterior.

3.6.3.1 Thermography Test Methods

Before thermographic testing, remove furniture, construction equipment, and all other obstructions both inside and outside the building as necessary to gain a clear field of view. In the Thermographic Investigation Report, document all areas where obstructions remain. For exterior thermal examination of the envelope, verify that no direct solar radiation has heated the envelope surfaces to be examined for a period of approximately 3 hours for frame construction and for approximately 8 hours for masonry veneer construction. Conduct exterior investigations after sunset, before sunrise, or on an overcast day when the influence of solar

radiation can be determined to be minimal. Limit exterior examinations to times when the influence of solar radiation is minimal, such as after sunset or before sunrise or during an overcast day. Conduct thermal imaging tests only when wind speeds are less than 8 mph at the time of analysis and at the end of analysis. Document any variations in wind during the test. Document all variations of test conditions in the Thermographic Investigation Report. Test only when exterior surfaces are dry. Monitor and document ongoing test parameters, such as the temperatures inside and outside the air barrier envelope, wind speed, and differential pressure.

3.6.3.1.1 Thermography Testing of the Air Barrier

Test the building envelope in accordance with [ISO 6781](#), and [ASTM E1186](#). Perform a complete thermographic inspection consisting of the full inspection of the interior and exterior of the complete air barrier envelope. Document envelope areas that are inaccessible for testing. Use infrared thermography technology in concert with standard pressurization methods (blower doors, trailer mounted fans and/or the building's own air handling systems) to locate leaks through the air barrier. Because thermography works best with at least a [18 degree F](#) temperature difference between the envelope interior and the exterior, adjust the HVAC system, if possible, to create or enhance this temperature difference. The minimum allowable temperature difference is [3 degrees F](#). Maintain this temperature difference for at least 3 hours prior to the test. Use pressurization methods to establish a minimum of +20 Pa pressure difference with respect to the outdoors while using an infrared camera to view the envelope from outdoors. When viewing with the camera from inside the envelope, keep the envelope at a pressure differential of -20 Pa with respect to the outdoors using pressure testing equipment or the building's own air handling system.

3.6.3.2 Thermography Test Results

Document the location of all leaks, anomalies, and unusual thermal features on a floor plan and/or elevation view and catalog them with a visible light picture for locating the defect for correction. The thermographer is to recommend corrective actions to eliminate the leaks, anomalies and unusual thermal features. Where leaks are found perform corrective sealing as necessary to achieve the whole envelope air leakage rate specified. After sealing, again use thermography in concert with standard pressurization methods to verify that the air leakage has been reduced. After these leaks have been permanently sealed note all actions taken on the drawings or in the Thermographic Investigation Report. Submit the drawings for approval as part of the Thermographic Investigation Report. Also include thermographic photos that show where leaks were discovered. Include thermograms using an imaging palette that clearly shows the observed thermal patterns indicating air leakage. The Contracting Officer's Representative is to witness all testing.

3.6.4 Fog Test

Before using a theatrical fog generator, disable all building smoke detectors as they may alarm when fog is issued. Coordinate fog tests and the disabling of all smoke detectors with the Contracting Officer's representative and the local fire department as necessary. Use pressure test equipment or the buildings own air handling system to positively pressurize the building envelope to at least 25 Pa but not greater than 85 Pa over the outdoors. Using a theatrical fog generator within the

envelope, direct fog at suspected leakage points such as at building interfaces. Test the following interfaces: roof/wall, wall/wall, floor/wall, wall/window, roof/mounted mechanical equipment. From the vantage point immediately outside the envelope and opposite that of the interface being tested, observe the effect as the fog is issued. Detection may also be further enhanced by using a scented fog liquid or a fog liquid that produces a colored fog. Look for fog and smell for associated odor percolating through the interface. Also use smoke puffers and smoke sticks as necessary to locate leaks at these and other interface locations. If the Architectural Plus HVAC System pressure test will be/was performed introduce fog into ductwork to check for leakage between ductwork and associated dampers. After fog testing has ended, reactivate the building smoke detectors and notify the Contracting Officer and local fire department that the test has ended. After sealing has been completed retest these areas using fog. Seal additional leaks that are found.

3.6.5 Diagnostic Test Report

Once the diagnostic tests have been completed and the leakage locations identified and sealed, document these procedures, locations and recommendations in the diagnostic test report. Submit plan and/or profile drawings that thoroughly identify leak locations. Describe in detail all leak locations so that the seal-up crew knows where to apply sealing measures. After sealing measures have been applied, describe the methods used along with applicable photos of the final sealed condition.

3.6.5.1 Thermographic Investigation Report

Submit a report of each thermographic investigation identifying the thermal discontinuities in the thermal control layer. Indicate in the final report locations to which improvements for both the air control layer and the thermal control layer were made to reduce air leaks and correct discontinuities in the thermal control layer. Include in the report some selected radiometric images of suspected failure points in the air barrier envelope that indicate before and after conditions. Indicate in the final report improvements that were made to the envelope to reduce air leaks. Include the following items in the report:

- a. Brief description of the building construction
- b. Types of interior and exterior surface materials used in the building.
- c. Geographical orientation of the building with a description of the exterior surroundings including other buildings, vegetation, landscaping, and surface water drainage.
- d. Camera brand, model and serial number, and date of most recent calibration date; optional lenses with serial numbers (if applicable)
- e. Thermographer's and Government Inspector's names
- f. Date and time of tests
- g. Air temperature and humidity inside the air barrier envelope
- h. Outdoor air temperature and humidity
- i. General information for the last 12 hours on the solar radiation conditions in the geographic area where the test is being performed.

- j. Ambient conditions such as precipitation and wind direction and speed occurring with the last 24 hours, as applicable. Refer to specific requirements in each section of each thermographic inspection type for requirements in each specific area.
- k. Documentation of those portions of the building envelop which were not within test conditions when the scan was performed and which portions were obstructed by adjacent structures, interior furnishings, intervening cavities or reflective surfaces.
- l. Other relevant information, which may have influenced test results.
- m. Drawings, sketches, floor plans and/or photographs detailing the locations in the buildings where thermograms were taken detailing possible irregularities in the components being tested.
- n. Thermal images taken during the inspection with their relative locations and written or voiced recorded explanations of the anomaly listed along with visual and reference images.
- o. An identification of the aspects or components of the building being examined.
- p. Explanations for the type and the extent of each construction defect observed during the inspection.
- q. Any results from additional measurements and investigations. Identify additional equipment used and support with type, model number, serial number and date of most recent calibrated.

3.6.5.2 Fog Test Report

Document all turbulent air flow and dead air spaces within the envelope. Report fog behavior as it exits from and/or is entrained within the building. Include a floor plan in the report that documents the locations where fog passed through the envelope.

3.7 CALCULATION PROGRAM

To calculate the envelope leakage rate and other required outputs, input the data obtained during the pressure tests as documented in the Air Leakage Test Form (Appendix A) into the Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization Excel spreadsheet. This spreadsheet can be found at the following web site:

<http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/forms-graphics-tables>.

3.8 AFTER COMPLETION OF THE PRESSURE AND/OR DIAGNOSTIC TEST

After all pressure and/or diagnostic testing has been completed unseal all temporarily sealed items. Unless otherwise directed by the Contracting Officer, return all dampers, doors, and windows to their pre-test condition. Remove tape and plastic from all temporarily sealed openings, being careful not to deface painted surfaces. If paint is removed from finished surfaces, repaint to match existing surfaces. Unless otherwise directed by the Contracting Officer's representative, return fuel (gas) valves to their pre-test position and relight pilot lights. Return all fans and air handling units to pre-test conditions.

3.9 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

Repair and protection is the Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for testing, inspection, and similar services. Upon completion of inspection, testing, or sample taking and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes, protect construction exposed by or for quality control service activities, and protect repaired construction.

3.10 APPENDICES

The following forms are available for download as a MS Word file at <http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/forms-graphics-tables>.

Appendix A - Air Leakage Test Form
Appendix B - Air Leakage Test Results Form
Appendix C - Test Agency Qualifications Sheet

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 14 00

FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C33/C33M	(2018) Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C578	(2018) Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
ASTM C836/C836M	(2015) High Solids Content, Cold Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use With Separate Wearing Course
ASTM D1056	(2014) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded Rubber
ASTM D1751	(2004; E 2013; R 2013) Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
ASTM D1752	(2018) Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber, Cork and Recycled PVC Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Fluid-Applied Membrane

Membrane Primer

Elastomeric Sheet

Flexible Foam-Backed Elastomeric Sheet

Solvent

Moisture Meter

Protection Board

Bond Breaker

Submit material description and physical properties, application details, and recommendations regarding shelf life, application procedures, and precautions on flammability and toxicity.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty

Information Card

Instructions To Government Personnel

Include copies of Safety Data Sheets for maintenance/repair materials.

1.3 PREWATERPROOFING CONFERENCE

Prior to starting application of waterproofing system, arrange and attend a prewaterproofing conference to ensure a clear understanding of drawings and specifications. Give the Contracting Officer 7 days advance written notice of the time and place of meeting. Ensure that the mechanical and electrical subcontractor, flashing and sheetmetal subcontractor, and other trades that may perform other types of work on or over the membrane after installation, attend this conference.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver waterproofing materials in manufacturer's original, unopened containers, with labels intact and legible. Containers of materials covered by a referenced specification number shall bear the specification number, type, and class of the contents. Deliver materials in sufficient quantity to continue work without interruption. Store and protect materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, and use within their indicated shelf life. When hazardous materials are involved, adhere to special precautions of the manufacturer, unless precautions conflict with local, state, and federal regulations. Promptly remove from the site materials or incomplete work adversely affected by exposure to moisture or freezing. Store materials on pallets and cover from top to bottom with canvas tarpaulins.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Apply materials when ambient temperature is 40 degrees F or above for a period of 24 hours prior to the application and when there is no ice, frost, surface moisture, or visible dampness on the substrate surface. Apply materials when air temperature is expected to remain above 40 degrees F during the cure period recommended by the manufacturer. Moisture test for substrate is specified under paragraph entitled

"Moisture Test." Work may be performed within heated enclosures, provided the surface temperature of the substrate is maintained at a minimum of 40 degrees F for 24 hours prior to the application of the waterproofing, and remains above that temperature during the cure period recommended by the manufacturer.

1.6 WARRANTY

Provide roof system material and workmanship warranties meeting specified requirements. Provide revisions or amendment to standard membrane manufacturer warranty to comply with the specified requirements. Minimum manufacturer warranty shall have no dollar limit, cover full system water-tightness, and shall have a minimum duration of 20 years.

1.6.1 Roof Membrane Manufacturer Warranty

Furnish the roof membrane manufacturer's 20-year no dollar limit roof system materials and installation workmanship warranty, including flashing, insulation, and accessories necessary for a watertight roof system construction. Write the warranty directly to the Government commencing at time of Government's acceptance of the roof work. Provide the the following statements for such warranty:

- a. If within the warranty period the roof system, as installed for its intended use in the normal climatic and environmental conditions of the facility, becomes non-watertight, shows evidence of moisture intrusion within the assembly, blisters, splits, tears, cracks, delaminates, separates at the seams, or shows evidence of excessive weathering due to defective materials or installation workmanship, the repair or replacement of the defective and damaged materials of the roof system assembly and correction of defective workmanship are the responsibility of the roof membrane manufacturer. All cost associated with the repair or replacement work are the responsibility of the roof membrane manufacturer.
- b. The warranty must remain in full force and effect, including emergency temporary repairs performed by others, when the manufacturer or his approved applicator fail to perform the repairs within 72 hours of notification.

1.6.2 Roofing System Installer Warranty

The roof system installer must warrant for a minimum period of two years that the roof system, as installed, is free from defects in installation workmanship, to include the roof membrane, flashing, insulation, accessories, attachments, and sheet metal installation integral to a complete watertight roof system assembly. Write the warranty directly to the Government. The roof system installer is responsible for correction of defective workmanship and replacement of damaged or affected materials. The roof system installer is responsible for all costs associated with the repair or replacement work.

1.6.3 Continuance of Warranty

Approve repair or replacement work that becomes necessary within the warranty period and accomplished in a manner so as to restore the integrity of the roof system assembly and validity of the roof membrane manufacturer warranty for the remainder of the manufacturer warranty period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE

ASTM C836/C836M.

2.2 MEMBRANE PRIMER

As recommended by the fluid-applied membrane manufacturer unless specifically prohibited by the manufacturer of the fluid-applied membrane.

2.3 SEALANT

As specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

2.4 SEALANT PRIMER

As specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

2.5 BACKING MATERIAL

Premolded, closed-cell, polyethylene, or polyurethane foam rod having a diameter 25 percent larger than joint width before being compressed into joint. Provide bond breaker of polyethylene film or other suitable material between backing material and sealant.

2.6 JOINT FILLER

As specified in ASTM D1751 or ASTM D1752.

2.7 BOND BREAKER

As recommended by the fluid-applied membrane manufacturer. Bond breaker shall not interfere with the curing process or other performance properties of the fluid-applied membrane.

2.8 ELASTOMERIC SHEET

Preformed; as recommended by the fluid-applied membrane manufacturer. Bond strength between the fluid-applied membrane and the preformed elastomeric sheet shall be a minimum of one psi when tested in accordance with ASTM C836/C836M.

2.9 ELASTOMERIC SHEET ADHESIVE

As recommended by the elastomeric sheet manufacturer.

2.10 FLEXIBLE FOAM-BACKED ELASTOMERIC SHEET

Flexible foam-backed elastomeric sheet for protection over preformed elastomeric sheet at expansion joints shall be 1/2 inch thick, minimum, closed cell foam conforming to ASTM D1056, Type 2, Class B, Grades 2 or 3, factory-bonded to 1/16 inch thick, minimum, preformed elastomeric sheet.

2.11 PROTECTION BOARD

Premolded bitumen composition board, 1/8 inch minimum thickness or other composition board compatible with the fluid-applied membrane.

2.12 DRAINAGE COURSE AGGREGATE

ASTM C33/C33M, size No. 8.

2.13 INSULATION

Polystyrene foam conforming to ASTM C578, Class IV, thickness as required by indicated R-value.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Coordinate work with that of other trades to ensure that components to be incorporated into the waterproofing system are available when needed. Inspect and approve surfaces immediately before application of waterproofing materials. Remove laitance, loose aggregate, sharp projections, grease, oil, dirt, curing compounds, and other contaminants which could adversely affect the complete bonding of the fluid-applied membrane to the concrete surface.

3.1.1 Flashings

Make penetrations through sleeves in concrete slab watertight before application of waterproofing. After flashing is completed, cover elastomeric sheet with fluid-applied waterproofing during waterproofing application.

3.1.1.1 Drains

Make drain flanges flush with surface of structural slab. Apply a full elastomeric sheet around the drain, with edges fully adhered to drain flange and to structural slab. Do not adhere elastomeric sheet over joint between drain and concrete slab. Do not plug drainage or weep holes. Cover elastomeric sheet with fluid-applied waterproofing during waterproofing application. Lap elastomeric sheet a minimum of 4 inches onto concrete slab.

3.1.1.2 Penetrations and Projections

Flash penetrations and projections through structural slab with an elastomeric sheet adhered to the concrete slab and the penetration. Leave elastomeric sheet unadhered for 1 inch over joint between penetration and concrete slab. Adhere elastomeric sheet a minimum of 4 inches onto horizontal deck.

3.1.1.3 Walls and Vertical Surfaces

Flash wall intersections which are not of monolithic pour or constructed with reinforced concrete joints with an elastomeric sheet adhered to both vertical wall surfaces and concrete slab. Flash intersections which are monolithically poured or constructed with reinforced concrete joints with either an elastomeric sheet or a vertical grade of fluid-applied waterproofing adhered to vertical wall surfaces and concrete slab. Leave sheet unadhered for a distance of one inch from the corner on both vertical and horizontal surfaces.

3.1.2 Cracks and Joints

Prepare visible cracks and joints in substrate to receive fluid-applied waterproofing membrane by placing a bond breaker and an elastomeric slip sheet between membrane and substrate. Cracks that show movement shall receive a 2 inch bond breaker followed by an elastomeric sheet adhered to the deck. Nonmoving cracks shall be double coated with fluid-applied waterproofing.

3.1.3 Priming

Prime surfaces to receive fluid-applied waterproofing membrane. Apply primer as required by membrane manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.2 SPECIAL PRECAUTIONS

Protect waterproofing materials during transport and application. Do not dilute primers and other materials, unless specifically recommended by materials manufacturer. Keep containers closed except when removing contents. Do not mix remains of unlike materials. Thoroughly remove residual materials before using application equipment for mixing and transporting materials. Do not permit equipment on the project site that has residue of materials used on previous projects. Use cleaners only for cleaning, not for thinning primers or membrane materials. Ensure that workers and others who walk on cured membrane wear clean, soft-soled shoes to avoid damaging the waterproofing materials.

3.3 APPLICATION

Over primed surfaces, provide a uniform, wet, monolithic coating of fluid-applied membrane, 60 mils thick, plus or minus 5 mils by following manufacturer's printed instructions. Apply material by trowel, squeegee, roller, brush, spray apparatus, or other method recommended by membrane manufacturer. Check wet film thickness as specified in paragraph entitled "Film Thickness" and adjust application rate as necessary to provide a uniform coating of the thickness specified. Where possible, mark off surface to be coated in equal units to facilitate proper coverage. At expansion joints, control joints, prepared cracks, flashing, and terminations, carry membrane over preformed elastomeric sheet in a uniform 60 mil thick, plus or minus 5 mils, wet thickness to provide a monolithic coating. If membrane cures before next application, wipe previously applied membrane with a solvent to remove dirt and dust that could inhibit adhesion of overlapping membrane coat. Use solvent recommended by the membrane manufacturer, as approved.

3.3.1 Work Sequence

Perform work so that protection board is installed prior to using the waterproofed surface. Do not permanently install protection board until the membrane has passed the flood test specified under paragraph entitled "Flood Test." Move material storage areas as work progresses to prevent abuse of membrane and overloading of structural deck.

3.3.2 Protection Board

Protect fluid-applied membrane by placing protection board over membrane at a time recommended by the membrane manufacturer. Protect membrane application when protection board is not placed immediately. Butt protection boards together and do not overlap.

3.3.3 Drainage Course

Place drainage course where shown after flood tests are completed and concrete protection slab or wearing course is ready to be installed.

3.3.4 Insulation

Place insulation of thickness indicated, on top of drainage course just prior to placement of concrete protection slab.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4.1 Moisture Test

Prior to application of fluid-applied waterproofing, measure moisture content of substrate with a [moisture meter](#) in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Do not begin application until meter reading indicates "dry" range.

3.4.2 Film Thickness

Measure wet film thickness every [100 square feet](#) during application by placing flat metal plates on the substrate or using a mil-thickness gage especially manufactured for the purpose.

3.4.3 Flood Test

After application and curing is complete, plug drains and fill waterproofed area with water to a depth of [2 inches](#). A minimum 48 hour cure time, or longer cure time if recommended by the membrane manufacturer, shall be required prior to flood testing. Allow water to stand 24 hours. Test watertightness by measuring water level at beginning and end of the 24 hour period. If water level falls, drain water, allow installation to dry, and inspect. Make repairs or replace as required and repeat the test. Work shall not proceed before approval of repairs or replacement.

3.5 [INSTRUCTIONS TO GOVERNMENT PERSONNEL](#)

Furnish written and verbal instructions on proper maintenance procedures to designated Government personnel. Furnish instructions by a competent representative of the roof membrane manufacturer and include a minimum of 4 hours on maintenance and emergency repair of the membrane. Include a demonstration of membrane repair, and give sources of required special tools. Furnish information on safety requirements during maintenance and emergency repair operations.

3.6 [INFORMATION CARD](#)

For each roof application, furnish a minimum [8-1/2 inch by 11 inch](#) information card for facility records and a card laminated in plastic and framed for interior display at roof access point, or a photoengraved [0.032 inch](#) thick aluminum card for exterior display. Identify facility name and number; location; contract number; approximate roof area; detailed roof system description, including deck type, membrane, number of plies, method of application, manufacturer, insulation and cover board system and thickness; presence of tapered insulation for primary drainage, presence of vapor retarder; date of completion; installing contractor

identification and contract information; membrane manufacturer warranty expiration, warranty reference number, and contact information. Install card at roof top or access location as directed by the Contracting Officer and provide a paper copy to the Contracting Officer.

FORM 1
FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING SYSTEM COMPONENTS
1. Contract Number
2. Date Work Completed
3. Project Specification Designation
4. Substrate Material
5. Slope of Substrate
6. Drains Type/Manufacturer
7. Waterproofing
a. Membrane
b. Sealant
c. Elastomeric Sheet
d. Materials Manufacturer(s)
8. Protection Board
a. Type
b. Thickness
c. Manufacturer's Name
9. Drainage Course Material Graduation
10. Insulation
a. Type
b. Thickness
c. Manufacturer's Name
11. Protection Slab
a. Material
b. Thickness
c. Support
d. Joint System
12. Wearing Course

FORM 1	
FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING SYSTEM COMPONENTS	
a. Type	
b. Slope	
c. Joint System	
d. Sealant/Gasket Type	
13. Wearing Surface Type	
Manufacturer's Name	
14. Warranty	
a. Manufacturer warranty expiration	
b. Warranty reference number	
15. Statement of Compliance or Exception	
Contractor's Signature	Date Signed
Inspector's Signature	Date Signed

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 21 13

BOARD AND BLOCK INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C203	(2005; R 2012) Breaking Load and Flexural Properties of Block-Type Thermal Insulation
ASTM C272/C272M	(2016) Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Core Materials for Sandwich Constructions
ASTM C578	(2018) Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
ASTM C930	(2019) Standard Classification of Potential Health and Safety Concerns Associated with Thermal Insulation Materials and Accessories
ASTM D1621	(2016) Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties of Rigid Cellular Plastics
ASTM D3833/D3833M	(1996; R 2011) Water Vapor Transmission of Pressure-Sensitive Tapes
ASTM E96/E96M	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer's Standard Details; G

Board Insulation; G

Pressure Sensitive Tape; G

Protection Board or Coatings; G

Accessories including sealants; G

SD-07 Certificates

Board Insulation; G

Draft Special Warranties; G

Final Special Warranties; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Board Insulation

Adhesive

1.3 MANUFACTURER'S DETAILS

Submit [manufacturer's standard details](#) indicating methods of attachment and spacing, transition and termination details, and installation details. Include verification of existing conditions.

1.4 PRODUCT DATA

Include data for material descriptions, recommendations for product shelf life, requirements for [protection board or coatings](#), and precautions for flammability and toxicity. Include data to verify compatibility of sealants with insulation.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.5.1 Delivery

Deliver materials to the site in original sealed wrapping bearing manufacturer's name and brand designation, specification number, type, grade, R-value, and class. Store and handle to protect from damage. Do not allow insulation materials to become wet, soiled, crushed, or covered with ice or snow. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for handling, storing, and protecting of materials before and during installation.

1.5.2 Storage

Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage and store out of weather in manufacturer's original packaging. Store only in dry locations, not subject to open flames or sparks, and easily accessible for inspection and handling. Keep materials wrapped and separated from off-gassing materials (such as drying paints and adhesives). Do not use materials that have visible moisture or biological growth. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for handling, storage, and protection of materials before and during installation.

1.6 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

1.6.1 Other Safety Considerations

Comply with the safety requirements of [ASTM C930](#).

1.7 SPECIAL WARRANTIES

1.7.1 Guarantee

Guarantee insulation installation against failure due to ultraviolet light exposure for a period of three years from the date of Beneficial Occupancy. Submit draft and final guarantees in accordance with Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.7.2 Warranty

Provide manufacturer's material warranty for all system components for a period of three years from the date of Beneficial Occupancy. Submit draft and final warranties in accordance with Sections 01 78 00 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 BOARD INSULATION

Provide thermal insulating materials as recommended by manufacturer for each type of application indicated. Provide insulation with the following physical properties and in accordance with the following standards:

- a. Extruded Preformed Cellular Polystyrene: ASTM C578 REV A

2.1.1 Thermal Resistance

Unless otherwise indicated, walls are required to have a minimum R-Value of 13.0 plus a minimum R-Value of 7.5 for continuous insulation.

Unless otherwise indicated, roofs are required to have a minimum R-Value of 30.0 for continuous insulation.

2.1.2 Other Material Properties

Provide thermal insulating materials with the following properties:

- a. Rigid cellular plastics: Compressive Resistance at Yield: Not less than 15 pounds per square inch (psi) when measured according to ASTM D1621.
- b. Block-type insulation: Block-type insulation: Flexural strength: Not less than 40 psi when measured according to ASTM C203 REV A.
- c. Water Vapor Permeance: Not more than 1.5 perms or less when measured according to ASTM E96/E96M, desiccant method, in the thickness required to provide the specified thermal resistance, including facings, if any.
- d. Water Absorption: Not more than 3 percent by total immersion, by volume, when measured according to ASTM C272/C272M.

2.2 PRESSURE SENSITIVE TAPE

As recommended by manufacturer of vapor retarder(s). Match water vapor permeance rating for each vapor retarder specified. Provide tape in accordance with ASTM D3833/D3833M.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

2.3.1 Adhesive

As recommended by insulation manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXISTING CONDITIONS

Prior to installation, ensure all areas that are in contact with the insulation are dry and free of projections that could cause voids, compressed insulation. Do not proceed with installation if moisture or other conditions are present and notify the Contracting Officer of such conditions. Do not proceed with the work until conditions have been corrected and verified to be dry.

3.2 INSTALLATION

3.2.1 Installation and Handling

Provide insulation in accordance with the manufacturer's printed installation instructions. Keep material dry and free of extraneous materials.

3.2.2 Continuity of Insulation

Butt tightly against adjoining boards and obstructions. Provide continuity and integrity of insulation at corners, wall to ceiling joint, roof, and floor. Avoid creating thermal bridges and voids. Provide and verify continuity of insulative barrier throughout the building enclosure.

3.2.3 Coordination

Verify final installed insulation thicknesses comply with thicknesses indicated, R-values specified herein, and with the approved insulation submittal(s).

3.3 INSTALLATION ON WALLS

3.3.1 Installation using Furring Strips

Install insulation between members as recommended by insulation manufacturer.

3.3.2 Installation on Masonry Walls

Apply board directly to masonry with adhesive or fasteners as recommended by the insulation manufacturer. Fit between obstructions without impaling board on ties or anchors. Apply in parallel courses with joints breaking midway over course below. Place boards in moderate contact with adjoining insulation without forcing and without gaps. Cut and shape as required to fit around wall penetrations, projections or openings to accommodate conduit or other utilities. Seal around cutouts with sealant. Install insulation in wall cavities so that it leaves at least a nominal 1 inch air space outside of the insulation to allow for cavity drainage.

3.3.3 Adhesive Attachment to Concrete and Masonry Walls

Apply adhesive to wall and completely cover wall with insulation.

- a. As recommended by the insulation manufacturer.
- b. Use only full back method for pieces of 1 square foot or less.
- c. Butt all edges of insulation and seal edges with tape.

3.3.4 Protection Board or Coating

Install protection board or coating in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Install protection over all exterior exposed insulation and to 1 foot below grade.

3.4 INSTALLATION ON UNDERSIDE OF CONCRETE FLOOR SLAB

3.4.1 Adhesively Bonded Systems

Apply adhesive to underside of slab and completely cover wall with insulation.

- a. Spot method: Provide at least six spots having a diameter of approximately 4 inches, located at each corner and mid-point of each of the longer sides.
- b. As recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- c. Use full back method for insulation pieces 1 square foot or less.
- d. Butt all edges of insulation and seal with tape.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 21 16

MINERAL FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C665	(2017) Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing
ASTM C930	(2019) Standard Classification of Potential Health and Safety Concerns Associated with Thermal Insulation Materials and Accessories
ASTM D3833/D3833M	(1996; R 2011) Water Vapor Transmission of Pressure-Sensitive Tapes
ASTM D5359	(2015) Standard Specification for Glass Cullet Recovered from Waste for Use in Manufacture of Glass Fiber
ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E136	(2019) Standard Test Method for Assessing Combustibility of Materials Using a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350	(2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources using Environmental Chambers
--------------------	--

GREEN SEAL (GS)

GS-36	(2013) Adhesives for Commercial Use
-------	-------------------------------------

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS	SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage
-----	--

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168	(2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications
------------------	--

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.134

Respiratory Protection

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818

(2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Insulation for each type

Accessories

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality for Adhesives; G, S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Insulation

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

Submit required indoor air quality certifications and validations in one submittal package.

1.3.1 Insulation Products

Provide product certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification by other third-party programs. Provide current product certification from certification body.

1.3.2 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818 (Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party programs that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.4.1 Delivery

Deliver materials to site in original sealed wrapping bearing manufacturer's name and brand designation, specification number, type, grade, R-value, and class. Store and handle to protect from damage. Do not allow insulation materials to become wet, soiled, crushed, or covered with ice or snow. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for handling, storing, and protecting of materials before and during installation.

1.4.2 Storage

Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage; unload and store out of weather in manufacturer's original packaging. Store only in dry locations, not subject to open flames or sparks, and easily accessible for inspection and handling.

1.5 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

1.5.1 Respirators

Provide installers with dust/mist respirators, training in their use, and protective clothing, all approved by National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)/Mine Safety and Health Administration (MSHA) in accordance with [29 CFR 1910.134](#).

1.5.2 Other Safety Concerns

Consider other safety concerns and measures as outlined in [ASTM C930](#).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SOUND ATTENUATION FIRE BATT [INSULATION](#)/MINERAL WOOL

[ASTM C665](#), Type I, blankets without membrane coverings with a flame spread rating of 5 or less and a smoke developed rating of 0 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

2.1.1 Therma Batt Fiberglass Insulation

[ASTM C665](#), Type I, blankets without membrane coverings with a flame spread rating of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

2.1.2 Sound Attenuation Fire Blankets

[ASTM C665](#), Type I, blankets without membrane coverings with a flame spread rating of 0 or less and a smoke developed rating of 0 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

2.1.3 Fire Safing Blankets

[ASTM C665](#), Type I, blankets without membrane coverings with a flame spread rating of 0 or less and a smoke developed rating of 0 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

2.1.4 Thermal Resistance Value (R-VALUE)

The R-Value must be as indicated on drawings.

2.1.5 Recycled Materials

Provide insulation materials containing the following minimum percentage of recycled material content by weight:

Fiberglass: 20 percent glass cullet complying with [ASTM D5359](#)

Provide data identifying percentage of recycled content for insulation materials.

2.1.6 Prohibited Materials

Do not provide asbestos-containing materials.

2.2 BLOCKING

Wood, metal, unfaced mineral fiber blankets in accordance with [ASTM C665](#), Type I, or other approved materials. Use only non-combustible materials meeting the requirements of [ASTM E136](#) for blocking around chimneys and heat producing devices.

2.3 PRESSURE SENSITIVE TAPE

As recommended by the vapor retarder manufacturer and having a water vapor permeance rating of [one perm](#) or less when tested in accordance with [ASTM D3833/D3833M](#).

2.4 ACCESSORIES

2.4.1 Adhesive

As recommended by the insulation manufacturer. Provide non-aerosol adhesive products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) that meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [SCAQMD Rule 1168](#). Provide aerosol adhesives used on the interior of the building that meet either emissions requirements of [CDPH SECTION 01350](#) (use the office or classroom requirements, regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of [GS-36](#). Provide certification or validation of [indoor air quality for adhesives](#).

2.4.2 Mechanical Fasteners

Corrosion resistant fasteners as recommended by the insulation manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXISTING CONDITIONS

Before installing insulation, ensure that areas that will be in contact with the insulation are dry and free of projections which could cause voids, compressed insulation. If moisture or other conditions are found that do not allow the workmanlike installation of the insulation, do not

proceed but notify Contracting Officer of such conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

3.2.1 Insulation

Install and handle insulation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Keep material dry and free of extraneous materials. Any materials that show visual evidence of biological growth due to presence of moisture must not be installed on the building project. Ensure personal protective clothing and respiratory equipment is used as required. Observe safe work practices.

3.2.1.1 Electrical Wiring

Do not install insulation in a manner that would sandwich electrical wiring between two layers of insulation.

3.2.1.2 Continuity of Insulation

Install blanket insulation to butt tightly against adjoining blankets and to studs and any obstructions. Provide continuity and integrity of insulation at corners, wall to ceiling joints, and floor. Avoid creating thermal bridges.

3.2.1.3 Installation at Bridging and Cross Bracing

Insulate at bridging and cross bracing by splitting blanket vertically at center and packing one half into each opening. Butt insulation at bridging and cross bracing; fill in bridged area with loose or scrap insulation.

3.2.1.4 Insulation without Affixed Vapor Retarder

Provide snug friction fit to hold insulation in place. Stuff pieces of insulation into cracks between trusses, joists, studs and other framing, such as at attic access doors, door and window heads, jambs, and sills, band joists, and headers.

3.2.1.5 Sizing of Blankets

Provide only full width blankets when insulating between trusses, joists, or studs. Size width of blankets for a snug fit where trusses, joists or studs are irregularly spaced.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 22 00

ROOF AND DECK INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C1177/C1177M (2017) Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing

ASTM C1289 (2018a) Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board

ASTM E84 (2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

FM GLOBAL (FM)

FM 4450 (1989) Approval Standard for Class 1 Insulated Steel Deck Roofs

FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program For Chemical Emissions For Building Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Insulation Board Layout and Attachment; G

Verification of Existing Conditions; G

SD-03 Product Data

Insulation; G

Cover Board; G

Fasteners; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Flame Spread Rating; G

SD-07 Certificates

Installer Qualifications; G

Certificates Of Compliance For Felt Materials; G

Indoor Air Quality For Insulation; G, S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Nails and Fasteners; G

Roof Insulation; G

1.3 SHOP DRAWINGS

Submit [insulation board layout](#) and attachment indicating methods of attachment and spacing, transitions, tapered components, thicknesses of materials, and closure and termination conditions. Show locations of ridges, valleys, crickets, interface with, and slope to, roof drains. Base shop drawings on verified field measurements and include [verification of existing conditions](#).

1.4 PRODUCT DATA

Include data for material descriptions, recommendations for product shelf life, requirements for [cover board](#) or coatings, and precautions for flammability and toxicity. Include data to verify compatibility of sealants with insulation.

1.5 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

Include field of roof and perimeter attachment requirements.

Provide a complete description of installation sequencing for each phase of the roofing system. Include weatherproofing procedures.

1.6 QUALITY CONTROL

Provide certification of [installer qualifications](#) from the insulation manufacturer confirming the specific installer has the required qualifications for installing the specific roof insulation system(s) indicated.

Provide certificates of compliance for felt materials.

1.7 FM APPROVAL REQUIREMENTS

Provide fastening patterns in accordance with FM 1-90 for insulation on steel decks.

1.8 FIRE PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.8.1 Insulation in Roof Systems

Comply with the requirements of ICC IBC. Roof insulation to have a flame spread rating of 75 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Additional documentation of compliance with flame spread rating is not required when insulation of the type used for this project as part of the specific roof assembly is listed and labeled as FM Class 1 approved.

1.8.2 Thermal Barrier Requirements

Separate insulation from a combustibile steel deck with a thermal barrier of glass mat gypsum roof board or other approved barrier material in accordance with the requirements of the ICC IBC.

1.8.3 Fire Resistance Ratings for Roofs

Provide in accordance with ICC IBC Chapter 7 and Table 721.1(3) Min Protection For Floor and Roof Systems.

1.9 CERTIFICATIONS

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by UL 2818(Greenguard) Gold, SCS Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification by other third-party programs. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.10.1 Delivery

Deliver materials to the project site in manufacturer's unopened and undamaged standard commercial containers bearing the following legible information:

- a. Name of manufacturer
- b. Brand designation
- c. Specification number, type, and class, as applicable, where materials are covered by a referenced specification

Deliver materials in sufficient quantity to allow continuity of the work.

1.10.2 Storage and Handling

Store and handle materials in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Protect from damage, exposure to open flame or other ignition sources, wetting, condensation, and moisture absorption. Keep materials wrapped and separated from off-gassing materials (such as drying

paints and adhesives). Do not use materials that have visible moisture or biological growth. Store in an enclosed building or trailer that provides a dry, adequately ventilated environment. Replace damaged material with new material.

1.11 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Do not install roof insulation during inclement weather or when air temperature is below 40 degrees F and interior humidity is 45 percent or greater, or when there is visible ice, frost, or moisture on the roof deck.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION

2.1.1 Insulation Types

Provide the following roof insulation materials. Provide roof insulation that is compatible with attachment methods for the specified insulation and roof membrane.

- a. Polyisocyanurate Board: Provide in accordance with ASTM C1289 REV A Type II, Class 1 glass reinforced facers both sides, except minimum compressive strength of 20 pounds per square inch (psi).

2.1.2 Indoor Air Quality

Provide certification of indoor air quality for insulation.

2.1.3 Insulation Thickness

As necessary to provide the thermal resistance (R-value) indicated. Base calculation on the R-value for aged insulation. For insulation over steel decks, satisfy both specified R-value and minimum thickness for width of rib opening recommended in insulation manufacturer's published literature.

2.2 COVER BOARD

For use as a cover board for mechanically fastened roofing membrane over roof insulation.

2.2.1 Fiberglass Mat Gypsum Roof Board

ASTM C1177/C1177M, 0 Flame Spread and 0 Smoke Developed when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, 1,000 psi, Class A, non-combustible, 1/2 inch thick, 4 by 8 feet board size.

2.3 FASTENERS

Provide flush-driven fasteners through flat round or hexagonal steel or plastic plates. Provide zinc-coated steel plates, flat round not less than 3 inch diameter, hexagonal not less than 28 gage. Provide high-density plastic plates, molded thermoplastic with smooth top surface, reinforcing ribs and not less than 3 inches in diameter. Fully recess fastener head into plastic plate after it is driven. Form plates to prevent dishing. Do not use bell or cup shaped plates. Provide fasteners in accordance with insulation manufacturer's recommendations for holding power when driven, or a minimum of 40 pounds each in steel deck, whichever is the higher minimum. Provide fasteners for steel or concrete decks in

accordance with FM APP GUIDE (<http://www.approvalguide.com/>) for Class I roof deck construction, and spaced to withstand uplift pressure of 60 pounds per square foot.

2.3.1 Fasteners for Steel Decks

Approved hardened penetrating fasteners or screws in accordance with FM 4450 and listed in FM APP GUIDE for Class I roof deck construction. Quantity and placement to withstand a minimum uplift pressure of 60 psf in accordance with FM APP GUIDE.

2.4 WOOD NAILERS

Pressure-preservative treated as specified in Section 06 10 00 ROUGH CARPENTRY.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION

3.1.1 Surface Inspection

Ensure surfaces are clean, smooth, and dry prior to application. Check roof deck surfaces, including surfaces sloped to roof drains and outlets, for defects before starting work.

The Contracting Officer will inspect and approve the surfaces immediately before starting installation. Prior to installing insulation, perform the following:

- a. Examine steel decks to ensure that panels are properly secured to structural members and to each other and that surfaces of top flanges are flat or slightly convex.

3.1.2 Surface Preparation

Correct defects and inaccuracies in roof deck surface to eliminate poor drainage from hollow or low spots, perform the following:

- a. Provide wood nailers of the same thickness as the insulation at eaves, edges, curbs, walls, and roof openings for securing of flashing flanges.

3.2 INSULATION INSTALLATION

Install high thermal insulation in a minimum of 2 layers to achieve the specified R-Value. When using multiple layers of insulation, provide joints of each succeeding layer that are parallel and offset in both directions with respect to the layer below. Install insulation up against all vertical penetrations and walls to minimize thermal shorts.

3.2.1 Installation Using Only Mechanical Fasteners

Secure total thickness of insulation with penetrating type fasteners.

3.2.2 Special Precautions for Installation of Foam Insulation

3.2.2.1 Polyisocyanurate Insulation

Where polyisocyanurate foam board insulation is provided, install 1/2 inch thick cement and glass-fiber mesh cover board over top surface of foam board insulation. Stagger joints of cement and glass-fiber mesh cover board with respect to foam board insulation below.

3.3 PROTECTION

3.3.1 Protection of Applied Insulation

Completely cover each day's installation of insulation with finished roofing specified. Phased construction is not permitted. Protect open spaces between insulation and parapets or other walls and spaces at curbs, scuttles, and expansion joints, until permanent roofing and flashing are applied. Storing, walking, wheeling, or trucking directly on insulation or on roofed surfaces is not permitted. Provide smooth, clean board or plank walkways, runways, and platforms near supports, as necessary, to distribute weight in accordance with indicated live load limits of roof construction. Protect exposed edges of insulation with cutoffs at the end of each work day or whenever precipitation is imminent. Cutoffs must be two layers of bituminous-saturated felt set in plastic bituminous cement or single ply membrane set in manufacturer's approved sealant. Fill all profile voids in cutoffs to prevent trapping moisture below the membrane. Remove cutoffs when work resumes.

3.3.2 Damaged Work and Materials

Restore work and materials that become damaged during construction to original condition or replace with new materials.

3.4 INSPECTION

Establish and maintain inspection procedures to assure compliance of the installed roof insulation with contract requirements. Remove, replace, correct in an approved manner, any work found not in compliance. Quality control must include, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Observation of environmental conditions; number and skill level of insulation workers; start and end time of work.
- b. Verification of certification, listing or label compliance with FM Data Sheets. (
<https://www.fmglobal.com/fmglobalregistration/Downloads.aspx>)
- c. Verification of proper storage and handling of insulation materials before, during, and after installation.
- d. Inspection of mechanical fasteners; type, number, length, and spacing.

- e. Coordination with other materials, sleepers, and nailing strips.
- f. Inspection of insulation joint orientation and laps between layers, joint width and bearing of edges of insulation on deck.
- g. Installation of cutoffs and proper joining of work on subsequent days.
- h. Continuation of complete roofing system installation to cover insulation installed same day.
- i. Verification of required slope to each roof drain.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 27 10.00 10

BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This Section specifies the construction and quality control of the installation of an air barrier system that are contiguous across its six surfaces. Construct the air barrier system indicated, taking responsibility for the means, methods, and workmanship of the installation of the air barrier system. The air barrier must be contiguous and connected across all surfaces of the enclosed air barrier envelope indicated. The maximum leakage requirements of individual air barrier components and materials are specified in the other specification sections covering these items.

This section also defines the maximum allowable leakage of the final air barrier system. The workmanship must be adequate to meet the maximum allowable leakage requirements of this specification. Test the assembled air barrier system to demonstrate that the building envelope is properly sealed and insulated. Passing the air barrier system leakage test and thermography test will result in system acceptance. Conform air barrier system leakage and thermography testing and reporting to the requirements of Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D4541	(2017) Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Testers
ASTM E96/E96M	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
ASTM E2178	(2013) Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials
ASTM E2357	(2017) Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 285	(2012) Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies
----------	--

Containing Combustible Components

1.3 DEFINITIONS

The following terms as they apply to this section:

1.3.1 Air Barrier Accessory

Products designated to maintain air tightness between air barrier materials, air barrier assemblies and air barrier components, to fasten them to the structure of the building, or both (e.g., sealants, tapes, backer rods, transition membranes, fasteners, strapping, primers).

1.3.2 Air Barrier Assembly

The combination of air barrier materials and air barrier accessories that are designated and designed within the environmental separator to act as a continuous barrier to the movement of air through the environmental separator.

1.3.3 Air Barrier Component

Pre-manufactured elements such as windows, doors, dampers and service elements that are installed in the environmental separator.

1.3.4 Air Barrier Envelope

The combination of air barrier assemblies and air barrier components, connected by air barrier accessories that are designed to provide a continuous barrier to the movement of air through an environmental separator. There may be more than one air barrier envelope in a single building. Also known as Air Barrier System.

1.3.5 Air Barrier Material

A building material that is designed, tested and/or produced to provide the primary resistance to airflow through an air barrier assembly of a wall system.

1.3.6 Air Barrier System

Same as AIR BARRIER ENVELOPE.

1.3.7 Air Leakage Rate

The rate of airflow (CFM or L/S) driven through a unit surface area (sq.ft.) of an assembly or system by a unit static pressure difference (Pa) across the assembly. (example: 0.25 CFM/sq.ft. @ 75 Pa)

1.3.8 Air Leakage

The total airflow (CFM or L/S) driven through the air barrier system by a unit static pressure difference (Pa) across the air barrier envelope. (example: 6500 CFM @ 75 Pa)

1.3.9 Air Permeance

The tested rate of airflow (CFM) through a unit area (sq.ft.) of a material driven by unit static pressure difference (Pa) across the

material (example: 0.004 CFM/sq.ft. @ 75 Pa) as established by ASTM E2178.

1.3.10 Environmental Separator

The parts of a building that separate the controlled interior environment from the uncontrolled exterior environment, or that separate spaces within a building that have dissimilar environments. Also known as the Control Layer.

1.3.11 Vapor Permeance

Vapor permeance is separated into three classes based on the water vapor permeance of a material as tested via ASTM E96/E96M

Class I Vapor Barrier/Retarder 0.1 perm or less

Class II Vapor Barrier/Retarder 0.1 perm to 1.0 perm

Class III Vapor Barrier/Retarder 1.0 perm to 10 perm

1.4 PREPARATORY PHASE OR PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

Organize preconstruction conferences between the air barrier inspector and the subcontractors involved in the construction of or penetration of the air barrier system to discuss where the work of each subcontractor begins and ends, the sequence of installation, and each subcontractor's responsibility to ensure airtight joints, junctures, penetrations and transitions between materials. Discuss the products, and assemblies of products specified in the different sections to be installed by the different subcontractors.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Air Barrier System Shop Drawings; G, S, Manufacturer produced warranted air barrier system

SD-03 Product Data

Air Barrier System Product Data; G, S

SD-04 Samples

Mock-Up; G

Material Samples For Air Barrier System; G

SD-07 Certificates

Air Barrier Inspector; G, S

1.6 AIR BARRIER ENVELOPE SURFACE AREA AND LEAKAGE REQUIREMENTS

The building air barrier systems must meet the following leakage requirements. The allowable leakage rate and the maximum leakage are at a differential test pressure of 75 Pa.

Air Barrier Envelope 1	
Surface Area	75,370 square feet
Architectural Only Test:	
Allowable leakage rate	0.25 CFM/sq.ft
Maximum leakage	18,842 total CFM

1.7 AIR BARRIER INSPECTOR

Employ a designated Air Barrier Inspector on this project. The Air Barrier Inspector performs a Design Review, oversees quality control testing specified in these specifications, performs quality control air barrier inspection as specified, interfaces with the designer and product manufacturer's representatives to assure all installation requirements are met, and coordinates efforts between all workers installing or penetrating the air barrier materials. Qualification for the Air Barrier Inspector are as follows:

- a. Training and certification as an Air Barrier Installer from the Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) or other third party air barrier association.
- b. Experience coordinating and instructing personnel involved in the installation, joining, and sealing of air barrier materials and components.

Provide copies of Air Barrier Inspector qualifications 30 days after Notice to Proceed.

1.8 DESIGN REVIEW

Review the Contract Plans and Specifications and advise the Contracting Officer of any deficiencies that would prevent the construction of an effective air barrier system.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 AIR BARRIER

Provide air barrier system of compatible parts from one or several manufacturers coordinated by the contractor or provide a single warranted system provided by a primary manufacturer. The air barrier system as part of a tested exterior wall assembly must meet the conditions of acceptance as tested in accordance with NFPA 285. Materials used for roof assembly air barrier must conform to the appropriate UL and FM wind and fire requirements for the specified roof assemblies.

If a complete air barrier system from a single manufacturer is utilized, weather warranted on not warranted, the air barrier system must conform to

ASTM E2357.

Materials in the following categories as used in the air barrier system or assembly of the exterior wall system are tested and are required to conform to ASTM E2178: Self-adhered sheet membranes, fluid applied membranes, spray polyurethane foam, mechanically fastened commercial building wrap, factory bonded membranes to sheathing, and adhesive backed commercial building wrap and accessory products.

Other materials used as an air barrier such as concrete, glass, wood, metal or gypsum board may or may not conform to ASTM E2178 but are acceptable provided that when integrated into the air barrier system or assemblies that they are not subject to material or environmental induced degradation in their final produced state and once incorporated in the permanent construction.

All materials used must be identifiable through manufacturer testing data and/or literature to be compatible with all the attached or adjoining materials or substrates used in the system.

Provide Air Barrier System Shop Drawings, Material Samples for Air Barrier System and Air Barrier System Product Data.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 QUALITY CONTROL

3.1.1 Documentation and Reporting

Document the entire installation process on daily job site reports. These reports include information on the Installer, substrates, substrate preparation, products used, ambient and substrate temperature, the location of the air barrier installation, the results of the quality control procedures, and testing results.

3.1.2 Construction Mock-Up

Build mock-up prior to building envelope construction.

- a. Prepare a construction mock-up to demonstrate proper installation of the air barrier assemblies and components. Include air barrier system connections between floor and wall, wall and window, wall and roof. Also, include the sealing method between membrane joints at transitions from one material or component to another, at pipe or conduit penetrations of the wall and roof, and at duct penetration of the wall and roof. Work will not begin until the mock-up is satisfactory to the Contracting Officer.
- b. Size the mock-up to approximately 8 feet long by 8 feet high. The mock-up must be representative of primary exterior wall assemblies and glazing components including backup wall and typical penetrations as acceptable to the Contracting Officer. A corner of the actual building may be used as the mock-up.
- c. Mock-Up Tests for Adhesion: Test the mock-up of materials for adhesion in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Perform the test after the curing period recommended by the manufacturer. Record the mode of failure and the area which failed in accordance with ASTM D4541. When the air barrier material manufacturer has

established a minimum adhesion level for the product on the particular substrate, the inspection report must indicate whether this requirement has been met. Where the manufacturer has not declared a minimum adhesion value for their product/substrate combination, simply record the value.

3.1.3 Quality Control Testing And Inspection

Conduct the following tests and inspections as applicable in the presence of the Contracting Officer during installation of the air barrier system, and submit quality control reports as indicated below.

- a. Provide a Daily Report of Observations with a copy to the Contracting Officer.
- b. Inspect to assure continuity of the air barrier system throughout the building enclosure and that all gaps are covered, the covering is structurally sound, and all penetrations are sealed allowing for no infiltration or exfiltration through the air barrier system.
- c. Inspect to assure structural support of the air barrier system to withstand design air pressures.
- d. Inspect to assure masonry surfaces receiving air barrier materials are smooth, clean, and free of cavities, protrusions and mortar droppings, with mortar joints struck flush or as required by the manufacturer of the air barrier material.
- e. Inspect and test to assure site conditions for application temperature, and dryness of substrates are within guidelines.
- f. Inspect to assure substrate surfaces are properly primed if applicable and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Priming must extend at least 2 inches beyond the air barrier material to make it obvious that the primer was applied to the substrate before the air barrier material.
- g. Inspect to assure laps in materials are at least a 2-inch minimum, shingled in the correct direction or mastic applied in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, and with no fishmouths.
- h. Inspect to assure that a roller has been used to enhance adhesion. Identify any defects such as fishmouths, wrinkles, areas of lost adhesion, and improper curing. Note the intended remedy for the deficiencies.
- i. Measure application thickness of liquid applied materials to assure that manufacturer's specifications for the specific substrate are met.
- j. Inspect to assure that the correct materials are installed for compatibility.
- k. Inspect to assure proper transitions for change in direction and structural support at gaps.
- l. Inspect to assure proper connection between assemblies (membrane and sealants) for cleaning, preparation and priming of surfaces, structural support, integrity and continuity of seal.

- m. Perform adhesion tests for fluid-applied and self-adhered air barrier membranes to assure that the manufacturer's specified adhesion strength properties are met. Determine the bond strength of coatings to substrate in accordance with [ASTM D4541](#).
- n. Provide written test reports of all tests performed.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

Upon completion of inspection, testing, sample removal and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates, coatings and finishes. Protect construction exposed by or for quality control service activities, and protect repaired construction.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 27 19.01

SELF-ADHERING AIR BARRIERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR BARRIER ASSOCIATION OF AMERICA (ABAA)

ABAA Accreditation

Accreditation

ABAA QAP

Quality Assurance Program

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D146/D146M

(2004; E 2012; R 2012) Sampling and Testing Bitumen-Saturated Felts and Woven Fabrics for Roofing and Waterproofing

ASTM D412

(2016) Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers - Tension

ASTM D570

(1998; E 2010; R 2010) Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics

ASTM D903

(1998; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Peel or Stripping Strength of Adhesive Bonds

ASTM D1876

(2008; R 2015; E 2015) Standard Test Method for Peel Resistance of Adhesives (T-Peel Test)

ASTM D4263

(1983; R 20122018) Standard Test Method for Indicating Moisture in Concrete by the Plastic Sheet Method

ASTM D4541

(2017) Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Testers

ASTM E84

(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials

ASTM E154/E154M

(2008a; R 2013; E 2013) Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth Under Concrete Slabs, on Walls, or as Ground Cover

ASTM E283

(2004; R 2012) Determining the Rate of Air

Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen

ASTM E331

(2000; R 2016) Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference

ASTM E2178

(2013) Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials

ASTM E2357

(2017) Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 285

(2012) Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Coordinate the requirements of Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM, Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS and other building enclosure sections to provide a complete building air barrier system. Submit all materials, components, and assemblies of the air barrier system together as one complete submittal package.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Qualifications of Manufacturer; G

Qualifications of Installer; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Self-adhering Air Barrier; G, S

SD-03 Product Data

Self-adhering Air Barrier; G, S

Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics; G

Safety Data Sheets; G, S

SD-04 Samples

Self-adhering Air Barrier Mockup; G, S

SD-06 Test Reports

Field Peel Adhesion Test; G

Flame Propagation of Wall Assemblies; G

Flame Spread and Smoke Developed Index Ratings; G

Site Inspections and Testing; G

SD-07 Certificates

Self-adhering Air Barrier; G, S

Qualifications of Manufacturer; G, S

Qualifications of Installer; G, S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Self-adhering Air Barrier; G

Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics; G

1.4 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

For [self-adhering air barrier](#) provide the following:

1.4.1 Shop Drawings

Submit self-adhering air barrier shop drawings showing locations and extent of air barrier assemblies and details of all typical conditions, intersections with other building enclosure assemblies and materials, and membrane counterflashings. Show details for bridging of gaps in construction, treatment of inside and outside corners, expansion joints, methods of attachment of materials covering the self-adhered barrier without compromising the barrier. Indicate how miscellaneous penetrations such as conduit, pipes, electric boxes, brick ties, and similar items will be sealed.

1.4.2 Product Data

Submit manufacturer's technical data indicating compliance with performance and environmental requirements, manufacturer's printed instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrates, temperature and other limitations of installation conditions, safety requirements for installation, and [Safety Data Sheets](#). Indicate flame and smoke spread ratings for all products.

1.4.3 Mockup

Provide a mockup of the self-adhering air barrier system specified. Apply product in an area designated by the Contracting Officer. Apply an area

of not less than 54 square feet. Include all components specified as representative of the complete system. Notify the Contracting Officer a minimum of 48 hours prior to the test application. Select a test area representative of conditions to be covered including window or door openings, wall to ceiling transitions, flashings, and penetrations, as applicable.

1.4.4 Test Reports

Submit test reports indicating that field peel-adhesion tests on all materials have been performed and the changes made, if required, in order to achieve successful and lasting adhesion. Submit test reports for flame propagation of wall assemblies tested in accordance with NFPA 285. Submit test reports for flame spread and smoke developed index ratings of barrier system materials tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.5.1 Delivery

Deliver and store materials in sufficient quantity to allow for uninterrupted flow of work. Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage and store out of weather. Deliver materials to the jobsite in their original unopened packages, clearly marked with the manufacturer's name, brand designation, description of contents, and shelf life of containerized materials. Store and handle to protect from damage.

1.5.2 Storage

Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage; unload and store out of weather in manufacturer's original packaging. Store only in dry locations, not subject to open flames or sparks, and easily accessible for inspection and handling. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight. Keep materials sealed and separated from absorptive materials, such as wood and insulation.

1.6 FIELD PEEL ADHESION TEST

Perform a field peel-adhesion test on the construction mockup. Test the self-adhering air barrier for adhesion in accordance with ASTM D4541 using a Type II pull tester except use a disk that is 4 inches in diameter and cut through the membrane to separate the material attached to the dish from the surrounding material. Perform test after curing period in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. Record mode of failure and area which failed in accordance with ASTM D4541. Compare adhesion values with the manufacturer's established minimum values for the particular combination of material and substrate. Indicate on the inspection report whether the manufacturer's requirement has been met. Where the manufacturer has not declared a minimum adhesion value for their product and substrate combination, the inspector must record actual values.

1.7 AIR BARRIER TESTING

Perform air barrier testing in accordance with Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM and Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.8.1 Qualifications of Manufacturer

Submit documentation verifying that the manufacturer of the self-adhering air barrier is currently accredited by Air Barrier Association of America ([ABAA Accreditation https://www.airbarrier.org/](https://www.airbarrier.org/)).

1.8.2 Qualifications of Installer

Submit documentation verifying that installers of the self-adhering air barrier are currently certified in accordance with the [ABAA QAP](https://www.airbarrier.org/qap/) Quality Assurance Program (<https://www.airbarrier.org/qap/>).

1.9 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING

Conduct a preconstruction meeting a minimum of two weeks prior to commencing work specified in this Section. Agenda must include, at a minimum, construction and testing of mockup, sequence of construction, coordination with substrate preparation, materials approved for use, compatibility of materials, coordination with installation of adjacent and covering materials, and details of construction. Attendance is required by representatives of related trades including covering materials, substrate materials, adjacent materials, and materials and components of the air barrier system.

1.10 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

1.10.1 Temperature

Install air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures as recommended in writing by the air barrier manufacturer. Verify that the surface to receive self-adhering air barrier is dry for a minimum of 48 hours prior to the installation of the barrier. Do not apply air barrier to damp or wet substrates. Do not apply during inclement weather or when ice, frost, surface moisture, or visible dampness is present on surfaces to be covered, or when precipitation is imminent.

1.10.2 Exposure to Weather and Ultraviolet Light

Protect air barrier products from direct exposure to rain, snow, sunlight, mist, and other extreme weather conditions. Replace, at no additional cost to the government, barrier products that have been exposed to ultraviolet (sun)light longer than allowed by manufacturer's written requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SELF ADHERING AIR BARRIER

Provide minimum [0.040 inch](#) thick self-adhering, vapor retarding, air barrier membrane consisting of a cross-laminated high density polyethylene (HDPE) film, fully coated with rubberized asphalt adhesive. Provide membrane in rolls of various widths interleaved with disposable silicone release paper. Self-adhering air barrier must exhibit no visible water leakage when tested in accordance with [ASTM E331](#) and must perform as a liquid water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior any incidental condensation or water penetration. Use regular or low temperature formulation depending on site conditions, within temperature

ranges specified by manufacturer.

2.1.1 Physical Properties

- a. Air Permeance (ASTM E2178): In accordance with Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM.
- b. Air Leakage (ASTM E2357, ASTM E283): In accordance with Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM and Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS.
- c. Tensile Strength (ASTM D412 die C modified): Not less than 400 psi.
- d. Tensile Elongation (ASTM D412 die C modified): Not less than 200 percent.
- e. Puncture Resistance (ASTM E154/E154M): Not less than 40 lbs.
- f. Pliability (ASTM D146/D146M): Unaffected at minus 25 degrees F, 0.063 inch mandrel.
- g. Lap Adhesion (ASTM D1876 modified): Not less than 4.0 lbs per inch.
- h. Peel Adhesion (ASTM D903): Not less than 5.0 lbs per inch.
- i. Water Absorption (ASTM D570): Not to exceed 0.12 percent by weight.
- j. Flame propagation of wall assemblies (NFPA 285): Pass
- k. Surface Burning Characteristics (ASTM E84):
 - (1) Flame Spread Index Rating not higher than 75.
 - (2) Smoke Developed Index Rating not higher than 150.

2.2 PRIMERS, ADHESIVES, AND MASTICS

Provide primers, adhesives, mastics and other accessory materials as recommended in writing by the manufacturer of the self-adhering air barrier for adequate bonding to each type of substrate.

2.3 SHEET METAL FLASHING

Provide as specified in Section 07 60 00 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.

2.4 JOINT SEALANTS

Provide as specified in Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS. Verify compatibility with adjacent products that are or will be in contact with one another.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Before installing air barrier, examine substrates, areas, and conditions under which air barrier assemblies will be applied, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements. Ensure the following conditions are met:

- a. Surfaces are sound, dry, even, and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants.
- b. Concrete surfaces are cured and dry, smooth without large voids, spalled areas or sharp protrusions.
- c. Verify substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method in accordance with **ASTM D4263** and take suitable measures until substrate passes moisture test.
- d. Verify sealants used in sheathing are compatible with membrane proposed for use. Perform field peel adhesion test on materials to which sealants are adhered.

3.2 PREPARATION

Clean, prepare, and treat substrate in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Ensure clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air barrier application.

- a. Prime masonry and concrete substrates with conditioning primer.
- b. Prime gypsum sheathing an adequate number of coats to achieve required bond, with adequate drying time between coats.
- c. Prime wood, metal, and painted substrates with primer.
- d. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through air barrier and at protrusions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

3.3.1 Installation of Self-adhering Air Barrier

Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and the following:

- a. Apply primer at rate recommended by manufacturer prior to membrane installation. Allow primer to dry completely before membrane application. Apply as many coats as necessary for proper adhesion.
- b. When membrane is properly positioned, press into place and roll membrane with roller immediately after placement.
- c. Apply membrane sheets to shed water naturally without interception by a sheet edge, unless that edge is sealed with permanently flexible termination mastic.
- d. Position subsequent sheets of membrane applied above so that membrane overlaps the membrane sheet below by a minimum of **2-1/2 inches**, unless greater overlap is recommended by manufacturer. Roll into place with roller.
- e. Make all side laps a minimum of **2-1/2 inches** and all end laps a minimum of **5 inches**, unless greater overlap is recommended by manufacturer. Roll seams with roller.

- f. Roll membrane to adhere to substrate. Cover corners and joints with two layers of reinforcement by first applying a 12 inch width of membrane centered along the axis. Flash drains and projections with a second ply of membrane for a distance of 6 inches from the drain or projection.
- g. Seal around all penetrations through the air barrier resulting from pipes, vents, conduit, electrical fixtures, structural members, or other construction passing through it. Seal with termination mastic, extruded silicone sealant, membrane counterflashing or other sealing methods in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.
- h. Continuously connect the air barrier between walls, roof, floor and below grade assemblies to form a continuous integrated air barrier system around the entire building enclosure. Extend the air barrier membrane into rough openings such as doors, windows, louvers, and other exterior penetrations. Seal edges of barrier at junctures with rough openings.
- i. At changes in substrate plane, provide transition material (e.g. bead of sealant, mastic, extruded silicone sealant, membrane counterflashing or other material recommended by manufacturer) under membrane to eliminate all sharp 90 degree inside corners and to make a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- j. Provide mechanically fastened non-corrosive metal sheet to span gaps in substrate plane and to make a smooth transition from one plane to the other. Continuously support membrane with substrate.
- k. At deflection and control joints, provide backup for the membrane to accommodate anticipated movement.
- l. At expansion and seismic joints provide transition to the joint assemblies.
- m. Apply a bead or trowel coat of mastic along membrane seams at reverse lapped seams, rough cuts, and as recommended by the manufacturer.
- n. At end of each working day, seal top edge of membrane to substrate with termination mastic.
- o. Do not allow materials to come in contact with chemically incompatible materials.
- p. Counterflash upper edge of thru-wall flashing and air barrier. Counter flashing and thru-wall flashing are specified in Section 07 60 00 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4.1 Site Inspections and Testing

Provide site inspections and testing in accordance with ABAA protocol to verify conformance with the manufacturer's instructions, the ABAA QAP Quality Assurance Program (<https://www.airbarrier.org/qap/>), Section 07 27 10.00 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM, Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS, and this section.

- a. Conduct inspections and testing at 5, 50, and 95 percent completion of

this scope of work. Forward written [site inspections and testing](#) reports to the Contracting Officer within five working days of the inspection and test being performed.

- b. If inspections reveal any defects, promptly remove and replace defective work at no additional expense to the Government.

3.5 FIELD PEEL ADHESION TEST

Conduct in accordance with test protocol indicated in Part 1, paragraph FIELD PEEL ADHESION TEST.

3.6 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

3.6.1 Protection

3.6.1.1 Adjacent Surfaces

Protect exposed adjacent surfaces that could be damaged by primers and adhesives associated with air barrier membrane. Provide protection during application and the remainder of construction in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6.1.2 The Air Barrier Assembly

Protect finished portions of the air barrier assembly from damage during ongoing application and throughout the remainder of the construction period in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate timing of installation of materials that will cover the air barrier membrane to ensure the exposure period does not exceed that recommended by the air barrier manufacturer's written installation instructions. Remove and replace, at no additional cost to the government, membrane products that exceed the manufacturer's allowed exposure limits.

3.6.2 Cleaning

Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction and as acceptable to the primary material manufacturer.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 27 26

FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR BARRIER ASSOCIATION OF AMERICA (ABAA)

ABAA Accreditation

Accreditation

ABAA QAP

Quality Assurance Program

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C836/C836M

(2015) High Solids Content, Cold
Liquid-Applied Elastomeric Waterproofing
Membrane for Use With Separate Wearing
Course

ASTM D412

(2016) Standard Test Methods for
Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic
Elastomers - Tension

ASTM D4263

(1983; R 20122018) Standard Test Method
for Indicating Moisture in Concrete by the
Plastic Sheet Method

ASTM D4541

(2017) Standard Test Method for Pull-Off
Strength of Coatings Using Portable
Adhesion Testers

ASTM D5590

(2000; R 2010; E 2012) Standard Test
Method for Determining the Resistance of
Paint Films and Related Coatings to Fungal
Defacement by Accelerated Four-Week Agar
Plate Assay

ASTM E84

(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface
Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials

ASTM E96/E96M

(2016) Standard Test Methods for Water
Vapor Transmission of Materials

ASTM E283

(2004; R 2012) Determining the Rate of Air
Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain
Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure
Differences Across the Specimen

ASTM E331

(2000; R 2016) Standard Test Method for
Water Penetration of Exterior Windows,

Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by
Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference

ASTM E2178

(2013) Standard Test Method for Air
Permeance of Building Materials

ASTM E2357

(2017) Standard Test Method for
Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier
Assemblies

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 285

(2012) Standard Fire Test Method for
Evaluation of Fire Propagation
Characteristics of Exterior
Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies
Containing Combustible Components

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Coordinate the requirements of Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM, Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS, and other building enclosure sections to provide a complete building air barrier system. Submit all materials, components and assemblies of the air barrier system together as one complete submittal package.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Qualifications of Manufacturer; G

Qualifications of Installer; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier; G, S

SD-03 Product Data

Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier; G, S

Transition Membrane; G, S

Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics; G, S

Reinforcement; G

Safety Data Sheets; G,S

SD-04 Samples

Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier [Mockup](#); G

SD-06 Test Reports

Capillary Moisture Test; G, S

Field Peel Adhesion Test; G, S

Flame Propagation of Wall Assemblies; G

Flame Spread and Smoke Developed Index Ratings; G

Site Inspections Reports; G

SD-07 Certificates

Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier; G, S

Transition Membrane; G, S

Qualifications of Manufacturer; G

Qualifications of Installer; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier; G, S

Transition Membrane; G, S

Primers, Adhesives, and Mastics; G

1.4 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

For [fluid-applied membrane air barriers](#) provide the following:

1.4.1 Shop Drawings

Submit fluid-applied membrane air barrier shop drawings showing locations and extent of barrier assemblies, transition membranes, details of all typical conditions, intersections with other envelope assemblies and materials, and membrane counterflashings. Show details for bridging of gaps in construction, treatment of inside and outside corners, expansion joints, methods of attachment of materials covering the self-adhered barrier without compromising the barrier. Indicate how miscellaneous penetrations such as conduit, pipes, electric boxes, brick ties, and similar items will be sealed.

1.4.2 Product Data

Submit manufacturer's technical data indicating compliance with performance and environmental requirements, manufacturer's printed instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrates, temperature and other limitations of installation conditions, safety requirements for installation, and [Safety Data Sheets](#). Indicate flame and smoke spread ratings for all products.

1.4.3 Mockup

Provide a mockup of the fluid-applied membrane air barrier. Apply product in an area designated by the Contracting Officer. Apply an area of not less than 54 square feet. Include all components specified as representative of the complete system. Notify the Contracting Officer a minimum of 48 hours prior to the test application. Select a test area representative of conditions to be covered including window or door openings, wall to ceiling transitions, flashings, and penetrations, as applicable.

1.4.4 Test Reports

Submit test reports indicating that capillary moisture tests and field peel adhesion tests on all substrate materials have been performed and the changes made, if required, in order to achieve successful and lasting adhesion. Submit test reports for flame propagation of wall assemblies tested in accordance with NFPA 285. Submit test reports for flame spread and smoke developed index ratings of barrier materials tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.5.1 Delivery

Deliver and store materials in sufficient quantity to allow for uninterrupted flow of work. Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage and store out of weather. Deliver materials to the jobsite in their original unopened packages, clearly marked with the manufacturer's name, brand designation, description of contents, and shelf life of containerized materials. Store and handle to protect from damage.

1.5.2 Storage

Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage; unload and store out of weather in manufacturer's original packaging. Store only in dry locations, not subject to open flames or sparks, and easily accessible for inspection and handling. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.6 CAPILLARY MOISTURE TEST

Perform a capillary moisture test by plastic sheet method in accordance with ASTM D4263 on the construction mockup and substrate materials. Perform test after curing period as recommended by the air barrier manufacturer. Record mode of failure and area which failed in accordance with ASTM D4263. Once the air barrier material manufacturer has established a minimum adhesion or moisture level for the product on the particular substrate, indicate on the inspection report whether this requirement has been met. Where the manufacturer has not declared a minimum adhesion or moisture value for their product and substrate combination, the inspector must record actual values.

1.7 FIELD PEEL ADHESION TEST

Perform a field peel adhesion test on a construction mockup. Test the applied product for adhesion in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Perform test after curing period recommended by the manufacturer. Record mode of failure and area which failed in accordance with ASTM D4541. When the manufacturer has established a minimum adhesion

level for the product on the particular substrate, the inspection report must indicate whether this requirement has been met. Where the manufacturer has not declared a minimum adhesion value for their product/substrate combination, the inspector must record actual values.

1.8 AIR BARRIER TESTING

Perform air barrier testing in accordance with Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM and Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.9.1 Qualifications of Manufacturer

Submit documentation verifying that manufacturer of fluid-applied membrane air barrier is currently accredited by the Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA Accreditation <https://www.airbarrier.org/>).

1.9.2 Qualifications of Installer

Submit documentation verifying that installers of the fluid-applied membrane air barrier are currently certified in accordance with the ABAA QAP Quality Assurance Program (<https://www.airbarrier.org/qap/>).

1.10 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING

Conduct a preconstruction meeting a minimum of two weeks prior to commencing work specified in this Section. Agenda must include, at a minimum, construction and testing of construction mock up, sequence of construction, coordination with substrate preparation, materials approved for use, compatibility of materials, coordination with installation of adjacent and covering materials, and details of construction. Attendance is required by representatives of related trades including covering materials, substrate materials, adjacent materials, and materials and components of the fluid-applied membrane air barrier.

1.11 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

1.11.1 Temperature

Install fluid-applied membrane air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures as recommended in writing by the fluid-applied membrane air barrier manufacturer. Do not apply fluid-applied membrane air barrier to a damp or wet substrate. Do not apply during inclement weather or when ice, frost, surface moisture, or visible dampness is present on surfaces to be covered, or when precipitation is imminent.

1.11.2 Exposure to Weather

Protect fluid-applied membrane air barrier products from direct exposure to rain, snow, sunlight, mist, and other extreme weather conditions. Replace, at no additional cost to the government, barrier products that have been exposed to ultraviolet (sun)light longer than allowed by manufacturer's written requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIER

Provide a fluid-applied, vapor permeable, air barrier. This barrier must exhibit no visible water leakage when tested in accordance with [ASTM E331](#) and must perform as a liquid water drainage plane with thru-wall flashing to discharge incidental condensation and water penetration to the exterior of the building enclosure. Provide products suitable for use within temperature ranges specified by manufacturer for the location of the project.

2.1.1 Physical Properties

- a. Air Permeance ([ASTM E2178](#)): in accordance with Section [07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM](#), less than [0.004 CFM per sf at 1.57 psf](#).
- b. Air Leakage ([ASTM E2357](#), [ASTM E283](#)): in accordance with Section [07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM](#) and Section [07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS](#), less than [0.04 CFM per sf at 1.57 psf at one inch](#).
- c. Water Vapor Permeance (Vapor Permeable Membrane) ([ASTM E96/E96M](#), desiccant method A): [10.0 perms](#).
- d. Tensile Strength ([ASTM D412](#)): Not less than [138 psi](#).
- e. Elongation ([ASTM D412](#)): Not less than 300 percent.
- f. Low temperature Flexibility and Crack Bridging ([ASTM C836/C836M](#)): Pass at [minus 15 degrees F](#).
- g. Solids by Volume: minimum 50 percent.
- h. Flame propagation of wall assemblies ([NFPA 285](#)): Pass
- i. Surface Burning Characteristics ([ASTM E84](#)):
 - (1) Flame Spread Index Rating not higher than 75.
 - (2) Smoke Developed Index Rating not higher than 150.
- j. Resistance to Mold, Mildew and Fungal Growth ([ASTM D5590](#)): 0, No growth.

2.2 PRIMERS, ADHESIVES, AND MASTICS

Provide primers, adhesives, mastics, sealants and other accessories as recommended by manufacturer of fluid-applied membrane air barrier for a complete installation.

2.3 SHEET METAL FLASHING

Provide as specified in Section [07 60 00 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL](#).

2.4 JOINT SEALANTS

Provide as specified in Section [07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS](#).

2.5 REINFORCEMENT

Provide fiberglass mesh tape, or fluid-applied air barrier manufacturer's approved comparable equal product, reinforcement at seams, edges, projections and penetrations. Reinforce all joints exceeding 1/4 inch with fiberglass mesh.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Before installing fluid-applied membrane air barrier, examine substrates, areas, and conditions under which fluid-applied membrane air barrier assemblies will be applied, with installer present, for compliance with requirements. Ensure the following conditions are met:

- a. Surfaces are sound, dry, even, and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants detrimental to the adhesion of the membranes.
- b. Concrete and masonry surfaces are cured and dry, smooth without large voids, spalled areas or sharp protrusions. Do not proceed with installation until after minimum concrete curing period recommended by fluid-applied membrane air barrier manufacturer.
- c. Fill voids, gaps and spalled areas in substrate to provide an even plane. Strike masonry joints full flush.
- d. Verify substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method in accordance with ASTM D4263 and take suitable measures until substrate passes moisture test.
- e. Verify sealants used in substrates, and in joints between substrates, are compatible with fluid-applied membrane air barrier.

3.2 PREPARATION

Clean, prepare, and treat substrate in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Ensure clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for fluid-applied membrane air barrier application.

- a. Remove dust, dirt and other contaminants from joints and cracks before coating surfaces.
- b. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through fluid-applied membrane air barrier.
- c. At changes in substrate plane, provide transition material (bead of sealant, mastic, extruded silicone sealant, membrane counterflashing or other material recommended by manufacturer) under transition membrane to eliminate all sharp 90 degree inside corners and to make a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- d. Provide mechanically fastened non-corrosive metal sheet to span gaps in substrate plane and to make a smooth transition from one plane to the other. Continuously support membrane with substrate.

- e. For exterior sheathing substrates, ensure that exterior sheathing is stabilized, with corners and edges fastened with appropriate screws. Treat all joints in accordance with the air barrier manufacturer's instructions prior to application of air barrier material. Allow sufficient time for joint treatments to fully cure before application of transition membranes and fluid-applied membrane air barrier.
- f. For concrete and masonry substrates, fill all voids and holes, particularly in mortar joints, with non-shrinking grout.
- g. Mask off and cover adjacent surfaces to protect from spillage and overspray.

3.3 INSTALLATION

3.3.1 Installation of Transition Membrane

Install transition membrane materials in accordance with the details on the drawings, and the following:

- a. Install transition membrane at all required locations prior to installation of the fluid-applied membrane air barrier.
- b. Verify transition membrane is fully adhered to substrate and that its surface is clean, dry and wrinkle free prior to installation of the fluid-applied membrane air barrier.
- c. Verify transition membrane completely covers all transition areas and will provide continuity of the finished fluid-applied membrane air barrier without gaps or cracks.

3.3.2 Installation of Flashing

Counterflash upper edge of thru-wall flashing and fluid-applied air barrier. Counter flashing and thru-wall flashing are specified in Section 07 60 00 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.

3.3.3 Installation of Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier

Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and the following:

- a. Apply fluid-applied membrane air barrier in single or dual coat application by spray or roller. Apply fluid-applied membrane air barrier within manufacturer's recommended temperature range for application.
- b. Apply fluid-applied membrane air barrier at rate recommended by manufacturer to yield a wet film thickness of 90 mils.
- c. Apply fluid-applied membrane air barrier around all penetrations ensuring a complete and continuous air barrier. Lap fluid-applied membrane air barrier a minimum of 3 inch over transition membrane to seal leading edge.
- d. Seal membrane terminations, heads of mechanical fasteners, masonry tie fasteners, around penetrations, HVAC assemblies, plumbing and electrical assemblies, doors, windows, louvers, and other assemblies penetrating the fluid-applied membrane air barrier with a termination

sealant recommended by the fluid-applied membrane air barrier manufacturer.

- e. Notify the Contracting Officer and Testing Agency upon completion of fluid-applied membrane air barrier installation. Air barrier materials and assemblies must remain exposed until tested and inspected by the ABAA.
- f. Do not allow materials to come in contact with chemically incompatible materials.

3.3.4 Installation of Reinforcement

Install reinforcement at projections, corners, joints, and penetrations where applicable.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4.1 [Site Inspections](#) and Testing

Provide site inspections and testing in accordance with ABAA protocol to verify conformance with the manufacturer's instructions, the [ABAA QAP](#) Quality Assurance Program (<https://www.airbarrier.org/qap/>), Section [07 27 10.00 10](#) BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM, Section [07 05 23](#) PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS, and this section.

- a. Conduct inspections and testing at 5, 50, and 95 percent completion of this scope of work. Forward written inspection reports to the Contracting Officer within five working days of the inspection and test being performed.
- b. If the inspections reveal any defects, promptly remove and replace defective work at no additional expense to the Government.

3.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

3.5.1 Protection

Protect fluid-applied membrane air barrier assemblies from damage during application and remainder of construction in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

Coordinate installation, testing, and inspection procedures to ensure exposure period does not exceed that recommended by the product manufacturer. Remove and replace, at no additional cost to the government, membrane products that exceed manufacturer's allowed exposure limits.

3.5.2 Cleaning of Adjacent Surfaces

Clean excess product from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures as recommended in writing by the manufacturer of each type of affected construction and as acceptable to same.

3.6 CLEANUP OF SPILLS

Conduct cleanup of uncured product spillage in accordance with manufacturer's written safe handling instructions.

Combat Rescue Helicopter (CRH) Simulator Facility ADAL
Kirtland Air Force Base, New Mexico

W912PP23R0009

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 60 00

FLASHING AND SHEET METAL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.2/D1.2M (2014) Structural Welding Code - Aluminum

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A308/A308M (2010) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Terne (Lead-Tin Alloy) Coated by the Hot Dip Process

ASTM A480/A480M (2018a) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip

ASTM A653/A653M (2019) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM B32 (2008; R 2014) Standard Specification for Solder Metal

ASTM B69 (2013) Standard Specification for Rolled Zinc

ASTM B101 (2012) Standard Specification for Lead-Coated Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM B221 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

ASTM B370 (2012) Standard Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction

ASTM D41/D41M (2011; R 2016) Standard Specification for Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing, and Waterproofing

ASTM D226/D226M (2017) Standard Specification for

Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in
Roofing and Waterproofing

ASTM D1784

(2011) Standard Specification for Rigid
Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and
Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC)
Compounds

ASTM D4586/D4586M

(2007; E 2012; R 2012) Asphalt Roof
Cement, Asbestos-Free

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1793

(2012) Architectural Sheet Metal Manual,
7th Edition

SINGLE PLY ROOFING INDUSTRY (SPRI)

ANSI/SPRI RD-1

(2014) Performance Standard for Retrofit
Drains

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Finished sheet metal assemblies must form a weathertight enclosure without waves, warps, buckles, fastening stresses or distortion, while allowing for expansion and contraction without damage to the system. The sheet metal installer is responsible for cutting, fitting, drilling, and other operations in connection with sheet metal modifications required to accommodate the work of other trades. Coordinate installation of sheet metal items used in conjunction with roofing with roofing work to permit continuous, uninterrupted roofing operations.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Exposed Sheet Metal Coverings; G

Gutters; G

Downspouts; G

Expansion Joints; G

Gravel Stops and fascia; G

Splash Pans; G

Flashing for Roof Drains; G

Base Flashing; G

Counterflashing; G

Flashing at Roof Penetrations and Equipment Supports; G

Reglets; G

Scuppers; G

Copings; G

Drip Edges; G

Conductor Heads; G

Open Valley Flashing; G

Eave Flashing; G

SD-04 Samples

Finish Samples; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Instructions for Installation; G

Quality Control Plan; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Cleaning and Maintenance; G

1.4 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

1.4.1 Product Data

Indicate thicknesses, dimensions, fastenings, anchoring methods, expansion joints, and other provisions necessary for thermal expansion and contraction. Scaled manufacturer's catalog data may be submitted for factory fabricated items.

1.4.2 Finish Samples

Submit two color charts and two finish sample chips from manufacturer's standard color and finish options for each type of finish indicated.

1.4.3 Operation and Maintenance Data

Submit detailed [instructions for installation](#) and quality control during installation, [cleaning and maintenance](#), for each type of assembly indicated.

1.5 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE

Package and protect materials during shipment. Uncrate and inspect materials for damage, dampness, and wet-storage stains upon delivery to the job site. Remove from the site and replace damaged materials that cannot be restored to like-new condition. Handle sheet metal items to avoid damage to surfaces, edges, and ends. Store materials in dry,

weather-tight, ventilated areas until installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

Do not use lead, lead-coated metal, or galvanized steel. Use any metal listed by [SMACNA 1793](#) for a particular item, unless otherwise indicated. Provide materials, thicknesses, and configurations in accordance with [SMACNA 1793](#) for each material. Different items need not be of the same metal, except that contact between dissimilar metals must be avoided.

Furnish sheet metal items in [8 to 10 foot](#) lengths. Single pieces less than [8 feet](#) long may be used to connect to factory-fabricated inside and outside corners, and at ends of runs. Factory fabricate corner pieces with minimum [12 inch](#) legs. Provide accessories and other items essential to complete the sheet metal installation. Provide accessories made of the same or compatible materials as the items to which they are applied. Fabricate sheet metal items of the materials specified below and to the gage, thickness, or weight shown in Table I at the end of this section. Provide sheet metal items with mill finish unless specified otherwise. Where more than one material is listed for a particular item in Table I, each is acceptable and may be used, except as follows:

2.1.1 [Exposed Sheet Metal](#) Items

Must be of the same material. Consider the following as exposed sheet metal: gutters, including hangers; downspouts; [gravel stops and fascia](#); cap, valley, steeped, base, and eave flashings and related accessories.

2.1.2 Drainage

Do not use copper for an exposed item if drainage from that item will pass over exposed masonry, stonework or other metal surfaces. In addition to the metals listed in Table I, lead-coated copper may be used for such items.

2.1.3 Copper, Sheet and Strip

Provide in accordance with [ASTM B370](#), cold-rolled temper, H 00 (standard).

2.1.4 Lead-Coated Copper Sheet

Provide in accordance with [ASTM B101](#).

2.1.5 Lead Sheet

Provide in a minimum weight of [4 pounds per square foot](#).

2.1.6 Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized)

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#).

2.1.7 Zinc Sheet and Strip

Provide in accordance with [ASTM B69](#), Type I, a minimum of [0.024 inch](#) thick.

2.1.1.8 Stainless Steel

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A480/A480M](#), Type 302 or 304, 2D Finish, fully annealed, dead-soft temper.

2.1.1.9 Terne-Coated Steel

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A308/A308M](#), a minimum of 14 by 20 inch with minimum of 40 pound coating per double base box. [ASTM A308/A308M](#).

2.1.1.10 Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate

Provide in accordance with [ASTM B209](#) color to match adjacent surface material form alloy, and temper appropriate for use. Provide material not less than 0.065-in in thickness.

2.1.1.10.1 Alclad

When fabricated of aluminum, fabricate the following items with Alclad 3003, Alclad 3004, or Alclad 3005, clad on both sides unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Gutters, downspouts, and hangers
- b. Gravel stops and fascia
- c. Flashing

2.1.1.11 Finishes

Provide exposed exterior sheet metal and aluminum with a baked on, factory applied color coating of polyvinylidene fluoride (PVF2) or approved equal fluorocarbon coating. Dry film thickness of coatings must be 0.8 to 1.3 mils. Color to match adjacent surface material. Field applications of color coatings are prohibited and will be rejected.

2.1.1.12 Aluminum Alloy, Extruded Bars, Rods, Shapes, and Tubes

[ASTM B221](#).

2.1.1.13 Solder

Provide in accordance with [ASTM B32](#), 95-5 tin-antimony.

2.1.1.14 Reglets

2.1.1.14.1 Polyvinyl Chloride Reglets

Provide in accordance with [ASTM D1784](#), Type II, Grade 1, Class 14333-D, 0.075 inch minimum thickness.

2.1.1.14.2 Metal Reglets

Provide factory fabricated caulked type or friction type reglets with a minimum opening of 1/4 inch and a depth of 1-1/4 inch, as approved.

2.1.1.14.2.1 Caulked Reglets

Provide with rounded edges, temporary reinforcing cores, and accessories

as required for securing to adjacent construction. Provide built-up mitered corner pieces for inside and outside corners.

2.1.14.2.2 Friction Reglets

Provide with flashing receiving slots not less than $5/8$ inch deep, one inch jointing tongues, and upper and lower anchoring flanges installed at 24 inch maximum snap-lock type receiver.

2.1.15 Scuppers

Line interiors of scupper openings with sheet metal. Provide a drip edge at bottom edges with returns of not less than one inch against the face of the outside wall at the top and sides. Provide the perimeter of the lining approximately $1/2$ inch less than the perimeter of the scupper.

2.1.16 Conductor Heads

Provide conductor heads and screens in the same material as downspouts. Provide outlet tubes not less than 4 inches long.

2.1.17 Splash Pans

Provide splash pans where downspouts discharge onto roof surfaces and at locations indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, provide pans not less than 24 inches long by 18 inches wide with metal ribs across bottoms of pans. Provide sides of pans with vertical baffles not less than one inch high in the front, and 4 inches high in the back.

2.1.18 Copings

Unless otherwise indicated, provide copings in copper sheets, 8 or 10 feet long, joined by a $3/4$ inch locked and soldered seam.

2.1.19 Bituminous Plastic Cement

Provide in accordance with ASTM D4586/D4586M, Type I.

2.1.20 Roofing Felt

Provide in accordance with ASTM D226/D226M Type II.

2.1.21 Asphalt Primer

Provide in accordance with ASTM D41/D41M.

2.1.22 Fasteners

Use the same metal as, or a metal compatible with the item fastened. Use stainless steel fasteners to fasten. Confirm compatibility of fasteners and items to be fastened to avoid galvanic corrosion due to dissimilar materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Metal Roofing

3.1.1.1 Standing-seam Method

Make standing seams parallel with slope of roof. Fabricate sheets into long lengths at shop by locking short dimensions together and thoroughly soldering joints thus formed. In applying metal, turn up one edge of course at each side seam at right angles **1.5 inch**. Then install **2 by 3 inch** cleats spaced **12 inches** apart by fastening one end of each cleat to roof with two **one inch** long nails and folding roof end back over nail heads. Turn end adjoining turned-up side seam up over upstanding edge of course. Turn up adjoining edge of next course **1.75 inches** and abutting upstanding edges locked, turned over, and flattened against one side of standing seam. Make standing seams straight, rounded neatly at the top edges, and stand about **one inch** above roof deck. All sheets must be same length, except as required to complete run or maintain pattern. Locate transverse joints of each panel half way between joints in adjacent sheets. Align joints of alternate sheets horizontally to produce uniform pattern, as shown in **SMACNA 1793**.

3.1.1.2 Flat-seam Method

Lay metal so short dimension is parallel to gutter or eave lines and so water will flow over and not into seams. Make seams by turning edges of sheet **3/4 inch** and lock and solder together. If sheets are laid one at a time, secure to roof deck with cleats, using three cleats to each sheet, two on long side and one on short side. Use cleats **2 inches** wide, hooked over **3/4 inch** upturned edges of sheets, and nail to roof deck with two **one inch** long nails. Turn back roof end of cleat over nail heads before next sheet is applied. If desired, sheets may be made into long lengths at shop by locking short dimensions together and soldering seams thus formed. Turn long lengths **3/4 inch**, and secure each length to roof deck by cleats spaced **12 inches** apart. Mallet and solder seams after pans are in place. All sheets to be same length, except as required to complete run or maintain pattern. Locate transverse joints of each panel half way between joints in adjacent sheets. Align joints of alternate sheets horizontally to produce uniform pattern, as shown in **SMACNA 1793**.

3.1.2 Workmanship

Make lines and angles sharp and true. Free exposed surfaces from visible wave, warp, buckle, and tool marks. Fold back exposed edges neatly to form a **1/2 inch** hem on the concealed side. Make sheet metal exposed to the weather watertight with provisions for expansion and contraction.

Make surfaces to receive sheet metal plumb and true, clean, even, smooth, dry, and free of defects and projections. For installation of items not shown in detail or not covered by specifications conform to the applicable requirements of **SMACNA 1793**, Architectural Sheet Metal Manual. Provide sheet metal flashing in the angles formed where roof decks abut walls, curbs, ventilators, pipes, or other vertical surfaces and wherever indicated and necessary to make the work watertight. Join sheet metal items together as shown in Table II.

3.1.3 Nailing

Confine nailing of sheet metal generally to sheet metal having a maximum width of 18 inches. Confine nailing of flashing to one edge only. Space nails evenly not over 3 inch on center and approximately 1/2 inch from edge unless otherwise specified or indicated. Face nailing will not be permitted. Where sheet metal is applied to other than wood surfaces, include in shop drawings, the locations for sleepers and nailing strips required to secure the work.

3.1.4 Cleats

Provide cleats for sheet metal 18 inches and over in width. Space cleats evenly not over 12 inches on center unless otherwise specified or indicated. Unless otherwise specified, provide cleats of 2 inches wide by 3 inches long and of the same material and thickness as the sheet metal being installed. Secure one end of the cleat with two nails and the cleat folded back over the nailheads. Lock the other end into the seam. Where the fastening is to be made to concrete or masonry, use screws and drive in expansion shields set in concrete or masonry. Pre-tin cleats for soldered seams.

3.1.5 Bolts, Rivets, and Screws

Install bolts, rivets, and screws where indicated or required. Provide compatible washers where required to protect surface of sheet metal and to provide a watertight connection. Provide mechanically formed joints in aluminum sheets 0.040 inches or less in thickness.

3.1.6 Seams

Straight and uniform in width and height with no solder showing on the face.

3.1.6.1 Flat-lock Seams

Finish not less than 3/4 inch wide.

3.1.6.2 Lap Seams

Finish soldered seams not less than one inch wide. Overlap seams not soldered, not less than 3 inches.

3.1.6.3 Loose-Lock Expansion Seams

Not less than 3 inches wide; provide minimum one inch movement within the joint. Completely fill the joints with the specified sealant, applied at not less than 1/8 inch thick bed.

3.1.6.4 Standing Seams

Not less than one inch high, double locked without solder.

3.1.6.5 Flat Seams

Make seams in the direction of the flow.

3.1.7 Soldering

Where soldering is specified, apply to copper, terne-coated stainless steel, zinc-coated steel, and stainless steel items. Pre-tin edges of sheet metal before soldering is begun. Seal the joints in aluminum sheets of 0.040 inch or less in thickness with specified sealants. Do not solder aluminum.

3.1.7.1 Edges

Scrape or wire-brush the edges of lead-coated material to be soldered to produce a bright surface. Flux brush the seams in before soldering. Treat with soldering acid flux the edges of stainless steel to be pre-tinned. Seal the joints in aluminum sheets of 0.040 inch or less in thickness with specified sealants. Do not solder aluminum.

3.1.8 Welding and Mechanical Fastening

Use welding for aluminum of thickness greater than 0.040 inch. Aluminum 0.040 inch or less in thickness must be butted and the space backed with formed flashing plate; or lock joined, mechanically fastened, and filled with sealant as recommended by the aluminum manufacturer.

3.1.8.1 Welding of Aluminum

Use welding of the inert gas, shield-arc type. For procedures, appearance and quality of welds, and the methods used in correcting welding work, conform to AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

3.1.8.2 Mechanical Fastening of Aluminum

Use No. 12, aluminum alloy, sheet metal screws or other suitable aluminum alloy or stainless steel fasteners. Drive fasteners in holes made with a No. 26 drill in securing side laps, end laps, and flashings. Space fasteners 12 inches maximum on center. Where end lap fasteners are required to improve closure, locate the end lap fasteners not more than 2 inches from the end of the overlapping sheet.

3.1.9 Protection from Contact with Dissimilar Materials

3.1.9.1 Copper or Copper-bearing Alloys

Paint with heavy-bodied bituminous paint surfaces in contact with dissimilar metal, or separate the surfaces by means of moistureproof building felts.

3.1.9.2 Aluminum

Do not allow aluminum surfaces in direct contact with other metals except stainless steel, zinc, or zinc coating. Where aluminum contacts another metal, paint the dissimilar metal with a primer followed by two coats of aluminum paint. Where drainage from a dissimilar metal passes over aluminum, paint the dissimilar metal with a non-lead pigmented paint. Aluminum may be used over concrete construction, provided that required reglets are of stainless steel and aluminum surface in contact with concrete or masonry is coated with bituminous paint or zinc chromate primer.

3.1.9.3 Metal Surfaces

Paint surfaces in contact with mortar, concrete, or other masonry materials with alkali-resistant coatings such as heavy-bodied bituminous paint.

3.1.9.4 Wood or Other Absorptive Materials

Paint surfaces that may become repeatedly wet and in contact with metal with two coats of aluminum paint or a coat of heavy-bodied bituminous paint.

3.1.10 Expansion and Contraction

Provide expansion and contraction joints at not more than 32 foot intervals for aluminum and at not more than 40 foot intervals for other metals. Provide an additional joint where the distance between the last expansion joint and the end of the continuous run is more than half the required interval. Space joints evenly. Join extruded aluminum gravel stops and fascia by expansion and contraction joints spaced not more than 12 feet apart.

3.1.11 Base Flashing

Extend up vertical surfaces of the flashing not less than 8 inches and not less than 4 inches under the roof covering. Where finish wall coverings form a counterflashing, extend the vertical leg of the flashing up behind the applied wall covering not less than 6 inches. Overlap the flashing not less than 3 inches. Fasten the strips at their upper edge to the deck. Horizontal flashing at vertical surfaces must extend vertically above the roof surface and fastened at their upper edge to the deck a minimum of 6 inches on center with hex headed, galvanized shielded screws a minimum of 2 inch lap of any surface. Solder end laps and provide for expansion and contraction. Extend the metal flashing over crickets at the up-slope side of vertical surfaces extending through sloping roofs, the metal flashings. Extend the metal flashings onto the roof covering not less than 4.5 inches at the lower side of vertical surfaces extending through the roof decks. Install and fit the flashings so as to be completely weathertight. Provide factory-fabricated base flashing for interior and exterior corners. Do not use metal base flashing on built-up roofing.

3.1.12 Counterflashing

Except where indicated or specified otherwise, insert counterflashing in reglets located from 9 to 10 inches above roof decks, extend down vertical surfaces over upturned vertical leg of base flashings not less than 3 inches. Fold the exposed edges of counterflashings 1/2 inch. Where stepped counterflashings are required, they may be installed in short lengths a minimum 8 inches by 8 inches or may be of the preformed single piece type. Provide end laps in counterflashings not less than 3 inches and make it weathertight with plastic cement. Do not make lengths of metal counterflashings exceed 10 feet. Form flashings to the required shapes before installation. Factory form corners not less than 12 inches from the angle. Secure the flashings in the reglets with lead wedges and space not more than 18 inches apart; on short runs, place wedges closer together. Fill caulked-type reglets or raked joints which receive counterflashing with caulking compound. Turn up the concealed edge of counterflashings built into masonry or concrete walls not less than 1/4

inch and extend not less than 2 inches into the walls. Install counterflashing to provide a spring action against base flashing. Where bituminous base flashings are provided, extend down the counter flashing as close as practicable to the top of the cant strip. Factory form counter flashing to provide spring action against the base flashing.

3.1.13 Metal Reglets

Keep temporary cores in place during installation. Ensure factory fabricated caulked type or friction type, reglets have a minimum opening of 1/4 inch and a minimum depth of 1-1/4 inch, when installed.

3.1.13.1 Caulked Reglets

Wedge flashing in reglets with lead wedges every 18 inches, caulked full and solid with an approved compound.

3.1.13.2 Friction Reglets

Install flashing snap lock receivers at 24 inches on center maximum. When flashing has been inserted the full depth of the slot, caulk the slot, lock with wedges, and fill with sealant.

3.1.14 Polyvinyl Chloride Reglets for Temporary Construction

Rigid polyvinyl chloride reglets may be provided in lieu of metal reglets for temporary construction.

3.1.15 Gravel Stops and fascia

Prefabricate in the shapes and sizes indicated and in lengths not less than 8 feet. Extend flange at least 4 inches onto roofing. Provide prefabricated, mitered corners internal and external corners. Install gravel stops and fascia after all plies of the roofing membrane have been applied, but before the flood coat of bitumen is applied. Prime roof flange of gravel stops and fascia on both sides with an asphalt primer. After primer has dried, set flange on roofing membrane and strip-in. Nail flange securely to wood nailer with large-head, barbed-shank roofing nails 1.5 inch long spaced not more than 3 inches on center, in two staggered rows.

3.1.15.1 Edge Strip

Hook the lower edge of fascia at least 3/4 inch over a continuous strip of the same material bent outward at an angle not more than 45 degrees to form a drip. Nail hook strip to a wood nailer at 6 inches maximum on center. Where fastening is made to concrete or masonry, use screws spaced 12 inches on center driven in expansion shields set in the concrete or masonry. Where horizontal wood nailers are slotted to provide for insulation venting, install strips to prevent obstruction of vent slots. Where necessary, install strips over 1/16 inch thick compatible spacer or washers.

3.1.15.2 Joints

Leave open the section ends of gravel stops and fascia 1/4 inch and backed with a formed flashing plate, mechanically fastened in place and lapping each section end a minimum of 4 inches set laps in plastic cement. Face nailing will not be permitted. Install prefabricated aluminum gravel

stops and fascia in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and details.

3.1.16 Metal Drip Edges

Provide a metal drip edge, designed to allow water run-off to drip free of underlying construction, at eaves and rakes prior to the application of roofing shingles. Apply directly on the wood deck at the eaves and over the underlay along the rakes. Extend back from the edge of the deck not more than 3 inches and secure with compatible nails spaced not more than 10 inches on center along upper edge.

3.1.17 Gutters

The hung type of shape indicated and supported on underside by brackets that permit free thermal movement of the gutter. Provide gutters in sizes indicated complete with mitered corners, end caps, outlets, brackets, and other accessories necessary for installation. Bead with hemmed edge or reinforce the outer edge of gutter with a stiffening bar not less than 3/4 by 3/16 inch of material compatible with gutter. Fabricate gutters in sections not less than 8 feet. Lap the sections a minimum of one inch in the direction of flow or provide with concealed splice plate 6 inches minimum. Join the gutters, other than aluminum, by riveted and soldered joints. Join aluminum gutters with riveted sealed joints. Provide expansion-type slip joints midway between outlets. Install gutters below slope line of the roof so that snow and ice can slide clear. Support gutters by cleats spaced not less than 36 inches apart. Adjust gutters to slope uniformly to outlets, with high points occurring midway between outlets. Fabricate hangers and fastenings from compatible metals.

3.1.18 Downspouts

Space supports for downspouts according to the manufacturer's recommendation for the masonry or steel substrate. Types, shapes and sizes are indicated. Provide complete including elbows and offsets. Provide downspouts in approximately 10 foot lengths. Provide end joints to telescope not less than 1/2 inch and lock longitudinal joints. Provide gutter outlets with wire ball strainers for each outlet. Provide strainers to fit tightly into outlets and be of the same material used for gutters. Keep downspouts not less than one inch away from walls. Fasten to the walls at top, bottom, and at an intermediate point not to exceed 5 feet on center with leader straps or concealed rack-and-pin type fasteners. Form straps and fasteners of metal compatible with the downspouts.

3.1.18.1 Terminations

Neatly fit into the drainage connection the downspouts terminating in drainage lines and fill the joints with a portland cement mortar cap sloped away from the downspout. Provide downspouts terminating in splash blocks with elbow-type fittings. Provide splash pans as specified.

3.1.19 Flashing for Roof Drains

Provide a 30 inches square sheet indicated. Taper insulation to drain from 24 inches out. Set flashing on finished felts in a full bed of asphalt roof cement, ASTM D4586/D4586M. Heavily coat the drain flashing ring with asphalt roof cement. Clamp the roof membrane, flashing sheet, and stripping felt in the drain clamping ring. Secure clamps so that felts

and drain flashing are free of wrinkles and folds. Retrofit roof drains must conform to ANSI/SPRI RD-1.

3.1.20 Scuppers

Extend the scupper liner through and project outside of, the wall it penetrates to form a bottom drip edge against the face of the wall. Fold outside edges under 1/2 inch on all sides. Join the top and sides of the lining on the roof deck side to a closure flange by a locked and soldered joint. Join the bottom edge by a locked and soldered joint to the closure flange, where required, form with a ridge to act as a gravel stop around the scupper inlet. Provide surfaces to receive the scupper lining and coat with bituminous plastic cement.

3.1.21 Conductor Heads

Set the depth of the top opening equal to two-thirds of the width or the conductor head. Flat-lock solder seams. Where conductor heads are used in conjunction with scuppers, set the conductor a minimum of 2 inches wider than the scupper. Attach conductor heads to the wall with masonry fasteners. Securely fasten screens to heads.

3.1.22 Splash Pans

Install splash pans lapped with horizontal roof flanges not less than 4 inches wide to form a continuous surface. Bend the rear flange of the pan to contour of can't strip and extend up 6 inches under the side wall covering or to height of base flashing under counterflashing. Bed the pans and roof flanges in plastic bituminous cement and strip-flash as specified.

3.1.23 Open Valley Flashing

Provide valley flashing free of longitudinal seams, of width sufficient to extend not less than 6 inches under the roof covering on each side. Provide a 1/2 inch fold on each side of the valley flashing. Lap the sheets not less than 6 inches in the direction of flow and secure to roofing construction with cleats attached to the fold on each side. Nail the tops of sheets to roof sheathing. Space the cleats not more than 12 inches on center. Provide exposed flashing not less than 4 inches in width at the top and increase one inch in width for each additional 8 feet in length. Where the slope of the valley is 4.5 inches or less per foot, or the intersecting roofs are on different slopes, provide an inverted V-joint, one inch high, along the centerline of the valley; and extend the edge of the valley sheets 8 inches under the roof covering on each side.

3.1.24 Eave Flashing

One piece in width, applied in 8 to 10 foot lengths with expansion joints spaced as specified in paragraph EXPANSION AND CONTRACTION. Provide a 3/4 inch continuous fold in the upper edge of the sheet to engage cleats spaced not more than 10 inches on center. Locate the upper edge of flashing not less than 18 inches from the outside face of the building, measured along the roof slope. Fold lower edge of the flashing over and loose-lock into a continuous edge strip on the fascia. Where eave flashing intersects metal valley flashing, secure with one inch flat locked joints with cleats that are 10 inches on center.

3.1.25 Sheet Metal Covering on Flat, Sloped, or Curved Surfaces

Except as specified or indicated otherwise, cover and flash all minor flat, sloped, or curved surfaces such as crickets, bulkheads, dormers and small decks with metal sheets of the material used for flashing; maximum size of sheets, **16 by 18 inches**. Fasten sheets to sheathing with metal cleats. Lock seams and solder. Lock aluminum seams as recommended by aluminum manufacturer. Provide an underlayment of roofing felt for all sheet metal covering.

3.1.26 Expansion Joints

Provide expansion joints for roofs, walls, and floors as indicated. Provide expansion joints in continuous sheet metal at **40 foot** intervals for copper and stainless steel and at **32 foot** intervals for aluminum, aluminum gravel stops and fascia which must have expansion joints at not more than **12 foot** spacing. Provide evenly spaced joints. Provide an additional joint where the distance between the last expansion joint and the end of the continuous run is more than half the required interval spacing. Conform to the requirements of Table I.

3.1.26.1 Roof Expansion Joints

Consist of curb with wood nailing members on each side of joint, bituminous base flashing, metal counterflashing, and metal joint cover. Bituminous base flashing is specified in Roofing Section. Provide counterflashing as specified in paragraph COUNTERFLASHING, except as follows: Provide counterflashing with vertical leg of suitable depth to enable forming into a horizontal continuous cleat. Secure the inner edge to the nailing member. Make the outer edge projection not less than **one inch** for flashing on one side of the expansion joint and be less than the width of the expansion joint plus **one inch** for flashing on the other side of the joint. Hook the expansion joint cover over the projecting outer edges of counterflashing. Provide roof joint with a joint cover of the width indicated. Hook and lock one edge of the joint cover over the shorter projecting flange of the continuous cleat, and the other edge hooked over and loose locked with the longer projecting flange. Joints are specified in Table II.

3.1.26.2 Floor and Wall Expansion Joints

Provide U-shape with extended flanges for expansion joints in concrete and masonry walls and in floor slabs.

3.1.27 Flashing at Roof Penetrations and Equipment Supports

Provide metal flashing for all pipes, ducts, and conduits projecting through the roof surface and for equipment supports, guy wire anchors, and similar items supported by or attached to the roof deck.

3.1.28 Single Pipe Vents

See Table I, footnote (d). Set flange of sleeve in bituminous plastic cement and nail **3 inches** on center. Bend the top of sleeve over and extend down into the vent pipe a minimum of **2 inches**. For long runs or long rises above the deck, where it is impractical to cover the vent pipe with lead, use a two-piece formed metal housing. Set metal housing with a metal sleeve having a **4 inches** roof flange in bituminous plastic cement and nailed **3 inches** on center. Extend sleeve a minimum of **8 inches** above

the roof deck and lapped a minimum of 3 inches by a metal hood secured to the vent pipe by a draw band. Seal the area of hood in contact with vent pipe with an approved sealant.

3.1.29 Stepped Flashing

Provide stepped flashing where sloping roofs surfaced with shingles abut vertical surfaces. Place separate pieces of base flashing in alternate shingle courses.

3.1.30 Copings

Provide coping with locked and soldered seam. Terminate outer edges in edge strips. Install with sealed lap joints as indicated.

3.2 PAINTING

Touch ups in the field may be applied only after metal substrates have been cleaned and pretreated in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and products.

Field-paint sheet metal for separation of dissimilar materials.

3.2.1 Aluminum Surfaces

Clean with solvent and apply one coat of zinc-molybdate primer and one coat of aluminum paint.

3.3 CLEANING

Clean exposed sheet metal work at completion of installation. Remove grease and oil films, handling marks, contamination from steel wool, fittings and drilling debris, and scrub-clean. Free the exposed metal surfaces of dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, and solder or weld marks.

3.4 REPAIRS TO FINISH

Scratches, abrasions, and minor surface defects of finish may be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and as approved. Repair damaged surfaces caused by scratches, blemishes, and variations of color and surface texture. Replace items which cannot be repaired.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Establish and maintain a Quality Control Plan for sheet metal used in conjunction with roofing to assure compliance of the installed sheet metalwork with the contract requirements. Remove work that is not in compliance with the contract and replace or correct. Include quality control, but not be limited to, the following:

- a. Observation of environmental conditions; number and skill level of sheet metal workers; condition of substrate.
- b. Verification that specified material is provided and installed.
- c. Inspection of sheet metalwork, for proper size(s) and thickness(es), fastening and joining, and proper installation.

3.5.1 Procedure

Submit for approval prior to start of roofing work. Include a checklist of points to be observed. Document the actual quality control observations and inspections. Furnish a copy of the documentation to the Contracting Officer at the end of each day.

TABLE I. SHEET METAL WEIGHTS, THICKNESSES, AND GAGES			
Sheet Metal Items	Aluminum, inch	Stainless Steel, inch	Zinc-Coated Steel, U.S. Std. Gage
Building Expansion Joints			
Cover	.032	.015	24
Waterstop-bellows or flanged, U-type.	-	.015	-
Covering on minor flat, pitched or curved surfaces	.040	.018	-
Downspouts and leaders	.032	.015	24
Downspout clips and anchors	.040 clip .125 anchor	-	-
Downspout straps, 2-inch	.060	.050	-
Conductor heads	.032	.015	-
Scupper lining	.032	.015	-
Strainers, wire diameter or gage	.144 diameter	.109 diameter	
Flashings:			
Base	.040	.018	24
Cap (Counter-flashing)	.032	.015	26
Eave	-	.015	24

TABLE I. SHEET METAL WEIGHTS, THICKNESSES, AND GAGES			
Sheet Metal Items	Aluminum, inch	Stainless Steel, inch	Zinc-Coated Steel, U.S. Std. Gage
Spandrel beam	-	.010	-
Bond barrier	-	.015	-
Stepped	.032	.015	-
Valley	.032	.015	-
Roof drain			
Pipe vent sleeve (d)			
Coping	-	-	-
Gravel stops and fascia:			
Extrusions	.075	-	-
Sheets, corrugated	.032	.015	-
Sheets, smooth	.050	.018	24
Edge strip	.050	.025	-
Gutters:			
Gutter section	.032	.015	24
Continuous cleat	.032	.015	24
Hangers, dimensions	1 inch by .080 inch (c)	1 inch by .037 inch	-
Joint Cover plates (See Table II)	.032	.015	24
Reglets (c)	-	.010	-
Splash pans	.040	.018	-
(a) Brass.			
(b) May be lead weighing 4 pounds per square foot.			
(c) May be polyvinyl chloride.			

TABLE I. SHEET METAL WEIGHTS, THICKNESSES, AND GAGES			
Sheet Metal Items	Aluminum, inch	Stainless Steel, inch	Zinc-Coated Steel, U.S. Std. Gage
(d) 2.5 pound minimum lead sleeve with 4 inch flange. Where lead sleeve is impractical, refer to paragraph SINGLE PIPE VENTS for optional material.			

TABLE II. SHEET METAL JOINTS			
TYPE OF JOINT			
Item Designation	Copper, Terne-Coated Stainless Steel, Zinc-Coated Steel and Stainless Steel	Aluminum	Remarks
Joint cap for building expansion seam, cleated joint at roof	1.25 inch single lock, standing seam, cleated	1.25 inch single lock, standing	--
Flashings			
Base	One inch 3 inch lap for expansion joint	One inch flat locked, soldered; sealed; 3 inch lap for expansion joint	Aluminum manufacturer's recommended hard setting sealant for locked aluminum joints. Fill each metal expansion joint with a joint sealing compound.
Cap-in reglet	3 inch lap	3 inch lap	Seal groove with joint sealing compound.

TABLE II. SHEET METAL JOINTS			
TYPE OF JOINT			
Item Designation	Copper, Terne-Coated Stainless Steel, Zinc-Coated Steel and Stainless Steel	Aluminum	Remarks
Reglets	Butt joint	--	Seal reglet groove with joint sealing compound.
Eave	One inch flat locked, cleated. One inch loose locked, sealed expansion joint, cleated.	One inch flat locked, locked, cleated one inch loose locked, sealed expansion joints, cleated	Same as base flashing.
Stepped	3 inch lap	3 inch lap	--
Valley	6 inch lap cleated	6 inch lap cleated	--
Edge strip	Butt	Butt	--
Gravel stops:			
Extrusions	--	Butt with 1/2 inch space	Use sheet flashing beneath and a cover plate
Sheet, smooth	Butt with 1/4 inch space	Butt with 1/4 inch space	Use sheet flashing backup plate.
Sheet, corrugated	Butt with 1/4 inch space	Butt with 1/4 inch space	Use sheet flashing beneath and a cover plate or a combination unit
Gutters	1.5 inch lap, riveted and soldered	One inch flat locked riveted and sealed	Aluminum producers recommended hard setting sealant for locked aluminum joints.
(a) Provide a 3 inch lap elastomeric flashing with manufacturer's recommended sealant.			
(b) Seal Polyvinyl chloride reglet with manufacturer's recommended sealant.			

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 61 15.00 20

ALUMINUM STANDING SEAM ROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA ADM (2015) Aluminum Design Manual

AA ASM-35 (2000) Specifications for Aluminum Sheet Metal Work in Building Construction, Construction Manual Series Section 5

AMERICAN IRON AND STEEL INSTITUTE (AISI)

AISI SG03-3 (2002; Suppl 2001-2004; R 2008)
Cold-Formed Steel Design Manual Set

AMERICAN WOOD COUNCIL (AWC)

AWC NDS (2015) National Design Specification (NDS)
for Wood Construction

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM D226/D226M (2017) Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing

ASTM D522/D522M (2014) Mandrel Bend Test of Attached Organic Coatings

ASTM D523 (2014; R 2018) Standard Test Method for Specular Gloss

ASTM D968 (2017) Standard Test Methods for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by Falling Abrasive

ASTM D2247 (2015) Testing Water Resistance of Coatings in 100% Relative Humidity

ASTM D2565 (2016) Standard Practice for Xenon Arc Exposure of Plastics Intended for Outdoor Applications

ASTM D4214 (2007; R 2015) Standard Test Method for

Evaluating the Degree of Chalking of
Exterior Paint Films

ASTM E84

(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface
Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials

ASTM E330/E330M

(2014) Structural Performance of Exterior
Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain
Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure
Difference

ASTM E1592

(2005; R 2012) Structural Performance of
Sheet Metal Roof and Siding Systems by
Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference

ASTM G152

(2013) Operating Open Flame Carbon Arc
Light Apparatus for Exposure of
Nonmetallic Materials

ASTM G153

(2013) Operating Enclosed Carbon Arc Light
Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic
Materials

NATIONAL ROOFING CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (NRCA)

NRCA CONDET

(2014) Construction Details Manual

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION
(SMACNA)

SMACNA 1793

(2012) Architectural Sheet Metal Manual,
7th Edition

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY (DOE)

Energy Star

(1992; R 2006) Energy Star Energy
Efficiency Labeling System (FEMP)

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Field-Formed Seam

Seams of panels so configured that when adjacent sheets are installed the seam is sealed utilizing mechanical or hand seamers. Crimped (45 degree bend), roll formed (180 degree bend), double roll formed (2 - 180 degree bend), and roll and lock systems are types of field-formed seam systems.

1.2.2 Snap Together Seam

Panels so configured that the male and female portions of the seam interlock through the application of foot pressure or tamping with a mallet. Snap-on cap configurations are a type of snap together system.

1.2.3 Pre-Formed

Formed to the final, less field-formed seam, profile and configuration in the factory.

1.2.4 Field-Formed

Formed to the final, less field-formed seam, profile and configuration at the site of work prior to installation.

1.2.5 Roofing System

The roofing system is defined as the assembly of roofing components, including roofing panels, flashing, fasteners, and accessories which, when assembled properly result in a watertight installation.

1.2.6 SSMRS

Standing Seam Metal Roof System (SSMRS) is abbreviation of the entire roof system specified herein with all components and parts coming from a single manufacturer's system.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.3.1 Design Requirements

- a. Provide continuous length panels with no joints or seams, except where indicated. Individual panels must be removable for replacement of damaged material.
- b. There must be no exposed or penetrating fasteners except where shown on the approved shop drawings. Fasteners into wood must be stainless steel sheet metal screws with full length threads. Fasteners into steel must be stainless steel or cadmium plated stainless steel screws inserted into predrilled holes. Length and diameter of screws must be sufficient to meet the design loads with a suitable factor of safety for the material to which the roofing components are attached. Calculate fastener capacity in accordance with [AISI SG03-3](#), [AA ADM](#) or [AWC NDS](#) as applicable.
- c. Roof panel standing seam must include a capillary break and be mechanically locked closed by the manufacturer's locking tool. The seam must include a continuous sealant when required by the manufacturer to withstand the rainfall and wind specified in paragraph MANUFACTURER'S REQUIREMENTS.
- d. Roof panel anchor clips must be concealed and designed to allow for thermal movement of the panels, except where specific fixed points are indicated.
- e. The system must resist the positive and negative loads specified herein in accordance with "Sheet Building Sheathing Design Guide" of the [AA ADM](#). Determine capacity in accordance with principles of [ASTM E330/E330M](#) modified as follows:
 - (1) Test panels must be production material of the type proposed for use. Use either full length or partial length panels with attachment representative of the main part of the roof.
 - (2) Test specimens must be five panels wide, span one or more supports, and must have no end or edge attachment or seals that will restrict crosswise movement of the panels under load. Do not bridge longitudinal seams with tape or film that can restrict separation.

(3) Test panels to failure. Report load at failure.

- f. Panels must support walking loads without excessive distortion or telegraphing of the structural supports. Panels must support a 250 pound load concentrated on a 4 square inch area at the center of the panel without buckling or permanent distortion.

1.3.2 Performance Requirements

1.3.2.1 Wind Loads

Resistance to wind uplift generated by winds of 105 mph. The roof system and attachments must resist the following wind loads (psf) with a factor of safety appropriate for the material holding the anchor:

	Positive	Negative
At rakes	22.9	62.5
At ridge	22.9	62.5
At building corners	22.9	65.5
At central areas	22.9	50.3

1.3.2.2 Resistance to Water Infiltration

Roofing system must show no infiltration at seams, edges, flashings, counterflashings and penetrations when subjected to a rainfall of 5 inches per hour with 105 mph wind.

1.3.2.3 Thermal Movement

The system must be capable of withstanding thermal movement based on a temperature range of 10 degrees F below design low air temperature and 140 degrees F for mill finish and light colors.

1.3.2.4 Deflection

Panel deflection must not exceed L/140.

1.3.2.5 Structural Performance

The structural performance test methods and requirements must be in accordance with ASTM E1592.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Roofing Panels; G

Submit drawings as necessary to supplement the instructions and diagrams. Include design and erection drawings containing an isometric view of the roof showing the design uplift pressures and dimensions of edge, ridge and corner zones. Show typical and special conditions including flashings, accessory installation, materials and thicknesses, all dimensions, anchoring methods, sealant locations, sealant tape locations, fastener layout, sizes, spacing, provisions for thermal movement, terminations, penetrations, and attachments. Details of installation must be in accordance with the manufacturer's Standard Instructions and details or the [SMACNA 1793](#). The manufacturer's technical engineering department must approve the drawings before they are submitted.

SD-03 Product Data

Roofing Panels; G

[Energy Star Label for Aluminum Roofing Product; S](#)

[Recycled Content of Aluminum Roofing Products; S](#)

[Attachment Clips](#)

[Closures](#)

[Accessories](#)

[Underlayment](#)

Sample [Warranty Certificate; G](#)

Submit for all materials to be provided. Submit data sufficient to indicate conformance to specified requirements.

SD-04 Samples

Roofing Panels

Submit a 12 inch long section of typical panel in color specified.

When colors are not indicated, submit samples of not less than six different manufacturer's standard colors for selection.

Accessories

Submit each type of accessory item used in the project including, but not limited to: each type of anchor clip, closures, fasteners and leg clamps.

SD-05 Design Data

[Load Calculations; G](#)

SD-06 Test Reports

Structural Performance; G

Panel Finish; G

Submit reports of the tests required by this section.

Manufacturer's Field Inspection; G

Submit manufacturer's technical representative's inspection reports as required in paragraph MANUFACTURER'S FIELD INSPECTION.

SD-07 Certificates

Technical Representative

Qualification of Installer

Submit documentation proving the installer is factory-trained, has the specified experience and is authorized by the manufacturer to install the products specified.

Coil Stock Compatibility; G

Provide certification of coil compatibility with roll forming machinery to be used for forming panels without warping, waviness, and rippling not part of panel profile; to be done without damage, abrasion or marking of finish coating.

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Sealant

Submit manufacturer's sealant requirements for roofing.

Installation Manual; G

Submit manufacturer's printed installation manual/instructions and standard details.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Information Card

For each roofing installation, submit a typewritten card or photoengraved aluminum card containing the information listed on Form 1 located at the end of this section.

Warranty

1.5 LOAD CALCULATIONS

Submit load calculations for the following by a structural engineer registered as a Professional Engineer in any jurisdiction verifying that the system supplied meets the design loads indicated. Coordinate calculations with manufacturer's test results.

- a. Wind load uplift design pressure at roof locations specified in paragraph WIND LOADS.

- b. Clip spacing and allowable load per clip calculations.
- c. The fastening of clips to structure or intermediate support spacing.
- d. Intermediate support spacing and fastening to structure when required.
- e. Allowable panel span at anchorage spacing indicated.
- f. Safety factor used in determining loading.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Preroofing Conference

After submittals are received and approved but before roofing and insulation work, including associated work, is preformed, the Contractor must hold a preroofing conference to review the following:

- a. The drawings and specifications
- b. Procedure for on site inspection and acceptance of the roofing substrate and pertinent structural details relating to the roofing system
- c. Contractor's plan for coordination of the work of the various trades involved in providing the roofing system and other components secured to the roofing
- d. Safety requirements.

The preroofing conference must be attended by the Contractor and personnel directly responsible for the roofing and insulation installation, mechanical and electrical work, and the roofing manufacturer's technical representative. Conflicts among those attending the preroofing conference must be resolved and confirmed in writing before roofing work, including associated work, is begun. Prepare written minutes of the preroofing conference and submit to the Contracting Officer.

1.6.2 Manufacturer's [Technical Representative](#)

The representative must have authorization from manufacturer to approve field changes and be thoroughly familiar with the products and with installations in the geographical area where construction will take place. The manufacturer's representative must be an employee of the manufacturer with at least 5 years experience in installing the roof system. The representative must be available to perform field inspections and attend meetings as required herein, and as requested by the Contracting Officer.

1.6.3 [Qualification of Installer](#)

The roofing system installer must be factory-trained, approved by the aluminum roofing system manufacturer to install the system, and must have a minimum of three years experience as an approved applicator with that manufacturer. The applicator must have applied five installations of similar size and scope to this project within the previous 3 years.

1.6.4 Single Source

Provide roofing panels, clips, closures and other accessories from a single manufacturer.

1.6.5 Manufacturer

The SSMRS must be the product of an aluminum roofing industry recognized SSMRS manufacturer who has been in the practice of manufacturing SSMRS for a period of not less than 5 years and who has been involved in at least 5 projects similar in size and complexity to this project.

1.6.6 Laboratory Tests For Panel Finish

Previously manufactured panels of the same type and finish as proposed for the project must have been tested by an approved testing laboratory to ensure conformance to specifications. The term "appearance of base metal" refers to the aluminum base metal. Panels must meet the following test requirements.

1.6.6.1 Formability Test

For formability test, when subjected to a 180 degree bend over a 1/8 inch diameter mandrel in accordance with ASTM D522/D522M, exterior coating film must show only microchecking of the exterior film and there must be no loss of adhesion.

1.6.6.2 Accelerated Weathering Test

Panels must withstand an accelerated weathering test for a minimum of 2000 hours in accordance with ASTM G152, ASTM G153 or ASTM D2565 without cracking, peeling, blistering, loss of adhesion of the protective coating, or corrosion of the base metal. Protective coating that can be readily removed from the base metal with a penknife blade or similar instrument will be considered to indicate loss of adhesion.

1.6.6.3 Chalking Resistance

After the 2000-hour weatherometer test, exterior coating may not chalk greater than No. 8 rating when measured in accordance with ASTM D4214 test procedures.

1.6.6.4 Abrasion Resistance Test for Color Coating

When subjected to the falling sand test in accordance with ASTM D968, coating system must withstand a minimum of 100 liters of sand per 0.025 mm (mil) of coating thickness before appearance of base metal.

1.6.6.5 Humidity Test

When subjected to a humidity cabinet test in accordance with ASTM D2247 for 1000 hours, a scored panel must show no signs of blistering, cracking, creepage, or corrosion.

1.6.6.6 Fire Hazard

The finish on factory-fabricated panels must have a flame spread rating of not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

1.6.6.7 Gloss

The gloss of the finish must be 30 plus or minus 5 at an angle of 60 degrees, when measured in accordance with [ASTM D523](#).

1.6.6.8 Glare Resistance

Surfaces of panels that will be exposed to the exterior must have a specular reflectance of not more than 10 when measured in accordance with [ASTM D523](#) at an angle of 85 degrees. Requirements specified under FORMABILITY TEST will be waived if necessary to conform to this requirement.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver, store, and handle preformed panels, bulk roofing products and other manufactured items in a manner to prevent damage or deformation.

1.7.1 Delivery

Provide adequate packaging to protect materials during shipment. Do not uncrate materials until ready for use except for inspection. Immediately upon arrival of materials at jobsite, inspect materials for damage, dampness, and staining. Replace damaged or permanently stained materials that cannot be restored to like-new condition with new material. If materials are wet, remove moisture, restack and protect panels until used.

1.7.2 Handling

Handle material carefully to avoid damage to surfaces, edges and ends.

1.7.3 Storage

Stack materials stored on the site on platforms or pallets and cover with tarpaulins or other suitable weathertight coverings which prevent water trapping or condensation. Store panels so that water which might have accumulated during transit or storage will drain off. Do not store the panels in contact with materials that might cause staining, such as mud, lime, cement, fresh concrete or chemicals. Protect stored panels from wind damage.

1.8 [WARRANTY](#)

Furnish manufacturer's no dollar limit materials and workmanship warranty for the roofing system. The warranty period must be not less than 20 years from the date of Government acceptance of the work. Issue the warranty directly to the Government. The warranty must provide that if within the warranty period the aluminum roofing system becomes non-watertight or shows evidence of corrosion, perforation, peeling paint, rupture or excess weathering due to deterioration of the roofing system resulting from defective materials or workmanship the repair or replacement of the defective materials and correction of the defective workmanship must be the responsibility of the roofing system manufacturer. Repairs that become necessary because of defective materials and workmanship while roofing is under warranty must be performed within 7 days after notification, unless additional time is approved by the Contracting Officer. Failure to perform repairs within the specified period of time will constitute grounds for having the repairs performed by others and the cost billed to the manufacturer. In addition,

provide a 2 year contractor installation warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ROOFING PANELS

2.1.1 Material

3004 aluminum, **ASTM B209**. Aluminum roofing materials must contain a minimum of 30 percent total recycled content. Provide data identifying percentage of **recycled content of aluminum roofing products**.

Provide aluminum roofing product that is **Energy Star** labeled. Provide data identifying **Energy Star label for aluminum roofing product**. Provide solar reflectance product with an initial solar reflectance greater than or equal to 0.25 and a solar reflectance greater than or equal to 0.15 three years after installation under normal conditions. Provide emittance and reflectance percentages, solar reflectance index values to meet sustainable third party certification requirements for Heat Island Reduction.

2.1.1.1 Thickness

0.040 inch minimum.

2.1.1.2 Finish

Alclad fluorocarbon baked enamel exterior and neutral washcoat interior.

2.1.1.3 Texture

Smooth with raised intermediate ribs for added stiffness.

2.1.1.4 Color

Sandstone exterior as selected from the manufacturer's standard colors.

2.1.1.5 Configuration

Provide panels of continuous lengths from ridge to eaves. Panels must be **minimum 12 inches** wide with a minimum **1.0 inch** high vertical legs and two stiffening ribs at **4 inches** on center between the legs to minimize oil-canning and telegraphing of structural members. Leading vertical leg must have a continuous groove in the rib top for anti-siphon protection when hook-rib top of next panel is locked over leading vertical leg to form the standing seam. Panels from **coil stock** must be formed without warping, waviness or ripples not a part of the panel profile, and must be free of damage to the finish coating system.

2.1.1.6 Prefinished Coating System

Fluorocarbon baked enamel, factory-applied, minimum total dry film nominal thickness of **0.7 mils**, and conforming to test requirements specified herein. Provide prefinished coating system on the exterior face. Interior face must receive same coating system, or, at the manufacturer's option, receive a coat of acrylic wash coat applied to a minimum total dry film nominal thickness of **0.20 mil**.

2.2 ATTACHMENT CLIPS

Series 300 non-magnetic stainless steel.

- a. Type 1: Tee-clip, minimum capacity 52.5 lbs.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

Sheet metal flashings, trim, moldings, closure strips, caps, preformed crickets, equipment curbs, gutters, down spouts, and other similar sheet aluminum accessories provided in conjunction with preformed aluminum panels must be of the same material and finish as panels, except that such items which will be concealed after installation may be provided without the finish if they are aluminum or stainless steel. Provide ridge and rib closures, as specified. Aluminum must be of thickness not less than that of panels. Molded closure strips must be closed-cell synthetic rubber, neoprene, or polyvinyl chloride premolded to match configurations of preformed aluminum panels. Thermal spacer blocks and other thermal barriers at concealed fasteners must be as recommended by the roofing panel manufacturer.

2.3.1 Closures

2.3.1.1 Ridge Closure

Aluminum-clad foam or aluminum closure with foam secondary closure matching panel configuration for installation on surface of roof panel between panel ribs at ridge and headwall roof panel flashing conditions and terminations. Foam material must not absorb water.

2.3.1.2 Rib Closure

Aluminum, closed-cell or solid-cell synthetic rubber, neoprene or polyvinyl chloride pre-molded to match configuration of rib opening. Material for closures must not absorb water.

2.3.2 Fasteners

Series 300 stainless steel with composite metal and neoprene composition washers. Fasteners for attachment to structural supports and fasteners for attachment of panels must be as approved and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation. Unless specified otherwise herein, fasteners must be either self-tapping screws, bolts and nuts, or self-locking bolts. Design fastening system to withstand design loads indicated. Fasteners must not be over-torqued and must develop full capacity of attachment clips.

2.3.2.1 Screws

Provide not less than No. 14 diameter for self-tapping type and not less than No. 12 diameter for self-drilling and self-tapping.

2.3.2.2 Bolts

Provide not less than 1/4 inch diameter, shouldered or plain shank as required, with proper nuts.

2.3.2.3 Automatic End-Welded Studs

Provide shouldered type with a shank diameter of not less than $3/16$ inch and cap or nut for holding covering against the shoulder.

2.3.2.4 Explosive Driven Fasteners

Provide fasteners to be driven with explosive actuated tools and with a shank diameter of not less than $1/2$ inch for fastening to steel and not less than 1 inch for fastening to concrete.

2.3.2.5 Rivets

Blind rivets must be aluminum with $3/16$ inch nominal diameter shank or stainless steel with $1/8$ inch nominal diameter shank. Rivets must be threaded stem type if used for other than fastening trim. Rivets with hollow stems must have closed ends.

2.3.3 Sealant

Elastomeric type containing no oil or asphalt. Exposed sealant must cure to a rubber like consistency. Concealed sealant must be the non-hardening type. Seam sealant must be factory-applied, non-skinning, non-drying, and must conform to the roofing manufacturer's recommendations. Do not use silicone-based sealants in contact with finished metal panels and components unless approved otherwise by the Contracting Officer.

2.3.4 Sealant Tape

Polyvinyl chloride closed cell foam tape or composed of 99 percent solids in a base of butyl polyisobutylene rubber with the following properties and characteristics:

- a. Webbing and Elongation: 100 percent minimum at 77 degrees F
- b. Adhesion: Excellent to surfaces used
- c. U-V light exposure: No effect
- d. Ozone: No effect
- e. Weathering: 1000 hours in QUV Test Apparatus - Excellent, no cracking, bleeding, or significant changes.
- f. Moisture Transmission: 0.05 to 0.15 grams per 100 square inches in 24 hours.
- g. Service Temperature Tests: Bending over $1/2$ inch mandrel at minus 60 degrees F with no cracking. Expose sealed typical metal lap joint to plus 350 degrees F for 24 hours with no significant loss of original properties.
- h. Reaction to Metals: Non-corrosive to aluminum

2.4 UNDERLAYMENT FOR WOOD SUBSTRATES

Provide underlayment ASTM D226/D226M, Type I perforated, covered by water-resistant rosin sized building paper.

2.5 LINER PANELS

Fabricate liner panels of the same material as roof panels, and formed or patterned to prevent waviness and distortion. Liner panels must have a factory applied, one mil thick minimum painted coating on the inside face, and a prime coat on the liner side.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Do not use building construction materials that show visible evidence of biological growth.

Examine surfaces to receive standing seam aluminum roofing and flashing. Provide plumb and true surfaces, clean, even, smooth and as dry as possible. Ensure that surfaces are free from defects and projections which might affect the installation. Report unsuitable conditions to Contracting Officer.

3.2 PROTECTION OF DISSIMILAR METALS

Where an aluminum component is in contact with, fastened to, or contacted by drainage from dissimilar metals other than stainless steel, give such dissimilar metals one of the following treatments:

- a. A heavy brush coat of primer followed by two coats of aluminum metal and masonry paint.
- b. A heavy coat of alkali-resistant bituminous paint.
- c. Separate contact surfaces with non-absorptive tape or gasket.

3.2.1 Contact with Masonry

Where aluminum is in contact with masonry, concrete, or plaster, apply a heavy coat of alkali-resistant bituminous paint.

3.2.2 Contact with Wood

Where aluminum is in contact with wood or other absorptive material subject to wetting, or with wood treated with a preservative not compatible with aluminum, seal joints with sealing compound and apply one heavy brush coat of aluminum pigmented bituminous paint.

3.3 INSTALLATION

Install in accordance with approved manufacturer's erection instructions shop drawings, and diagrams, except as specified otherwise herein. Provide panels in full and firm contact with clips. Obtain approval prior to installation on prefinished panels cut in the field, and factory applied coverings or coatings that were repaired after being abraded or damaged during handling or installation. Make repairs with material of same color as weather coating. Completely seal openings through panels. Correct defects or errors in materials in an approved manner. Replace materials which cannot be corrected in an approved manner with new materials. Provide molded closure strips where indicated and where necessary for weathertight construction. Use shims as required to ensure clip line is true. Use a spacing gage at each row of panels to ensure

that panel width is not stretched or shortened. Provide one layer of asphalt-saturated felt placed perpendicular to roof slope covered by one layer of rosin-sized building paper placed parallel to roof slope with side laps down slope and attached with roofing nails. Overlap side end laps 3 inches, offset seams in building paper with seams in felt.

3.3.1 Roof Panels

Apply roofing panels with standing seams parallel to slope of roof. Provide roofing panels in full lengths from ridge to eaves (top to eaves on shed roofs), with no transverse joints except at the junction of ventilators, curbs, skylights, chimneys, and similar openings. Form interlocking rib type panel seams in the field with an automatic mechanical seamer approved by the manufacturer. Attach panels to structure with concealed clips which are incorporated into the panel seams. Clip attachment must allow roof to move freely and independently of the structure, except at fixed points as indicated.

3.3.2 Flashings

Provide flashing and related closures and accessories in connection with preformed metal panels as indicated and as necessary to provide a weathertight installation. Install flashing to ensure positive water drainage away from roof penetrations. Flash and seal roof at ridge, rakes, at projections through roof, and elsewhere as necessary. Accomplish placement of closure strips, flashing, and sealing material in an approved manner that will ensure complete weathertightness. Details of installation which are not indicated must be in accordance with the NRCA CONDET, SMACNA 1793, AA ASM-35, panel manufacturer's printed instructions and details of the approved shop drawings. Installation must allow for expansion and contraction of flashing.

3.3.3 Flashing Fasteners

Fastener spacings must be in accordance with the panel manufacturer's recommendations and as necessary to withstand the indicated design loads. Install fasteners in roof valleys as recommended by the manufacturer of the panels. Install fasteners in straight lines within a tolerance of 1/2 inch in the length of a bay. Drive exposed penetrating type fasteners normal to the surface and to a uniform depth to seat gasketed washers properly and drive so as not to damage factory applied coating. Exercise extreme care in drilling pilot holes for fastenings to keep drills perpendicular and centered. Do not drill through sealant tapes. After drilling, remove metal filings and burrs from holes prior to installing fasteners and washers. Torque used in applying fasteners must not exceed that recommended by the manufacturer. Remove panels deformed or otherwise damaged by over-torqued fastenings, and provide new panels.

3.3.4 Closure/Closure Strips

Set closure/closure strips in joint sealant material.

3.4 CLEANING

Clean exposed sheet metal work at completion of installation. Remove metal shavings, filings, nails, bolts, and wires from roofs on completion to prevent discoloration and harm to the panels and flashing. Remove grease and oil films, excess sealants handling marks, contamination from steel wool, fittings and drilling debris and scrub the work clean.

Exposed metal surfaces must be free of dents, creases, waves, scratch marks, and solder or weld marks.

3.5 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD INSPECTION

Manufacturer's technical representative must visit the site as necessary during the installation process to assure panels, flashings, and other components are being installed in a satisfactory manner. Manufacturer's technical representative must perform a field inspection during the first 20 squares of roof panel installation and at substantial completion prior to issuance of warranty, as a minimum, and as otherwise requested by the Contracting Officer. Additional inspections must not exceed one for each 100 squares of total roof area with the exception that follow-up inspections of previously noted deficiencies or application errors must be performed as requested by the Contracting Officer. Each inspection visit must include a review of the entire installation to date. After each inspection, submit a report, signed by the manufacturer's technical representative, to the Contracting Officer noting the overall quality of work, deficiencies and any other concerns, and recommended corrective actions in detail. Notify Contracting Officer a minimum of 2 working days prior to site visit by manufacturer's technical representative.

3.6 COMPLETED WORK

Completed work must be plumb and true without oil canning, dents, ripples, abrasion, rust, staining, or other damage detrimental to the performance or aesthetics of the completed roof assembly.

3.7 INFORMATION CARD

For each roof, provide a typewritten card, laminated in plastic and framed for interior display or a photo engraved 0.032 inch thick aluminum card for exterior display. Card to be 8 1/2 by 11 inches minimum and contain the information listed on Form 1 at end of this section. Install card in Mechanical Room. Send a photostatic paper copy to SOUTHWESTNAVFACENGCOM, Code 133SB, 1220 Pacific Highway, San Diego, CA 92132-5190.

3.8 FORM ONE

FORM 1 - PREFORMED STEEL STANDING SEAM ROOFING SYSTEM COMPONENTS

1. Contract Number:
2. Building Number & Location:
3. NAVFAC Specification Number:
4. Deck/Substrate Type:
5. Slopes of Deck/Roof Structure:
6. Insulation Type & Thickness:
7. Insulation Manufacturer:
8. Vapor Retarder: ()Yes ()No
9. Vapor Retarder Type:
10. Preformed Steel Standing Seam Roofing Description:
 - a. Manufacturer (Name, Address, & Phone No.):
 - b. Product Name:
 - c. Width:
 - d. Gage:
 - e. Base Metal:
 - f. Method of Attachment:
11. Repair of Color Coating:
 - a. Coating Manufacturer (Name, Address & Phone No.):
 - b. Product Name:
 - c. Surface Preparation:
 - d. Recoating Formula:
 - e. Application Method:
12. Statement of Compliance or Exception: _____

13. Date Roof Completed:
14. Warranty Period: From _____ To _____
15. Roofing Contractor (Name & Address):
16. Prime Contractor (Name & Address):

Contractor's Signature _____ Date:

Inspector's Signature _____ Date:

-- End of Section --

SECTION 07 84 00

FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Furnish and install tested and listed firestopping systems, combination of materials, or devices to form an effective barrier against the spread of flame, smoke and gases, and maintain the integrity of fire resistance rated walls, partitions, floors, and ceiling-floor assemblies, including through-penetrations and construction joints and gaps.

- a. Through-penetrations include the annular space around pipes, tubes, conduit, wires, cables and vents.
- b. Construction joints include those used to accommodate expansion, contraction, wind, or seismic movement; firestopping material shall not interfere with the required movement of the joint.
- c. Gaps requiring firestopping include gaps the floor slab and between the top of the fire-rated walls and the roof or floor deck above and at the intersection of shaft assemblies and adjoining fire resistance rated assemblies.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E84	(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E119	(2018c; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
ASTM E699	(2009) Standard Practice for Evaluation of Agencies Involved in Testing, Quality Assurance, and Evaluating of Building Components
ASTM E814	(2013a; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems
ASTM E1399/E1399M	(1997; R 2017) Standard Test Method for Cyclic Movement and Measuring the Minimum and Maximum Joint Widths of Architectural Joint Systems
ASTM E1966	(2015; R 2019) Standard Test Method for

Fire-Resistive Joint Systems

- ASTM E2174 (2014b) Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Fire Stops
- ASTM E2393 (2010a) Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Fire Resistive Joint Systems and Perimeter Fire Barriers

FM GLOBAL (FM)

- FM 4991 (2013) Approval of Firestop Contractors
- FM APP GUIDE (updated on-line) Approval Guide
<http://www.approvalguide.com/>

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

- ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

- UL 723 (2018) UL Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
- UL 1479 (2015) Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops
- UL 2079 (2004; Reprint Dec 2014) Tests for Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems
- UL Fire Resistance (2014) Fire Resistance Directory

1.3 SEQUENCING

Coordinate the specified work with other trades. Apply firestopping materials, at penetrations of pipes and ducts, prior to insulating, unless insulation meets requirements specified for firestopping. Apply firestopping materials at building joints and construction gaps, prior to completion of enclosing walls or assemblies. Cast-in-place firestop devices shall be located and installed in place before concrete placement. Pipe, conduit or cable bundles shall be installed through cast-in-place device after concrete placement but before area is concealed or made inaccessible. Firestop material shall be inspected and approved prior to final completion and enclosing of any assemblies that may conceal installed firestop.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Firestopping System; G

SD-03 Product Data

Firestopping Materials; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Inspection; G

SD-07 Certificates

Inspector Qualifications

Firestopping Materials

Installer Qualifications; G

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Installer

Engage an experienced Installer who is:

- a. FM Research approved in accordance with FM 4991, operating as a UL Certified Firestop Contractor, or
- b. Certified, licensed, or otherwise qualified by the firestopping manufacturer as having the necessary staff, training, and a minimum of 3 years experience in the installation of manufacturer's products in accordance with specified requirements. Submit documentation of this experience. A manufacturer's willingness to sell its firestopping products to the Contractor or to an installer engaged by the Contractor does not in itself confer installer qualifications on the buyer. The Installer shall have been trained by a direct representative of the manufacturer (not distributor or agent) in the proper selection and installation procedures. The installer shall obtain from the manufacturer and submit written certification of training, and retain proof of certification for duration of firestop installation.

1.5.2 Inspector Qualifications

The inspector shall meet the criteria contained in ASTM E699 for agencies involved in quality assurance and shall have a minimum of two years experience in construction field inspections of firestopping systems, products, and assemblies. The inspector shall be completely independent of, and divested from, the installer, the manufacturer, and the supplier of any material or item being inspected. The inspector shall not be a competitor of the installer, the contractor, the manufacturer, or supplier of any material or item being inspected. Include in the qualifications submittal a notarized statement assuring compliance with the requirements stated herein.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver materials in the original unopened packages or containers showing name of the manufacturer and the brand name. Store materials off the ground, protected from damage and exposure to elements and temperatures in accordance with manufacturer requirements. Remove damaged or deteriorated

materials from the site. Use materials within their indicated shelf life.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM

Submit detail drawings including manufacturer's descriptive data, typical details conforming to [UL Fire Resistance](#) or other details certified by another nationally recognized testing laboratory, installation instructions or UL listing details for a firestopping assembly in lieu of fire-test data or report. For those firestop applications for which no UL tested system is available through a manufacturer, a manufacturer's engineering judgment, derived from similar UL system designs or other tests, shall be submitted for review and approval prior to installation. Submittal must indicate the firestopping material to be provided for each type of application. When more than a total of 5 penetrations and/or construction joints are to receive firestopping, provide drawings that indicate location, "F" "T" and "L" ratings, and type of application.

Also, submit a written report indicating locations of and types of penetrations and types of firestopping used at each location; record type by UL list printed numbers.

2.2 FIRESTOPPING MATERIALS

Provide firestopping materials, supplied from a single domestic manufacturer, consisting of commercially manufactured, asbestos-free, nontoxic products [FM APP GUIDE](#) approved, or UL listed, for use with applicable construction and penetrating items, complying with the following minimum requirements:

2.2.1 Fire Hazard Classification

Material shall have a flame spread of 25 or less, and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less, when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#) or [UL 723](#). Material shall be an approved firestopping material as listed in [UL Fire Resistance](#) or by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.

2.2.2 Toxicity

Material shall be nontoxic and carcinogen free to humans at all stages of application or during fire conditions and shall not contain hazardous chemicals or require harmful chemicals to clean material or equipment.

2.2.3 Fire Resistance Rating

Firestop systems shall be [UL Fire Resistance](#) listed or [FM APP GUIDE](#) approved with "F" rating at least equal to fire-rating of fire wall or floor in which penetrated openings are to be protected. Where required, firestop systems shall also have "T" rating at least equal to the fire-rated floor in which the openings are to be protected.

2.2.3.1 Through-Penetrations

Firestopping materials for through-penetrations, as described in paragraph SUMMARY, shall provide "F", "T" and "L" fire resistance ratings in accordance with [ASTM E814](#) or [UL 1479](#). Fire resistance ratings shall be as follows:

2.2.3.1.1 Penetrations of Fire Resistance Rated Walls and Partitions

F Rating = 1 hour, Rating of wall or partition being penetrated.

2.2.3.1.2 Penetrations of Fire Resistance Rated Floors, Floor-Ceiling Assemblies and the Ceiling Membrane of Roof-Ceiling Assemblies

F Rating = 1 hour, T Rating = 1 hour. Where the penetrating item is outside of a wall cavity the F rating must be equal to the fire resistance rating of the floor penetrated, and the T rating shall be in accordance with the requirements of [ICC IBC](#).

2.2.3.2 Construction Joints and Gaps

Fire resistance ratings of construction joints, as described in paragraph SUMMARY, and gaps such as those between floor slabs or roof decks shall be the same as the construction in which they occur. Construction joints and gaps shall be provided with firestopping materials and systems that have been tested in accordance with [ASTM E119](#), [ASTM E1966](#) or [UL 2079](#) to meet the required fire resistance rating. Systems installed at construction joints shall meet the cycling requirements of [ASTM E1399/E1399M](#) or [UL 2079](#). All joints at the intersection of the top of a fire resistance rated wall and the underside of a fire-rated floor, floor ceiling, or roof ceiling assembly shall provide a minimum class II movement capability.

2.2.4 Material Certification

Submit certificates attesting that firestopping material complies with the specified requirements. For all intumescent firestop materials used in through penetration systems, manufacturer shall provide certification of compliance with [UL 1479](#).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Areas to receive firestopping must be free of dirt, grease, oil, or loose materials which may affect the fitting or fire resistance of the firestopping system. For cast-in-place firestop devices, formwork or metal deck to receive device prior to concrete placement must be sound and capable of supporting device. Prepare surfaces as recommended by the manufacturer.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Completely fill void spaces with firestopping material regardless of geometric configuration, subject to tolerance established by the manufacturer. Firestopping systems for filling floor voids [4 inches](#) or more in any direction must be capable of supporting the same load as the floor is designed to support or be protected by a permanent barrier to prevent loading or traffic in the firestopped area. Install firestopping in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Provide tested and listed firestop systems in the following locations, except in floor slabs on grade:

- a. Penetrations of duct, conduit, tubing, cable and pipe through floors and through fire-resistance rated walls, partitions, and ceiling-floor assemblies.

- b. Penetrations of vertical shafts such as pipe chases, elevator shafts, and utility chutes.
- c. Gaps at perimeter of fire-resistance rated walls and partitions, such as between the top of the walls and the bottom of roof decks.
- d. Construction joints in floors and fire rated walls and partitions.
- e. Other locations where required to maintain fire resistance rating of the construction.

3.2.1 Insulated Pipes and Ducts

Thermal insulation shall be cut and removed where pipes or ducts pass through firestopping, unless insulation meets requirements specified for firestopping. Replace thermal insulation with a material having equal thermal insulating and firestopping characteristics.

3.2.2 Fire Dampers

Install and firestop fire dampers in accordance with Section 23 00 00 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM. Firestop installed with fire damper must be tested and approved for use in fire damper system. Firestop installed with fire damper must be tested and approved for use in fire damper system.

3.2.3 Data and Communication Cabling

Cabling for data and communication applications shall be sealed with re-enterable firestopping products and devices as indicated.

3.2.3.1 Re-Enterable Devices

Firestopping devices shall be pre-manufactured modular devices, containing built-in self-sealing intumescent inserts. Firestopping devices shall allow for cable moves, additions or changes without the need to remove or replace any firestop materials. Devices must be capable of maintaining the fire resistance rating of the penetrated membrane at 0 percent to 100 percent visual fill of penetrants; while maintaining "L" rating of <10 cfm/sf measured at ambient temperature and 400 degrees F at 0 percent to 100 percent visual fill.

3.2.3.2 Re-Sealable Products

Provide firestopping pre-manufactured modular products, containing self-sealing intumescent inserts. Firestopping products shall allow for cable moves, additions or changes. Devices shall be capable of maintaining the fire resistance rating of the penetrated membrane at 0 percent to 100 percent visual fill of penetrants.

3.3 INSPECTION

For all projects, the firestopped areas shall not be covered or enclosed until inspection is complete and approved by the Contracting Officer. Inspect the applications initially to ensure adequate preparations (clean surfaces suitable for application, etc.) and periodically during the work to assure that the completed work has been accomplished according to the manufacturer's written instructions and the specified requirements. Submit written reports indicating locations of and types of penetrations

and types of firestopping used at each location; type shall be recorded by UL listed printed numbers.

3.3.1 Inspection Standards

Inspect all firestopping in accordance with [ASTM E2393](#) and [ASTM E2174](#) for firestop inspection, and document inspection results to be submitted.

3.3.2 Inspection Reports

Submit inspection report stating that firestopping work has been inspected and found to be applied according to the manufacturer's recommendations and the specified requirements.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 92 00

JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C509	(2006; R 2015) Elastomeric Cellular Preformed Gasket and Sealing Material
ASTM C518	(2017) Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus
ASTM C734	(2015) Low-Temperature Flexibility of Latex Sealants After Artificial Weathering
ASTM C919	(2012; R 2017) Standard Practice for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications
ASTM C920	(2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C1193	(2013) Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants
ASTM C1338	(2014) Standard Test Method for Determining Fungi Resistance of Insulation Materials and Facings
ASTM C1521	(2013) Standard Practice for Evaluating Adhesion of Installed Weatherproofing Sealant Joints
ASTM D217	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Cone Penetration of Lubricating Grease
ASTM D1056	(2014) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded Rubber
ASTM D1622	(2014) Apparent Density of Rigid Cellular Plastics
ASTM E283	(2004; R 2012) Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen

ASTM E84 (2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface
Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials

ASTM E96/E96M (2016) Standard Test Methods for Water
Vapor Transmission of Materials

CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH (CDPH)

CDPH SECTION 01350 (2010; Version 1.1) Standard Method for
the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile
Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor
Sources using Environmental Chambers

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 286 (2019) Standard Methods of Fire Tests for
Evaluating Contribution of Wall and
Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth

SCIENTIFIC CERTIFICATION SYSTEMS (SCS)

SCS SCS Global Services (SCS) Indoor Advantage

SOUTH COAST AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT DISTRICT (SCAQMD)

SCAQMD Rule 1168 (2017) Adhesive and Sealant Applications

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 2818 (2013) GREENGUARD Certification Program
For Chemical Emissions For Building
Materials, Finishes And Furnishings

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;
submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When
used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office
that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following
in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Sealants; G

Primers; G

Bond Breakers; G

Backstops; G

SD-07 Certificates

Indoor Air Quality For Interior Sealants; G, S

1.3 PRODUCT DATA

Include storage requirements, shelf life, curing time, instructions for

mixing and application, and accessories. Provide manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for each solvent, primer and sealant material proposed.

1.4 CERTIFICATIONS

1.4.1 Indoor Air Quality Certifications

Submit required indoor air quality certifications in one submittal package.

1.4.1.1 Adhesives and Sealants

Provide products certified to meet indoor air quality requirements by **UL 2818** (Greenguard) Gold, **SCS** Global Services Indoor Advantage Gold or provide certification or validation by other third-party program that products meet the requirements of this Section. Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.. When product does not have certification, provide validation that product meets the indoor air quality product requirements cited herein.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Apply sealant when the ambient temperature is between **40 and 90 degrees F**.

1.6 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Deliver materials to the jobsite in unopened manufacturers' sealed shipping containers, with brand name, date of manufacture, color, and material designation clearly marked thereon. Label elastomeric sealant containers to identify type, class, grade, and use. Handle and store materials in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Prevent exposure to foreign materials or subjection to sustained temperatures exceeding **90 degrees F** or lower than **0 degrees F**. Keep materials and containers closed and separated from absorptive materials such as wood and insulation.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7.1 Compatibility with Substrate

Verify that each sealant is compatible for use with each joint substrate in accordance with sealant manufacturer's printed recommendations for each application.

1.7.2 Joint Tolerance

Provide joint tolerances in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

1.7.3 Mock-Up

Provide a mock-up of each type of sealant using materials, colors, and techniques approved for use on the project. Approved mock-ups may be incorporated into the Work.

1.7.4 Adhesion

Provide in accordance with **ASTM C1193** or **ASTM C1521**.

1.8 SPECIAL WARRANTY

Guarantee sealant joint against failure of sealant and against water penetration through each sealed joint for 5 years.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SEALANTS

Provide sealant products that have been tested, found suitable, and documented as such by the manufacturer for the particular substrates to which they will be applied.

In areas with ambient temperatures that exceed 110 degrees F, do not use polybutene, bituminous, acrylic-latex, polyvinyl acetate latex sealants, polychloroprene (neoprene), polyvinyl chloride (PVC), and polyurethane foams, and neoprene, PVC, and styrene butadiene rubber extruded seals and closure strips due to these materials having maximum recommended surface temperature ranges from 130 to 180 degrees F.

2.1.1 Interior Sealants

Provide ASTM C920, Type S or M, Grade NS, Class 12.5, Use NT. Provide sealant products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for interior sealants. Location(s) and color(s) of sealant for the following. Note, color "as selected" refers to manufacturer's full range of color options

LOCATION	COLOR
a. Small voids between walls or partitions and adjacent lockers, casework, shelving, door frames, built-in or surface mounted equipment and fixtures, and similar items.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
b. Perimeter of frames at doors, windows, and access panels which adjoin exposed interior concrete and masonry surfaces.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
c. Joints of interior masonry walls and partitions which adjoin columns, pilasters, concrete walls, and exterior walls unless otherwise detailed.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
d. Joints between edge members for acoustical tile and adjoining vertical surfaces.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
e. Interior locations, not otherwise indicated or specified, where small voids exist between materials specified to be painted.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
f. Joints formed between tile floors and tile base cove; joints between tile and dissimilar materials; joints occurring where substrates change.	Match Adjacent Surface Color

LOCATION	COLOR
g. Behind escutcheon plates at valve pipe penetrations and showerheads in showers.	Match Adjacent Surface Color

2.1.2 Exterior Sealants

For joints in vertical surfaces, provide **ASTM C920**, Type S or M, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT. For joints in horizontal surfaces, provide **ASTM C920**, Type S or M, Grade P, Class 25, Use T. Provide location(s) and color(s) of sealant as follows. Note, color "as selected" refers to manufacturer's full range of color options:

LOCATION	COLOR
a. Joints and recesses formed where frames and subsills of windows, doors, louvers, and vents adjoin masonry, concrete, or metal frames. Use sealant at both exterior and interior surfaces of exterior wall penetrations.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
b. Joints between new and existing exterior masonry walls.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
c. Masonry joints where shelf angles occur.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
d. Joints in wash surfaces of stonework.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
e. Expansion and control joints.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
f. Interior face of expansion joints in exterior concrete or masonry walls where metal expansion joint covers are not required.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
g. Voids where items pass through exterior walls.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
h. Metal reglets, where flashing is inserted into masonry joints, and where flashing is penetrated by coping dowels.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
i. Metal-to-metal joints where sealant is indicated or specified.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
j. Joints between ends of gravel stops, fascia, copings, and adjacent walls.	Match Adjacent Surface Color

2.1.3 Floor Joint Sealants

ASTM C920, Type S or M, Grade P, Class 25, Use T. Provide sealant products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for interior floor joint sealants. Provide location(s) and color(s) of sealant as follows.

LOCATION	COLOR
a. Seats of metal thresholds for exterior doors.	Match Adjacent Surface Color
b. Control and expansion joints in floors, slabs, ceramic tile, and walkways.	Match Adjacent Surface Color

2.1.4 Acoustical Sealants

Rubber or polymer based acoustical sealant in accordance with ASTM C919 to have a flame spread of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84. Provide non-staining acoustical sealant must have a consistency of 250 to 310 when tested in accordance with ASTM D217, and must remain flexible and adhesive after 500 hours of accelerated weathering as specified in ASTM C734. Provide sealant products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) meeting either emissions requirements of CDPH SECTION 01350 (limit requirements for either office or classroom spaces regardless of space type) or VOC content requirements of SCAQMD Rule 1168. Provide certification or validation of indoor air quality for interior acoustical sealants.

2.1.5 Preformed Sealants

Provide preformed sealants of polybutylene or isoprene-butylene based pressure sensitive weather resistant tape or bead sealants capable of sealing out moisture, air and dust when installed as recommended by the manufacturer. At temperatures from minus 30 to plus 160 degrees F, sealants must be non-bleeding and have no loss of adhesion.

2.1.5.1 Tape

Tape sealant: Provide cross section dimensions of 3/4 inch.

2.1.5.2 Bead

Bead sealant: Provide cross section dimensions of 1/4 to 3/8 inch.

2.1.5.3 Foam Strip

Provide foam strip of polyurethane foam with cross section dimensions as indicated. Provide foam strip capable of sealing out moisture, air, and dust when installed and compressed in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Service temperature must be minus 40 to plus 275 degrees F. Furnish untreated strips with adhesive to hold them in place.

Do not allow adhesive to stain or bleed onto adjacent finishes. Saturate treated strips with butylene waterproofing or impregnate with asphalt.

2.2 PRIMERS

Non-staining, quick drying type and consistency as recommended by the sealant manufacturer for the particular application.

2.3 BOND BREAKERS

Type and consistency as recommended by the sealant manufacturer to prevent adhesion of the sealant to the backing or to the bottom of the joint.

2.4 BACKSTOPS

Provide glass fiber roving, neoprene, butyl, polyurethane, or polyethylene foams free from oil or other staining elements as recommended by sealant manufacturer. Provide 25 to 33 percent oversized backing for closed cell and 40 to 50 percent oversized backing for open cell material, unless otherwise indicated. Provide backstop material that is compatible with sealant. Do not use oakum and other types of absorptive materials as backstops.

2.4.1 Rubber

Provide in accordance with [ASTM D1056](#), Type 2, closed cell, Class A, Grade 2A3, round cross section for cellular rubber sponge backing.

2.4.2 Synthetic Rubber

Provide in accordance with [ASTM C509](#), Option I, Type I preformed rods for synthetic rubber backing.

2.4.3 Neoprene

Provide in accordance with [ASTM D1056](#), closed cell expanded neoprene cord Type 2, Class C, Grade 2C2 for neoprene backing.

2.4.4 Silicone Rubber Base

Provide in accordance with ASTM C920, from a single component, with solvent release, Non-sag, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25. Color as selected from manufacturer's full range of color choices.

2.5 SPRAY FOAM SEALANT

Spray foam sealant shall be used as a component to seal cracks, joints, headers and openings in floors and wall penetrations/intersections. Spray foam sealants shall be limited for use in non-fire resistive openings and shall be tested and meet the acceptance criteria of [NFPA 286](#). Spray foam shall be listed and labeled by UL or FM and shall meet the following performance requirements:

- a. Thermal Resistance (R-value/inch): minimum initial, 6.0 per inch in accordance with [ASTM C518](#).
- b. Water Vapor Permeance (for 1-inch of material): maximum 5 perms per 1-inch thickness in accordance with [ASTM E96/E96M](#).

- c. Air Permeability per [ASTM E283](#): 0 cu ft/min-sf at 75 Pa for 0.5-inch thickness.
- d. Nominal Density per [ASTM D1622](#): maximum 2.25 lb/cu ft.
- e. Corrosion: No significant corrosion when in contact with steel under 85 percent relative humidity.
- f. Bacterial or Fungal Growth per [ASTM C1338](#): No growth and no materials deterioration.
- g. Surface Burning per [ASTM E84](#): flame spread less than 25 and a smoke development rating less than 450.

2.6 CLEANING SOLVENTS

Provide type(s) recommended by the sealant manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Perform a field adhesion test in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and [ASTM C1193](#), Method A or ASTM C1521, Method A, Tail Procedure. Remove sealants that fail adhesion testing; clean substrates, reapply sealants, and re-test. Test sealants adjacent to failed sealants. Submit field adhesion test report indicating tests, locations, dates, results, and remedial actions taken.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

Clean surfaces from dirt, frost, moisture, grease, oil, wax, lacquer, paint, or other foreign matter that would destroy or impair adhesion. Remove oil and grease with solvent; thoroughly remove solvents prior to sealant installation. For surface types not listed below, provide in accordance with sealant manufacturer's printed instructions for each specific surface.

3.2.1 Steel Surfaces

Remove loose mill scale by sandblasting or, if sandblasting is impractical or would damage finished work, scraping and wire brushing. Remove protective coatings by sandblasting or using a residue free solvent.

3.2.2 Aluminum or Bronze Surfaces

Remove temporary protective coatings from surfaces that will be in contact with sealant. When masking tape is used as a protective coating, remove tape and any residual adhesive prior to sealant application. For removing protective coatings and final cleaning, use non-staining solvents recommended by the manufacturer of the item(s) containing aluminum or bronze surfaces.

3.2.3 Concrete and Masonry Surfaces

Where surfaces have been treated with curing compounds, oil, or other such materials, remove materials by sandblasting or wire brushing. Remove laitance, efflorescence and loose mortar from the joint cavity. Remove resulting debris prior to sealant installation.

3.2.4 Wood Surfaces

Ensure wood surfaces that will be in contact with sealants are free of splinters, sawdust and other loose particles.

3.3 SEALANT PREPARATION

Do not add liquids, solvents, or powders to sealants. Mix multicomponent elastomeric sealants in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.4 APPLICATION

3.4.1 Joint Width-To-Depth Ratios

Acceptable Ratios:

<u>JOINT WIDTH</u>	<u>JOINT DEPTH</u>	
	Minimum	Maximum
For metal, glass, or other nonporous surfaces:		
1/4 inch (minimum)	1/4 inch	1/4 inch
over 1/4 inch	1/2 of width	Equal to width
For wood, concrete, masonry, or stone:		
1/4 inch (minimum)	1/4 inch	1/4 inch
over 1/4 inch to 1/2 inch	1/4 inch	Equal to width
over 1/2 inch to 1 inch	1/2 inch	5/8 inch
Over 1 inch	prohibited	

Unacceptable Ratios: Where joints of acceptable width-to-depth ratios have not been provided, clean out joints to acceptable depths and grind or cut to acceptable widths without damage to the adjoining work. Grinding is prohibited at metal surfaces.

3.4.2 Unacceptable Sealant Use

Do not install sealants in lieu of other required building enclosure weatherproofing components such as flashing, drainage components, and joint closure accessories, or to close gaps between walls, floors, roofs, windows, and doors, that exceed acceptable installation tolerances. Remove sealants that have been used in an unacceptable manner and correct building enclosure deficiencies to comply with contract documents requirements.

3.4.3 Masking Tape

Place masking tape on the finished surface on one or both sides of joint cavities to protect adjacent finished surfaces from primer or sealant

smears. Remove masking tape within 10 minutes of joint filling and tooling.

3.4.4 Backstops

Provide backstops dry and free of tears or holes. Tightly pack the back or bottom of joint cavities with backstop material to provide joints in specified depths. Provide backstops where indicated and where backstops are not indicated but joint cavities exceed the acceptable maximum depths specified in JOINT WIDTH-TO-DEPTH RATIOS Table.

3.4.5 Primer

Clean out loose particles from joints immediately prior to application of. Apply primer to joints in concrete masonry units, wood, and other porous surfaces in accordance with sealant manufacturer's printed instructions. Do not apply primer to exposed finished surfaces.

3.4.6 Bond Breaker

Provide bond breakers to surfaces not intended to bond in accordance with, sealant manufacturer's printed instructions for each type of surface and sealant combination specified.

3.4.7 Sealants

Provide sealants compatible with the material(s) to which they are applied. Do not use a sealant that has exceeded its shelf life or has jelled and cannot be discharged in a continuous flow from the sealant gun. Apply sealants in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions with a gun having a nozzle that fits the joint width. Work sealant into joints so as to fill the joints solidly without air pockets. Tool sealant after application to ensure adhesion. Apply sealant uniformly smooth and free of wrinkles. Upon completion of sealant application, roughen partially filled or unfilled joints, apply additional sealant, and tool smooth as specified. Apply sealer over sealants in accordance with the sealant manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.4.8 Spray Foam Sealant

Apply spray foam sealants in accordance with manufacturers requirements and where indicated on the drawings. Assure thicknesses do not exceed the thicknesses tested for the specific product used to meet the acceptance criteria of [NFPA 286](#).

3.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

3.5.1 Protection

Protect areas adjacent to joints from sealant smears. Masking tape may be used for this purpose if removed 5 to 10 minutes after the joint is filled and no residual tape marks remain.

3.5.2 Final Cleaning

Upon completion of sealant application, remove remaining smears and stains and leave the work in a clean and neat condition.

a. Masonry and Other Porous Surfaces: Immediately remove fresh sealant

that has been smeared on adjacent masonry, rub clean with a solvent, and remove solvent residue, in accordance with sealant manufacturer's printed instructions. Allow excess sealant to cure for 24 hour then remove by wire brushing or sanding. Remove resulting debris.

- b. Metal and Other Non-Porous Surfaces: Remove excess sealant with a solvent moistened cloth. Remove solvent residue in accordance with solvent manufacturer's printed instructions.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 11 13

STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)
Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A653/A653M (2019) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A879/A879M (2012) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, zinc Coated by the Electrolytic Process for Applications Requiring Designation of the Coating Mass on Each Surface

ASTM A924/A924M (2018) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM C578 (2018) Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation

ASTM C591 (2017/2019) Standard Specification for Unfaced Preformed Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation

ASTM C612 (2014) Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation

ASTM D2863 (2017a) Standard Test Method for Measuring the Minimum Oxygen Concentration to Support Candle-Like Combustion of Plastics (Oxygen Index)

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.115 (2016) Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Steel Frames

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 80 (2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors

and Other Opening Protectives

NFPA 105 (2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives

NFPA 252 (2017) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

STEEL DOOR INSTITUTE (SDI/DOOR)

SDI/DOOR 113 (2001; R2006) Standard Practice for Determining the Steady State Thermal Transmittance of Steel Door and Frame Assemblies

SDI/DOOR A250.6 (2003; R2009) Recommended Practice for Hardware Reinforcing on Standard Steel Doors and Frames

SDI/DOOR A250.8 (2003; R2008) Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames

SDI/DOOR A250.11 (2001) Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 10C (2016) UL Standard for Safety Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Doors; G

Frames; G

Accessories

Show elevations, construction details, metal gages, hardware provisions, method of glazing, and installation details.

Schedule of Doors; G

Schedule of Frames; G

Submit door and frame locations.

SD-03 Product Data

Doors; G

Frames; G

Accessories

Submit manufacturer's descriptive literature for doors, frames, and accessories. Include data and details on door construction, panel (internal) reinforcement, insulation, and door edge construction.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver doors, frames, and accessories undamaged and with protective wrappings or packaging. Strap knock-down frames in bundles. Store doors and frames on platforms under cover in clean, dry, ventilated, and accessible locations, with 1/4 inch airspace between doors. Remove damp or wet packaging immediately and wipe affected surfaces dry. Replace damaged materials with new.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARD STEEL DOORS

SDI/DOOR A250.8, except as specified otherwise. Prepare doors to receive door hardware as specified in Section 08 71 00. Undercut where indicated. Provide exterior doors with top edge closed flush and sealed to prevent water intrusion. Provide doors at 1-3/4 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated. Provide door material that uses a minimum of 25 percent recycled content. Provide data indicating percentage of recycled content for steel door product.

2.1.1 Classification - Level, Performance, Model

2.1.1.1 Maximum Duty Doors

SDI/DOOR A250.8, Level 4, physical performance Level A, Model 2 with core construction as required by the manufacturer for indicated exterior doors, of size(s) and design(s) indicated. Where vertical stiffener cores are required, the space between the stiffeners must be filled with mineral board insulation. Provide Level 4 for exterior doors.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

2.2.1 Astragals

For pairs of exterior steel doors astragals will be as specified in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE.

2.3 INSULATION CORES

Provide insulating cores of the type specified, and provide an apparent U-factor of .48 in accordance with SDI/DOOR 113 and conforming to:

- a. Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Foam: ASTM C591, Type I or II, foamed-in-place or in board form, with oxygen index of not less than 22 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D2863; or
- b. Rigid Polystyrene Foam Board: ASTM C578, Type I or II; or
- c. Mineral board: ASTM C612, Type I.

2.4 STANDARD STEEL FRAMES

SDI/DOOR A250.8, Level 4 frames for exterior doors, except as otherwise specified. Form frames to sizes and shapes indicated, with welded corners. Provide steel frames for doors, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4.1 Welded Frames

Continuously weld frame faces at corner joints with continuously weld stops and rabbets. Grind welds smooth.

Weld frames in accordance with the recommended practice of the Structural Welding Code Sections 1 through 6, AWS D1.1/D1.1M and in accordance with the practice specified by the producer of the metal being welded.

2.4.2 Anchors

Provide anchors to secure the frame to adjoining construction. Provide steel anchors, zinc-coated or painted with rust-inhibitive paint, not lighter than 18 gage.

2.4.2.1 Wall Anchors

Provide at least three anchors for each jamb. For frames which are more than 7.5 feet in height, provide one additional anchor for each jamb for each additional 2.5 feet or fraction thereof.

- a. Masonry: Provide anchors of corrugated or perforated steel straps or 3/16 inch diameter steel wire, adjustable or T-shaped;
- b. Stud partitions: Weld or otherwise securely fasten anchors to backs of frames. Design anchors to be fastened to closed steel studs with sheet metal screws, and to open steel studs by wiring or welding.

2.4.2.2 Floor Anchors

Provide floor anchors drilled for 3/8 inch anchor bolts at bottom of each jamb member.

2.5 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL FRAMES

SDI/DOOR A250.8, Level 3 frames for interior wood doors as specified in Section 08 14 00 WOOD DOORS. Form frames to sizes and shapes indicated, with welded corners. Provide steel frames for wood doors, unless otherwise indicated.

2.5.1 Welded Frames

Continuously weld frame faces at corner joints continuously weld stops and rabbets. Grind welds smooth.

2.6 FIRE DOORS AND FRAMES

NFPA 80 and this specification. The requirements of NFPA 80 takes precedence over details indicated or specified.

2.6.1 Labels

Provide fire door frames bearing the label of Underwriters Laboratories (UL), Factory Mutual Engineering and Research (FM), or Warnock Hersey International (WHI) attesting to the rating required. Testing must be in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C. Provide labels that are metal with raised letters, bearing the name or file number of the door frame manufacturer. Labels must be permanently affixed at the factory to door frames. Do not paint labels.

2.7 WEATHERSTRIPPING

As specified in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE.

2.8 HARDWARE PREPARATION

Provide minimum hardware reinforcing gages as specified in SDI/DOOR A250.6. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive finish hardware. Prepare doors and frames for hardware in accordance with the applicable requirements of SDI/DOOR A250.8 and SDI/DOOR A250.6. For additional requirements refer to ANSI/BHMA A156.115. Drill and tap for surface-applied hardware at the project site. Build additional reinforcing for surface-applied hardware into the door at the factory. Locate hardware in accordance with the requirements of SDI/DOOR A250.8, as applicable. Punch door frames, with the exception of frames that will have weatherstripping or soundproof gasketing, to receive a minimum of two rubber or vinyl door silencers on lock side of single doors and one silencer for each leaf at heads of double doors. Set lock strikes out to provide clearance for silencers.

2.9 FINISHES

2.9.1 Factory-Primed Finish

Thoroughly clean all surfaces of doors and frames then chemically treat and factory prime with a rust inhibiting coating as specified in SDI/DOOR A250.8.

2.9.2 Hot-Dip Zinc-Coated and Factory-Primed Finish

Fabricate exterior doors and frames from hot dipped zinc coated steel, alloyed type, that complies with ASTM A924/A924M and ASTM A653/A653M. The coating weight must meet or exceed the minimum requirements for coatings having 0.4 ounces per square foot, total both sides, i.e., A40. Repair damaged zinc-coated surfaces by the application of zinc dust paint. Thoroughly clean and chemically treat to insure maximum paint adhesion. Factory prime as specified in SDI/DOOR A250.8.

2.9.3 Electrolytic Zinc-Coated Anchors and Accessories

Provide electrolytically deposited zinc-coated steel in accordance with ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Quality, Coating Class A. Phosphate treat and factory prime zinc-coated surfaces as specified in SDI/DOOR A250.8.

2.10 FABRICATION AND WORKMANSHIP

Provide finished doors and frames that are strong and rigid, neat in appearance, and free from defects, waves, scratches, cuts, dents, ridges, holes, warp, and buckle. Provide molded members that are clean cut, straight, and true, with joints coped or mitered, well formed, and in true

alignment. Dress exposed welded and soldered joints smooth. Design door frame sections for use with the wall construction indicated. Corner joints must be well formed and in true alignment. Conceal fastenings where practicable.

2.10.1 Grouted Frames

For frames to be installed in exterior walls and to be filled with mortar or grout, fill the stops with strips of rigid insulation to keep the grout out of the stops and to facilitate installation of stop-applied head and jamb seals.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Frames

Set frames in accordance with [SDI/DOOR A250.11](#). Plumb, align, and brace securely until permanent anchors are set. Anchor bottoms of frames with expansion bolts or powder-actuated fasteners. Build in or secure wall anchors to adjoining construction. Backfill frames with mortar. Coat inside of frames with corrosion-inhibiting bituminous material. For frames in exterior walls, ensure that stops are filled with rigid insulation before grout is placed.

3.1.2 Doors

Hang doors in accordance with clearances specified in [SDI/DOOR A250.8](#). After erection and glazing, clean and adjust hardware.

3.1.3 Fire Doors and Frames

Install fire doors and frames, including hardware, in accordance with [NFPA 80](#). Install fire rated smoke doors and frames in accordance with [NFPA 80](#) and [NFPA 105](#).

3.2 PROTECTION

Protect doors and frames from damage. Repair damaged doors and frames prior to completion and acceptance of the project or replace with new, as directed. Wire brush rusted frames until rust is removed. Clean thoroughly. Apply an all-over coat of rust-inhibitive paint of the same type used for shop coat.

3.3 CLEANING

Upon completion, clean exposed surfaces of doors and frames thoroughly. Remove mastic smears and other unsightly marks.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 11 16

ALUMINUM DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

AAMA 2604 (2017a) Voluntary Specification,
Performance Requirements and Test
Procedures for High Performance Organic
Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon
Structural Steel

ASTM B209 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

ASTM B209M (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric)

ASTM B221 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

ASTM B221M (2013) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric)

ASTM E283 (2004; R 2012) Determining the Rate of Air
Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain
Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure
Differences Across the Specimen

ASTM E331 (2000; R 2016) Standard Test Method for
Water Penetration of Exterior Windows,
Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by
Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference

ASTM E1886 (2013a) Standard Test Method for
Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain
Walls, Doors, and Impact Protective
Systems Impacted by Missile(s) and Exposed
to Cyclic Pressure Differentials

ASTM E1996 (2017) Standard Specification for
Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain
Walls, Doors, and Impact Protective

Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in
Hurricanes

ASTM F1642/F1642M

(2017) Standard Test Method for Glazing
and Glazing Systems Subject to Airblast
Loadings

ASTM F2247

(2011; R 2017) Standard Test Method for
Metal Doors Used in Blast Resistant
Applications (Equivalent Static Load
Method)

ASTM F2927

(2012) Standard Test Method for Door
Systems Subject to Airblast Loadings

NATIONAL FENESTRATION RATING COUNCIL (NFRC)

NFRC 100

(2014) Procedure for Determining
Fenestration Product U-Factors

NFRC 200

(2014) Procedure for Determining
Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain
Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at
Normal Incidence

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Structural Calculations

1.2.1.1 Minimum Antiterrorism Performance

Provide doors meeting the minimum antiterrorism performance as specified
in the paragraphs below.

a. Dynamic Design Analysis Method

As an alternative to the static equivalent load design approach
described above, glazed opening framing members, anchors, and glazing
may be designed using a dynamic analysis to prove the glazed opening
system will provide performance equivalent to or better than a very
low hazard rating in accordance with ASTM F1642/F1642M associated with
the applicable low level of protection for the project.

b. Standard Airblast Test Method

Testing in accordance with ASTM F2927 may be by shock tube or arena
test. Perform the test on the entire proposed door assembly, which
must include, but not be limited to, the glazing, its framing/support
system, operating devices, and all anchorage devices. Install door
system anchorage that replicates the method of installation to be used
for the project. Utilize the fasteners and anchorage methods used to
attach the tested door assembly that are representative of the actual
door installation. Demonstrate by calculation any deviations in
actual installation of the connections or the connected elements from
those tested to provide the damage level as indicated below.

The acceptance criteria for the proposed door systems, as determined
by the damage level/door response damage criteria of ASTM F2247 and
ASTM F2927, will provide a performance equivalent to or better than a

category III door damage level rating.

1.2.2 Wind Borne Debris

Provide impact resistant door assemblies meeting the Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistant Performance requirements of [ASTM E1996](#) and [ASTM E1886](#).

1.2.3 Air Infiltration

When tested in accordance with [ASTM E283](#), air infiltration per door leaf cannot exceed 0.6 cubic feet per minute per square foot of fixed area at a test pressure of 6.24 pounds per square foot.

1.2.4 Water Penetration

When tested in accordance with [ASTM E331](#), there can be no water penetration at a pressure of 2.86 pounds per square foot of fixed area.

1.2.5 Thermal Transmittance, Solar Heat Gain, Visible Light Transmittance

Provide products bearing [NFRC Project Label Certificates for Fenestration](#) verifying compliance with requirements for each assembly indicated. An NFRC Bid Report, or approved equal, for field assembled exterior doors may be submitted in lieu of Project Label Certificates for Fenestration if such reports are created in accordance with NFRC CAMP procedures and are provided by the manufacturer. Such alternate reports may be submitted with shop drawings, however, NFRC validated Project Label Certificates for Fenestration are required as a Closeout Submittal. Contact NFRC for information on [NFRC 100](#) and [NFRC 200](#) Compliance and Monitoring Program (CAMP) rating requirements:

<http://www.nfrc.org/industry/certification/compliance-and-monitoring-program-camp/>

1.2.5.1 Doors with Less than 50 Percent Glazed Area

For exterior aluminum entrances doors with less than 50 percent glazed area, the glazed area is considered the fenestration area and must be certified by the National Fenestration Rating Council with a whole window U-Factor, SHGC and VLT as required above.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section [01 33 29](#) SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section [01 33 00](#) SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

[SD-02 Shop Drawings](#)

For Each Type of [Door and Frame Assembly](#); G

[SD-03 Product Data](#)

For Each Type of [Door and Frame Assembly](#); G

[Recycled Content of Aluminum Material](#); S

SD-04 Samples

Finish Samples; G

SD-05 Design Data

Structural Calculations for Deflection and Antiterrorism; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Air Infiltration; G

Water Penetration; G

Standard Airblast; G

SD-07 Certificates

NFRC Project Label Certificates for Fenestration; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation of Each Type of Door and Frame Assembly; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Adjustments, Cleaning, and Maintenance; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

NFRC Project Label Certificates for Fenestration; G

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Inspect materials delivered to the site for damage. Unload and store with minimum handling. Provide storage space in dry location with adequate ventilation, free from dust or water, and easily accessible for inspection and handling. Stack materials on non-absorptive strips or wood platforms. Do not cover doors and frames with tarps, polyethylene film, or similar coverings. Protect finished surfaces during shipping and handling using manufacturer's standard method. Do not apply coatings or lacquers to surfaces to which caulking and glazing compounds must adhere.

1.5 QUALITY CONTROL

1.5.1 Shop Drawing

Indicate elevations and sections for each type of door and frame assembly. Show sizes and details of each assembly, frame construction, subframe attachment, thickness and gages of metal, details of door and frame construction, proposed method(s) of anchorage, provisions for a location of hardware, method and materials for flashing and weatherstripping, miscellaneous trim, installation details, and other related items necessary for a complete representation of all components. A qualified blast engineer must perform testing or calculations for door system design resistance to specified blast loads.

1.5.2 Finish Samples

Submit two color charts and two finish sample chips from manufacturer's standard color and finish options for each type of finish indicated.

1.5.3 Design Analysis

Submit design analysis with calculations showing that the design of each different size and type of door unit and its anchorage to the structure meets the minimum antiterrorism standards required by paragraph MINIMUM ANTITERRORISM PERFORMANCE, unless conformance is demonstrated by standard blast test results. Calculations verifying the performance of each door proposed for use, under the given loads, must be prepared and signed by a registered Professional Engineer. The door components and anchorage devices to the structure, as determined by the design analysis, must be reflected in the shop drawings.

1.5.4 Test Reports

Test door assembly for evaluation of hazards generated from airblast loading in accordance with ASTM F2247 and ASTM F2927 by an independent testing agency regularly engaged in blast testing. This test method and the resulting data are valid for the door size tested and smaller doors of identical construction.

Design Door assembly using a dynamic analysis to prove the performance equivalent to or better than a category III door damage level in accordance with ASTM F2927. Use a triangular blast load using the applicable pressure and impulse identified above.

For minimum Antiterrorism doors, in lieu of a Design Analysis, submit results of standard blast testing, included in a test report, providing information in accordance with ASTM F2247 and ASTM F2927, as prepared by the independent testing agency performing the test. The test results must demonstrate the ability of each door proposed for use to withstand the blast loading parameters and achieve the damage level rating specified in paragraph TESTING.

Testing in accordance with ASTM F2927 may be by shock tube or arena test. Perform the test on the entire proposed door assembly, which must include, but not be limited to, the glazing, its framing/support system, operating devices, and all anchorage devices. Install door system anchorage that replicates the method of installation to be used for the project. Utilize the fasteners and anchorage methods used to attach the tested door assembly that are representative of the actual door installation.

The acceptance criteria for the proposed door systems, as determined by the damage level/door response damage criterial of ASTM F2247 and ASTM F2927, will provide a performance equivalent to or better than a category III door damage level rating.

1.5.5 Operation and Maintenance Data

Submit detailed instructions for installation, adjustments, cleaning, and maintenance of each type of assembly indicated.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6.1 Engineer Qualifications for Blast Design

All blast design calculations must be performed by or under the direct supervision of a registered engineer with a minimum of 5 years' experience performing blast design. The engineering firm performing the blast design must be able to demonstrate experience on similar size projects using similar design methods to meet the requirements outlined in this specification.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DOORS AND FRAMES

Provide swing-type aluminum doors and frames of size, design, and location indicated. Provide doors complete with frames, framing members, subframes, trim, and accessories.

2.2 MATERIALS

2.2.1 Anchors

Stainless steel.

2.2.2 Weatherstripping

As recommended by door manufacturer.

2.2.3 Aluminum Alloy for Doors and Frames

ASTM B221M, ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions. ASTM B209M, ASTM B209, alloy and temper best suited for aluminum sheets and strips. Provide aluminum materials that include a minimum of 30 percent recycled content. Provide data indicating percentage of recycled content of aluminum material.

2.2.4 Fasteners

Hard aluminum or stainless steel.

2.2.5 Structural Steel

ASTM A36/A36M.

2.2.6 Aluminum Paint

Aluminum door manufacturer's standard aluminum paint.

2.3 FABRICATION

2.3.1 Aluminum Frames

Extruded aluminum shapes with contours approximately as indicated. Provide removable glass stops and glazing beads for frames accommodating fixed glass. Use countersunk stainless steel Phillips screws for exposed fastenings, and space not more than 12 inches on center. Mill joints in frame members to a hairline fit, reinforce, and secure mechanically.

2.3.2 Aluminum Doors

Of type, size, and design indicated and minimum 1-3/4 inch thick. minimum wall thickness, 0.125 inch, except beads and trim, 0.050 inch. Door sizes shown are nominal; include standard clearances as follows: 0.093 inch at hinge and lock stiles, 0.125 inch between meeting stiles, 0.125 inch at top rails, 0.187 inch between bottom and threshold, and 0.687 inch between bottom and floor. Provide bevel single-acting doors 0.063 or 0.125 inch at lock, hinge, and meeting stile edges.

2.3.2.1 Flush Doors

Use facing sheets with a plain smooth surface. Use one of the following constructions:

- a. A phenolic resin-impregnated kraft paper honeycomb core, surrounded at edges and around glass and louvered areas with extruded aluminum shapes. Provide cores with a minimum impregnation of 18 percent resin content. Provide sheet aluminum door facings minimum 0.032 inch thick laminated to a 0.10 inch thick tempered hardboard backing, with the backing bonded to the honeycomb core. Bond facing sheets to cores under heat and pressure with thermosetting adhesive and mechanically lock to extruded edge members.
- b. A phenolic resin-impregnated kraft paper honeycomb core. Use aluminum facing sheets minimum 0.050 inch thick and form into two pans to eliminate seams on faces. Bond honeycomb core to face sheets using epoxy resin or contact cement-type adhesive.
- c. A solid fibrous core, surrounded at edges and around glass and louvered areas and cross braced at intermediate points with extruded aluminum shapes. Use aluminum facing sheets of minimum 0.050 inch thickness. Bond facing sheets to core under heat and pressure with a thermosetting adhesive, and mechanically lock to the extruded edge members.
- d. Form from extruded tubular stiles and rails mitered at corners, reinforce, and continuously weld at miters. Provide facing sheets of minimum 0.032 inch thick sheet aluminum internally reinforced with aluminum channels or Z-bars placed horizontally not more than 16 inch apart and extending the full width of panels. Fit spaces between reinforcing with sound-deadening insulation. Weld facing sheets to reinforcing bars or channels and to stiles and rails. Finish facing sheets flush with faces of stiles and rails.
- e. Form from an internal grid composed of extruded aluminum tubular sections. Provide tubular sections at all sides and perimeter of louver and glass openings. Provide three extruded aluminum tubular sections at top and bottom of each door. Provide wall thickness of tubular sections minimum 0.09 inch except at lock rails which must be minimum 0.125 inch thick, hinge lock rails which must be minimum 0.125 inch thick, and hinge rail edges which must be minimum 0.19 inch thick. Fill spaces in door with mineral insulation. Provide facing sheets of aluminum minimum 0.09 inch thick.
- f. Form from extruded aluminum members at top and bottom, both sides, and at perimeters of louver and glass openings. Provide wall sections of extruded aluminum members minimum 0.09 inch thick and reinforce for application of hardware. Cover framing members on both sides with

aluminum facing sheets minimum 0.064 inch thick. Fill door panels with 25 pounds per square inch density polystyrene with a flame spread rating of no more than 25.

2.3.3 Welding and Fastening

Where possible, locate welds on unexposed surfaces. Dress welds on exposed surfaces smoothly. Select welding rods, filler wire, and flux to produce a uniform texture and color in finished work. Remove flux and spatter from surfaces immediately after welding. Exposed screws or bolts will be permitted only in inconspicuous locations, and must have countersunk heads. Weld concealed reinforcements for hardware in place.

2.3.4 Weatherstripping

Provide on stiles and rails of exterior doors. Fit into slots which are integral with doors or frames. Weatherstripping must be replaceable without special tools, and adjustable at meeting rails of pairs of doors. During installation, verify doors swing freely and close positively. Refer to paragraph AIR INFILTRATION for air leakage requirements and testing.

2.3.5 Anchors

On the backs of subframes, provide anchors of the sizes and shapes indicated for securing subframes to adjacent construction. Anchor transom bars at ends and mullions at head and sill. Where indicated, reinforce vertical mullions with structural steel members of sufficient length to extend up to the overhead structural slab or framing and secure thereto. Place anchors near top and bottom of each jamb and at intermediate points not more than 25 inch apart.

2.3.6 Provisions for Hardware

Coordinate with Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE. Deliver hardware templates and hardware (except field-applied hardware) to the door manufacturer for use in fabrication of aluminum doors and frames. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap doors and frames at the factory to receive template hardware. Provide doors to receive surface-applied hardware, except push plates, kick plates, and mop plates, with reinforcing only; drill and tap in the field. Provide hardware reinforcements of stainless steel or steel with hot-dipped galvanized finish, and secure with stainless steel screws. Provide reinforcement in core of flush doors as required to receive locks, door closers, and other hardware.

2.3.7 Finishes

Provide exposed aluminum surfaces with factory finish of anodic coating or organic coating.

2.3.7.1 Organic Coating

Clean and prime exposed aluminum surfaces. Provide a high-performance finish in accordance with AAMA 2604 with total dry film thickness of minimum 1.2 mils. Finish color to be as indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Plumb, square, level, and align frames and framing members to receive doors. Anchor frames to adjacent construction as indicated and in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions and the approved shop drawings. Install anchorage that complies with applicable structural requirements. Anchor bottom of each frame to rough floor construction with $3/32$ inch thick minimum stainless steel angle clips secured to back of each jamb and to floor construction; use stainless steel bolts and expansion rivets for fastening clip anchors. Hang doors to produce clearances specified in paragraph ALUMINUM DOORS. After erection and glazing, adjust doors and hardware to operate properly.

3.2 PROTECTION FROM DISSIMILAR MATERIALS

3.2.1 Dissimilar Metals

Where aluminum surfaces come in contact with metals other than stainless steel, zinc, or small areas of white bronze, protect from direct contact to dissimilar metals.

3.2.1.1 Protection

Provide one of the following systems to protect surfaces in contact with dissimilar metals:

- a. Paint the dissimilar metal with one coat of heavy-bodied bituminous paint.
- b. Apply elastomeric sealant between aluminum and dissimilar metals in accordance with Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.
- c. Paint dissimilar metals with one coat of primer and one coat of aluminum paint.
- d. Use a non-absorptive tape or gasket in permanently dry locations.

3.2.2 Drainage from Dissimilar Metals

In locations where drainage from dissimilar metals has direct contact with aluminum, provide protective paint to prevent aluminum discoloration.

3.2.3 Masonry and Concrete

Provide aluminum surfaces in contact with mortar, concrete, or other masonry materials with one coat of heavy-bodied bituminous paint.

3.2.4 Wood or Other Absorptive Materials

Provide aluminum surfaces in contact with absorptive materials subject to frequent moisture, and aluminum surfaces in contact with treated wood, with two coats of aluminum paint or one coat of heavy-bodied bituminous paint. In lieu of painting aluminum, paint the wood or other absorptive surface with two coats of aluminum paint and seal joints with elastomeric sealant.

3.3 SEALING AROUND ASSEMBLIES

Seal all penetrations of the air barrier by sealing around door openings as necessary to achieve compliance with air leakage requirements indicated in the requirements of Section 07 27 10.00 10 BUILDING AIR BARRIER SYSTEM, and Section 07 05 23 PRESSURE TESTING AN AIR BARRIER SYSTEM FOR AIR TIGHTNESS. Flash all doors with corrosion resistant flashing to prevent water intrusion.

3.4 CLEANING

Upon completion of installation, clean door and frame surfaces in accordance with door manufacturer's written recommended procedure. Do not use abrasive, caustic, or acid cleaning agents.

3.5 PROTECTION

Protect doors and frames from damage and from contamination by other materials such as cement mortar. Prior to completion and acceptance of the work, restore damaged doors and frames to original condition, or replace with new ones.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 14 00

WOOD DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E2226 (2015a2015; R 2019b) Standard Practice for Application of Hose Stream

CALIFORNIA AIR RESOURCES BOARD (CARB)

CARB 93120 (2007) Airborne Toxic Control Measure (ATCM) to Reduce Formaldehyde Emissions from Composite Wood Products

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA LD 3 (2005) Standard for High-Pressure Decorative Laminates

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 80 (2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives

NFPA 252 (2017) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

40 CFR 770 Formaldehyde Standards for Composite Wood Products

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 10B (2008; Reprint Feb 2015) Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

WINDOW AND DOOR MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (WDMA)

ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A (2013) Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors

ANSI/WDMA I.S.6A (2013) Interior Architectural Stile and Rail Doors

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Doors; G

Submit drawings or catalog data showing each type of door unit. Indicate within drawings and data the door types and construction, sizes, thickness, methods of assembly, and glazing.

SD-03 Product Data

Doors; G

Accessories

Water-resistant Sealer

Sample Warranty

Fire Resistance Rating; G

SD-04 Samples

Doors

Prior to the delivery of wood doors, submit a sample section of each type of door which shows the stile, rail, veneer, finish, and core construction.

SD-06 Test Reports

Cycle-Slam

Hinge Loading Resistance

Submit cycle-slam test report for doors tested in accordance with ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A, and hinge loading resistance test report for doors tested in accordance with ANSI/WDMA I.S.6A.

SD-07 Certificates

Certificates of Grade

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty

1.3 CERTIFICATIONS

1.3.1 Certified Wood Grades

Provide certificates of grade from the grading agency on acoustical doors

and fire doors.

1.3.2 Indoor Air Quality Certification

1.3.2.1 Composite Wood, Wood Structural Panel and Agrifiber Products

For purposes of this specification, composite wood and agrifiber products include particleboard, medium density fiberboard (MDF), wheatboard, strawboard, panel substrates, and door cores. Provide products certified to meet requirements of both [40 CFR 770](#) and [CARB 93120](#). Provide current product certification documentation from certification body.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver doors to the site in an undamaged condition and protect against damage and dampness. Stack doors flat under cover. Support on blocking, a minimum of [4 inch](#) thick, located at each end and at the midpoint of the door. Store doors in a well-ventilated building so that they will not be exposed to excessive moisture, heat, dryness, direct sunlight, or extreme changes of temperature and humidity. Do not store in a building under construction until concrete, masonry work, and plaster are dry. Replace defective or damaged doors with new ones.

1.5 [WARRANTY](#)

Warrant doors free of defects as set forth in the door manufacturer's standard door warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 [DOORS](#)

Provide doors of the types, sizes, and designs indicated and free of urea-formaldehyde resins.

2.1.1 Flush Doors

2.1.1.1 Interior Flush Doors

Provide hollow core, Type II flush doors conforming to [ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A](#) with faces of sound grade hardboard for plastic laminate finish. Finish plastic laminate faced doors on both vertical edges with laminated plastic of color matching faces.

2.1.2 Acoustical Doors

Acoustical doors as specified in Section [08 34 73](#) SOUND CONTROL DOOR ASSEMBLIES.

2.1.3 Fire Doors

Provide doors specified or indicated to have a [fire resistance rating](#) conforming to the requirements of [UL 10B](#), [ASTM E2226](#), or [NFPA 252](#) for the class of door indicated. Affix a permanent metal label with raised or incised markings indicating testing agency's name and approved hourly fire rating to hinge edge of each door.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

2.2.1 Door Light Openings

Provide glazed openings with the manufacturer's standard wood moldings. Provide moldings for doors to receive natural finish of the same wood species and color as the wood face veneers. Lip type moldings for flush doors.

2.2.2 Additional Hardware Reinforcement

Provide the minimum lock blocks to secure the specified hardware. The measurement of top, bottom, and intermediate rail blocks are a minimum 125 mm 5 inch by full core width. Comply with the manufacturer's labeling requirements for reinforcement blocking, but not mineral material similar to the core.

2.3 FABRICATION

2.3.1 Marking

Stamp each door with a brand, stamp, or other identifying mark indicating quality and construction of the door.

2.3.2 Quality and Construction

Identify the standard on which the construction of the door was based, identify the standard under which preservative treatment was made.

2.3.3 Preservative Treatment

Treat doors scheduled for restrooms, janitor closets and other possible wet locations with a water-repellent preservative treatment and so marketed at the manufacturer's plant.

2.3.4 Adhesives and Bonds

ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A. Use Type II bond for interior doors. Provide a nonstaining adhesive on doors with a natural finish.

2.3.5 Prefitting

Provide factory prefinished and factory prefitted doors for the specified hardware, door frame and door-swing indicated. Machine and size doors at the factory by the door manufacturer in accordance with the standards under which the doors are produced and manufactured. The work includes sizing, beveling edges, mortising, and drilling for hardware and providing necessary beaded openings for glass. Provide the door manufacturer with the necessary hardware samples, and frame and hardware schedules to coordinate the work.

2.3.6 Finishes

2.3.6.1 Plastic Laminate Finish

Factory applied, **ANSI/NEMA LD 3**, General or Specific purpose type, **0.050 inch** minimum thickness. Glue laminated plastic for hollow core doors to wood veneer or hardboard backing to form door panel. Provide a combined thickness of laminate sheet and backing of **0.10 inch** minimum.

2.3.6.2 Color

Provide door finish colors as indicated.

2.3.7 Water-Resistant Sealer

Provide manufacturer's standard water-resistant sealer compatible with the specified finish.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

Meet or exceed the following minimum performance criteria of stiles of "B" and "C" label fire doors utilizing standard mortise leaf hinges:

- a. **Cycle-slam:** Standard Duty Doors: 250,000 cycles with no loose hinge screws or other visible signs of failure when tested in accordance with the requirements of **ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A**. Heavy Duty Doors: 500,000 cycles with no loose hinge screws or other visible signs of failure when tested in accordance with the requirements of **ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A**.
- b. **Hinge loading resistance:** Averages of ten test samples not less than Heavy Duty doors: 475 pounds force when tested for direct screw withdrawal in accordance with **ANSI/WDMA I.S.6A** using a No. 12, 1-1/4 inch long, steel, fully threaded wood screw. Drill 5/32 inch pilot hole, use 1-1/2 inch opening around screw for bearing surface, and engage screw full, except for last 1/8 inch. Do not use a steel plate to reinforce screw area.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Do not install building construction materials that show visual evidence of biological growth.

Before installation, seal top and bottom edges of doors with the approved water-resistant sealer. Seal cuts made on the job immediately after cutting using approved water-resistant sealer. Fit, trim, and hang doors with a 1/16 inch minimum, 1/8 inch maximum clearance at sides and top, and a 3/16 inch minimum, 1/4 inch maximum clearance over thresholds. Provide 3/8 inch minimum, 7/16 inch maximum clearance at bottom where no threshold occurs. Bevel edges of doors at the rate of 1/8 inch in 2 inch. Door warp must not exceed 1/4 inch when measured in accordance with **ANSI/WDMA I.S.1A**.

3.1.1 Fire Doors

Install fire doors in accordance with **NFPA 80**. Do not paint over labels.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 31 00

ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)
Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon
Structural Steel

ASTM A653/A653M (2019) Standard Specification for Steel
Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or
Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by
the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A666 (2015) Standard Specification for Annealed
or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel
Sheet, Strip, Plate and Flat Bar

ASTM A1008/A1008M (2016) Standard Specification for Steel,
Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural,
High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength
Low-Alloy with Improved Formability,
Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable

ASTM E90 (2009; R2016) Standard Test Method for
Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound
Transmission Loss of Building Partitions
and Elements

ASTM E119 (2018c; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for
Fire Tests of Building Construction and
Materials

ASTM E413 (2016) Classification for Rating Sound
Insulation

ASTM E1332 (2016) Standard Classification for Rating
Outdoor-Indoor Sound Attenuation

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

MPI 79 (2012) Primer, Alkyd, Anti-Corrosive for
Metal

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 80 (2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors
and Other Opening Protectives

NFPA 252 (2017) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of
Door Assemblies

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 10B (2008; Reprint Feb 2015) Fire Tests of
Door Assemblies

UL 263 (2011; Reprint Jan 2019) UL Standard for
Safety Fire Tests of Building Construction
and Materials

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Access Doors And Panels; G

SD-03 Product Data

Access Doors And Panels; G

Hardware Including Locks and Keys; G

Accessories; G

Power Transfer Components; G

Recycled Content; S

SD-04 Samples

Finishes; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Acoustical Ratings of Assemblies; G

1.3 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

For access doors and panels provide the following:

1.3.1 Shop Drawings

For field assembled access doors and panels, provide plans, elevations, sections, and details for each type of access door and panel assembly.

Indicate frame, surface and edge construction, materials, and accessories. Indicate types of finished surfaces and details for panel edge conditions. Provide a door schedule with a unique number for each access door and panel, specific location in the project, location of hinges and hardware for each door. Indicate [acoustical ratings of assemblies](#) as sound transmission class (STC) ratings, and locations and [power transfer components](#) for electrified locks and alarms.

1.3.2 Product Data

For shop assembled access doors and panels, provide literature indicating sizes, types, frame and edge construction, finishes, [hardware](#), accessories such as gaskets, seals and weatherstripping, and location of each door and panel in the project. Indicate acoustical ratings of assemblies, fire-ratings of assemblies, and locations and power transfer components for electrified locks and alarms. Provide details of adjoining work for each condition indicated.

1.3.3 Finish Samples

Submit two color charts from manufacturer's standard color and finish options for each type of frame and panel assembly finish indicated.

1.3.4 Test Reports

Provide test reports for acoustical assemblies when tested in accordance with [ASTM E90](#) and classified in accordance with [ASTM E413](#) and [ASTM E1332](#).

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.4.1 Structural Requirements

Provide floor access assemblies to support live loads indicated for floors. Deflection must not exceed 1/180 of span.

1.4.2 Acoustical Requirements

Provide access panels with a minimum sound transmission class (STC) as indicated on the Drawings. Provide gasketing in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

1.4.3 Insulated Access Panels

Provide panels in a thickness as necessary to achieve a minimum R-value as indicated on the Drawings. Provide gasketing as necessary for an airtight installation.

1.4.4 Access Panels for Wet Areas

Provide panel assemblies that will be located in wet areas with corrosion resistant finishes and hardware and water resistant gasketing.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

Protect from corrosion, deformation, and other types of damage. Store items in an enclosed area free from contact with soil and weather. Remove and replace damaged items with new items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 RECYCLED CONTENT

Provide products with recycled content. Provide data for each product with recycled content, identifying percentage of recycled content.

2.2 MATERIALS

2.2.1 Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A36/A36M](#).

2.2.2 Sheet Steel

Provide cold rolled steel sheet substrate in accordance with [ASTM A1008/A1008M](#), Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.

2.2.3 Stainless Steel

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A666](#), type 302 or 304.

2.2.4 Metallic Coated Steel Sheet

Provide in accordance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#), Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.

2.2.5 Hardware

Provide automatic closing devices. Provide latch releases operable from insides of doors.

2.2.6 Hinges

Provide concealed spring hinges, 175 degrees of opening, with removable hinge pins to allow removal of door panel from frame. Provide hinges of same steel as door and frame or in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. If providing noncontinuous hinges, provide in numbers required to maintain alignment of door panel with frame. Provide coatings as necessary to permanently protect dissimilar metals from contact with one another; see Part 3 herein for more information.

2.2.7 Locks

Unless otherwise indicated, provide flush keyed lock and tamper proof screws (spanner head locks) for access panels in locations requiring such security. Lock cylinders are specified in Section [08 71 00](#) DOOR HARDWARE.

2.2.8 Accessories

Provide anchors in size, number and location on four sides to secure access door to substrate. Provide anchors in types as recommended by manufacturer's written installation instructions for each substrate indicated. Provide shims, bushings, clips, gaskets, and other devices as necessary for a complete installation.

2.3 FABRICATION

2.3.1 Thickness, Size, Edges

Fabricate frames for access doors of steel not lighter than 16 gage with welded joints and anchorage for securing to adjacent construction. Provide doors a minimum of 24 by 24 inches and of not lighter than 16 gage steel, with stiffened edges and welded attachments. Provide with eased (lightly rounded) edges, without burrs, snags or sharpness and exposed welds ground smooth.

2.3.2 Welding

Provide in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

2.4 ACCESS ASSEMBLY TYPES

Unless indicated otherwise, provide flush-face steel access doors and panels with steel frames and flanges.

2.4.1 Recessed Doors

Provide recessed access doors with gypsum wallboard bead flanges. Depth of door panel recess must accommodate the installed thickness of the finish material of the wall assembly for a flush finished condition of the wall and the access panel face. Reinforce panel and frame to prevent sagging.

2.4.2 Fire-rated Doors

2.4.2.1 Door Construction

Provide ceiling access door construction in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Provide wall access doors in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

2.4.2.2 Labels

Provide class B opening according to UL 10B or test by another nationally recognized laboratory, approved by the Contracting Officer. Provide fire-rating as indicated herein, with a maximum temperature rise of 216 degrees F.

2.4.2.3 Door Panel and Frame

Steel sheet, with mineral fiber insulation core, insulated sandwich type construction.

2.4.3 Acoustical Doors

Manufacturer's standard assembly rated in accordance with STC requirements indicated herein. Acoustical insulating materials must have a flame spread rating of no more than 25.

2.4.4 Insulated Doors

Provide access door panels with 25 pounds per square inch density polystyrene with a flame spread rating of no more than 25.

2.5 FINISHES

Provide steel frames and panel surfaces with a powder coated finish. Provide manufacturer's standard two coat finish system consisting of one coat primer and one thermoset topcoat. Provide dry film thickness in 2 mils minimum. Provide steel frame and panel surfaces with a shop applied prime coat. Field paint frames and panels to match wall and ceiling surfaces in which they occur. Provide brushed aluminum frames and panels.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Field verify all measurements prior to fabrication. Verify access door locations and sizes provide required maintenance access to installed building services components. Protect existing construction and completed work from damage during installation.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Install items at locations indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Include materials and parts as necessary for a complete installation of each item. Conceal fastenings where practicable. Poor matching of holes to fasteners is cause for rejection of the work.

3.3 ACCESS LOCATIONS

Install removable access panels directly below each valve, flow indicator, damper, air splitter or other utility requiring access that is located above ceilings, other than at acoustical panel ceilings, and that would otherwise not be accessible. Install access doors and panels permitting access to service valves, traps, dampers, cleanouts, and other mechanical, electrical and conveyor control items concealed in walls and partitions.

3.4 ACCESS LOCATIONS IN WET AREAS

When possible, avoid locating access panels in wet areas. When such locations cannot be avoided, provide moisture resistant assemblies as indicated in Part I herein.

3.5 RECESSED ACCESS DOORS

Install fire-rated access doors in fire-rated partitions and ceilings in accordance with NFPA 80.

3.6 FIELD PAINTING

Field painting primed access doors in accordance with the requirements of Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.7 DISSIMILAR MATERIALS

Where dissimilar metals are in contact, protect surfaces with a coating in accordance with MPI 79 to prevent galvanic or corrosive action.

3.8 ADJUSTMENT

Adjust hardware so that door panel opens freely. Adjust door when closed

center door panel in frame.

3.9 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Do not paint surfaces when damp or exposed to weather, when surface temperature is below 45 degrees F or over 95 degrees F, unless approved by the Contracting Officer.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 33 23

OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

ASCE 7 (2017) Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE FUN IP (2017) Fundamentals Handbook, I-P Edition

ASME INTERNATIONAL (ASME)

ASME B29.400 (2001; (R 2008) (R 2013) (R 2018))
Combination, "H" Type Mill Chains, and Sprockets

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A27/A27M (2017) Standard Specification for Steel Castings, Carbon, for General Application

ASTM A36/A36M (2014) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

ASTM A48/A48M (2003; R 2012) Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings

ASTM A53/A53M (2018) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless

ASTM A153/A153M (2016) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

ASTM A307 (2014; E 2017) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength

ASTM A653/A653M (2019) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM A666 (2015) Standard Specification for Annealed

or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel
Sheet, Strip, Plate and Flat Bar

ASTM A780/A780M

(2009; R 2015) Standard Practice for
Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of
Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings

ASTM A924/A924M

(2018) Standard Specification for General
Requirements for Steel Sheet,
Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM B221

(2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

ASTM D2000

(2012; R 2017) Standard Classification
System for Rubber Products in Automotive
Applications

ASTM E84

(2018a) Standard Test Method for Surface
Burning Characteristics of Building
Materials

ASTM E330/E330M

(2014) Structural Performance of Exterior
Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain
Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure
Difference

ASTM F568M

(2007) Standard Specification for Carbon
and Alloy Steel Externally Threaded Metric
Fasteners

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA ICS 2

(2000; R 2005; Errata 2008) Industrial
Control and Systems Controllers,
Contactors, and Overload Relays Rated 600 V

NEMA ICS 6

(1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and
Systems: Enclosures

NEMA MG 1

(2018) Motors and Generators

NEMA ST 1

(1988; R 1994; R 1997) Specialty
Transformers (Except General Purpose Type)

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70

(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA
20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4)
National Electrical Code

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 674

(2011; Reprint Nov 2018) UL Standard for
Safety Electric Motors and Generators for
Use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Overhead Coiling Doors; G
Counterbalancing Mechanism; G
Manual Door Operators; G
Electric Door Operators; G
Bottom Bars; G
Guides; G
Overhead Drum; G
Hood; G
Installation Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Overhead Coiling Doors; G
Hardware; G
Counterbalancing Mechanism; G
Manual Door Operators; G
Electric Door Operators; G

SD-05 Design Data

Overhead Coiling Doors; G
Hardware; G
Counterbalancing Mechanism; G
Manual Door Operators; G
Electric Door Operators; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; G
Materials; G

Devices; G

Procedures; G

Manufacture's Brochures; G

Parts Lists; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Warranty; G

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver doors to the jobsite wrapped in a protective covering with the brands and names clearly marked thereon. Store doors in an adequately ventilated dry location that is free from dirt and dust, water, or other contaminants. Store in a manner that permits easy access for inspection and handling.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Doors to be coiling type, with interlocking slats, complete with anchoring and door hardware, guides, hood, and operating mechanisms, and designed for use on openings as indicated. Use grease-sealed or self-lubricating bearings for rotating members.

2.1.1 Design Requirements

2.1.1.1 Overhead Coiling Door Detail Shop Drawings

Provide [installation drawings](#) for overhead coiling door assemblies which show: elevations of each door type, shape and thickness of materials, finishes, details of joints and connections, details of [guides](#) and fittings, rough opening dimensions, location and description of hardware, anchorage locations, and counterbalancing mechanism and door operator details. [Show locations of replaceable fusible links on wiring diagrams for power, signal and controls.](#) Include a schedule showing the location of each door with the drawings.

2.1.2 Performance Requirements

2.1.2.1 Wind Loading

Design and fabricate door assembly to withstand the wind loading pressure of at least 34 [pounds per square foot](#) with a maximum deflection of 1/120 of the opening width. Provide test data showing compliance with [ASTM E330/E330M](#). Sound engineering principles may be used to interpolate or extrapolate test results to door sizes not specifically tested. Ensure complete assembly meets or exceeds the requirements of [ASCE 7](#).

2.1.2.2 Operational Cycle Life

Design all portions of the door, hardware and operating mechanism that are subject to movement, wear, or stress fatigue to operate through a minimum number of 5 cycles per day. One complete cycle of door operation is

defined as when the door is in the closed position, moves to the fully open position, and returns to the closed position.

2.2 COMPONENTS

2.2.1 Overhead Coiling Doors

2.2.1.1 Curtain Materials and Construction

Provide curtain slats fabricated from Galvanized Steel 24/24 Gauge Grade 40 steel sheets conforming to [ASTM A653/A653M](#), with the additional requirement of a minimum yield point of 33,000 psi. Provide sheets, galvanized in accordance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#) and [ASTM A924/A924M](#).

Fabricate doors from interlocking cold-rolled slats, with section profiles as specified, designed to withstand the specified wind loading. Ensure the provided slats are continuous without splices for the width of the door.

Provide slats filled with manufacturer's standard thermal insulation complying with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, according to [ASTM E84](#). Enclose insulation completely within slat faces on interior surface of slats.

2.2.1.2 Insulated Curtains

Form Curtains from manufacturer's standard shapes of interlocking slats. Supply slat system with a minimum R-value of 4 when calculated in accordance with [ASHRAE FUN IP](#). Slats to consist of a closed cell urethane core not less than 11/16-inch thick, completely enclosed within metal facings. Ensure the exterior face of slats are the same gauge as specified for curtains. Select an interior face not lighter than 0.0219-inch. The insulated slat assembly requires a flame spread rating of not more than 25 and a smoke development factor of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with [ASTM E84](#).

2.2.1.3 Curtain Bottom Bar

Install curtain bottom bars as pairs of angles from the manufacturer's standard steel, stainless and aluminum extrusions not less than 2.0 by 2.0-inch by 0.188-inch. Ensure steel extrusions conform to [ASTM A36/A36M](#). Stainless steel extrusions conforming to [ASTM A666](#), Type 304. Aluminum extrusions conforming to [ASTM B221](#). Galvanize angles and fasteners in accordance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#) and [ASTM A924/A924M](#). Coat welds and abrasions with paint conforming to [ASTM A780/A780M](#).

2.2.1.4 Locks

Provide end and/or wind locks of Grade B cast steel conforming to [ASTM A27/A27M](#), galvanized in accordance with [ASTM A653/A653M](#), [ASTM A153/A153M](#) and [ASTM A924/A924M](#). Secure locks at every other curtain slat.

2.2.1.5 Weather Stripping

Ensure weather-stripping at the door-head and jamb is 1/8-inch thick sheet of natural or neoprene rubber with air baffles. Secure weather stripping to the insides of hoods with galvanized-steel fasteners through continuous galvanized-steel pressure bars at least 5/8-inch wide and 1/8-inch thick.

Ensure threshold weather-stripping is 1/8-inch thick sheet natural or neoprene rubber secured to the bottom bars.

Provide weather-stripping of natural or neoprene rubber conforming to ASTM D2000.

2.2.1.6 Locking Devices

Ensure slide bolt engages through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on both left and right jamb sides, operable from coil side.

Provide a locking device assembly which includes cylinder lock, spring-loaded dead bolt, operating handle, cam plate, and adjustable locking bars to engage through slots in tracks.

2.2.1.7 Safety Interlock

Equip power-operated doors with safety interlock switch to disengage power supply when door is locked.

2.2.1.8 Overhead Drum

Fabricate drums from nominal 0.028-inch thick, hot-dip galvanized steel sheet with G90 (Z275) zinc coating, complying with ASTM A653/A653M.

2.2.1.9 Slats

No. 5F, 24 gauge, Grade 40 steel, ASTM A653/A653M galvanized steel zinc coating.

2.2.2 Hardware

Ensure all hardware conforms to ASTM A153/A153M, ASTM A307, ASTM F568M, and ASTM A27/A27M.

2.2.2.1 Guides

Fabricate curtain jamb guides from the manufacturer's standard angles or channels of same material and finish as curtain slats unless otherwise indicated. Provide guides with sufficient depth and strength to retain curtain, and to withstand loading. Ensure curtain operates smoothly. Slot bolt holes for track adjustment.

2.2.2.2 Equipment Supports

Fabricate door-operating equipment supports from the manufacturer's standard steel shapes and plates conforming to ASTM A36/A36M, galvanized in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M and ASTM A924/A924M. Size the shapes and plates in accordance with the industry standards for the size, weight, and type of door installation.

2.2.2.3 Hood

Provide a hood with a minimum 24-gauge galvanized sheet metal, flanged at top for attachment to header and flanged at bottom to provide longitudinal stiffness. The hood encloses the curtain coil and counterbalance mechanism.

Provide a 24-gauge galvanized steel hood with reinforced top and bottom edges. Provide minimum 1/4-inch steel intermediate support brackets as required to prevent excessive sag.

2.2.3 Counterbalancing Mechanism

Counterbalance doors by means of manufacturer's standard mechanism with an adjustable-tension, steel helical torsion spring mounted, around a steel shaft and contained in a spring barrel connected to top of curtain with barrel rings. Use grease-sealed or self-lubricating bearings for rotating members.

2.2.3.1 Brackets

Fabricate brackets from minimum 3/16-inch steel plate. Permanently lubricate ball or roller bearings at rotating support points to support counterbalance shaft assembly and form end closures.

2.2.3.2 Counterbalance Barrels

Fabricate spring barrel of manufacturer's standard hot-formed, structural-quality, welded or seamless carbon-steel pipe, conforming to ASTM A53/A53M. Ensure the barrel is of sufficient diameter and wall thickness to support rolled-up curtain without distortion of slats. Limit barrel deflection to not more than 0.03 inch per foot of span under full load.

Curtain to be coiled on a pipe of sufficient size to carry door load with deflection not to exceed 0.033 inches per foot of door span and to be correctly balanced by steel helical springs, oil tempered, heat-treated torsion type. Use cast iron barrel plugs to anchor springs to tension shaft and pipe.

a. Barrel

Provide steel pipe capable of supporting curtain load with maximum deflection of 0.03 inches per foot of width.

b. Spring Balance

Provide an oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion spring assembly designed for proper balance of door. Ensure that effort to operate manually operated units does not exceed 25 lbs. Provide wheel for applying and adjusting spring torque.

2.2.3.3 Spring Balance

Install one or more oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion springs within the barrel, capable of producing sufficient torque to assure easy operation of the door curtain. Provide and size springs to counterbalance weight of curtain, with uniform adjustment accessible from outside barrel. Secure ends of springs to barrel and shaft with cast-steel barrel plugs.

2.2.3.4 Torsion Rod for Counter Balance

Fabricate rod from the manufacturer's standard cold-rolled steel, sized to hold fixed spring ends and carry torsional load.

2.2.3.5 Counterbalance Shaft Assembly

a. Barrel

Provide steel pipe capable of supporting the curtain load with maximum deflection of 0.03 inches per foot of width.

b. Spring Balance

Provide an oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion spring assembly designed for proper balance of door. Ensure that maximum effort to operate does not exceed 25 pounds. Provide wheel for applying and adjusting spring torque.

2.2.4 Manual Door Operators

2.2.4.1 Manual Chain-Hoist Door Operators

Provide door operators which consist of an endless steel hand chain, chain-pocket wheel, guard, and a geared reduction unit of at least a 3 to 1 ratio with a maximum lifting force of 25 lbf. Required pull for operation cannot exceed 35 pounds.

Provide chain hoists with a self-locking mechanism allowing the curtain to be stopped at any point in its upward or downward travel and to remain in that position until moved to the fully open or closed position. Provide hand chains of cadmium-plated alloy steel conforming to ASME B29.400. Ensure yield point of the chain is at least three times the required hand-chain pull.

Provide chain sprocket wheels of cast iron conforming to ASTM A48/A48M.

2.2.5 Electric Door Operators

Provide electrical wiring and door operating controls conforming to the applicable requirements of NFPA 70.

Electric door-operator assemblies needs to be the sizes and capacities recommended and provided by the door manufacturer for specified doors. Furnish complete assemblies with electric motors and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear reduction units, solenoid-operated brakes, clutch, remote-control stations, manual or automatic control devices, and accessories as required for proper operation of the doors.

Design the operators so that motors may be removed without disturbing the limit-switch adjustment and affecting the emergency auxiliary operators.

Provide a manual operator of crank-gear or chain-gear mechanisms with a release clutch to permit manual operation of doors in case of power failure. Arrange the emergency manual operator so that it may be put into and out of operation from floor level, and its use does not affect the adjustment of the limit switches. Provide an electrical or mechanical device that automatically disconnects the motor from the operating mechanism when the emergency manual operating mechanism is engaged.

2.2.5.1 Door-Operator Types

Provide an operator mounted to the right or left door head plate with the operator on coil side of the door-hood assembly and connected to the door

drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Front clearance is required for this type of mounting.

2.2.5.2 Electric Motors

Provide motors which are the high-starting-torque, reversible, constant-duty electrical type with overload protection of sufficient torque and horsepower to move the door in either direction from any position. Ensure they produce a door-travel speed of not less than 8 nor more than 12 inches per second without exceeding the horsepower rating. Coordinate motor voltage with electrical plans as 230 volt, single phase.

Provide motors which conform to NEMA MG 1 designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency to the requirements specified.

Certify and label explosion-proof motors to indicate conformance to the following:

UL 674, Class I, Groups C and D

UL 674, Class II, Groups F and G

2.2.5.3 Motor Bearings

Select bearings with bronze-sleeve or heavy-duty ball or roller antifriction type with full provisions for the type of thrust imposed by the specific duty load.

Pre-lubricate and factory seal bearings in motors less than 1/2 horsepower.

Equip motors coupled to worm-gear reduction units with either ball or roller bearings.

Equip bearings in motors 1/2 horsepower or larger with lubrication service fittings. Fit lubrication fittings with color-coded plastic or metal dust caps.

In any motor, bearings that are lubricated at the factory for extended duty periods do not need to be lubricated for a given number of operating hours. Display this information on an appropriate tag or label on the motor with instructions for lubrication cycle maintenance.

2.2.5.4 Motor Starters, Controls, and Enclosures

Provide each door motor with: a factory-wired, unfused, disconnect switch; a reversing, across-the-line magnetic starter with thermal overload protection; 120-volt operating coils with a control transformer limit switch; and a safety interlock assembled in a NEMA ICS 6 type enclosure as specified herein. Ensure control equipment conforms to NEMA ICS 2.

Provide adjustable switches, electrically interlocked with the motor controls and set to stop the door automatically at the fully open and fully closed position.

2.2.5.5 Control Enclosures

Provide control enclosures that conform to NEMA ICS 6 for general purpose NEMA Type 1.

2.2.5.6 Transformer

Provide starters with 230/460 to 115 volt control transformers with one secondary fuse when required to reduce the voltage on control circuits to 120 volts or less. Provide a transformer conforming to NEMA ST 1.

2.2.5.7 Safety-Edge Device

Provide each door with a pneumatic safety device extending the full width of the door and located within a U-section neoprene or rubber astragal, mounted on the bottom rail of the bottom door section. Device needs to immediately stop and reverse the door upon contact with an obstruction in the door opening during downward travel and cause the door to return to full-open position. A safety device is not a substitute for a limit switch.

Connect safety device to the control circuit through a retracting safety cord and reel.

2.2.5.8 Remote-Control Stations

Provide interior remote control stations which are full-guarded, momentary-contact three-button, heavy-duty, surface-mounted NEMA ICS 6 type enclosures as specified. Mark buttons "OPEN," "CLOSE," and "STOP." Ensure the "CLOSE" button requires a constant pressure to maintain the closing motion of the door. When the door is in motion and the "STOP" button is pressed, ensure the door stops instantly and remains in the stopped position. From the stopped position, the door may then be operated in either direction.

2.2.5.9 Speed-Reduction Units

Provide speed-reduction units consisting of hardened-steel worm and bronze worm gear assemblies running in oil or grease and inside a sealed casing, coupled to the motor through a flexible coupling. Drive shafts need to rotate on ball- or roller-bearing assemblies that are integral with the unit.

Provide minimum ratings of speed reduction units in accordance with AGMA provisions for class of service.

Ground worm gears to provide accurate thread form; machine teeth for all other types of gearing. Surface harden all gears.

Provide antifriction type bearings equipped with oil seals.

2.2.5.10 Chain Drives

Provide roller chains that are a power-transmission series steel roller type conforming to ASME B29.400, with a minimum safety factor of 10 times the design load.

Heat-treat or otherwise harden roller-chain side bars, rollers, pins, and bushings.

Provide high-carbon steel chain sprockets with machine-cut hardened teeth, finished bore and keyseat, and hollow-head setscrews.

2.2.5.11 Brakes

Provide 360-degree shoe brakes or shoe and drum brakes. Ensure the brakes are solenoid-operated and electrically interlocked to the control circuit to set automatically when power is interrupted.

2.2.5.12 Clutches

Ensure clutches are either the 4-inch diameter, multiple face, externally adjustable friction type or adjustable centrifugal type.

2.2.5.13 Weather/Smoke Seal Sensing Edge

Provide automatic stop control by an automatic sensing switch within neoprene astragal extending the full width of door bottom bar.

Provide an electric sensing edge device. Ensure the door immediately stops downward travel when contact occurs before door fully closes. Provide a self-monitoring wireless sensing edge connection to the motor operator; eliminating the need for a physical traveling electric cord connection between bottom bar sensing edge device and motor operator. Supervised system alters normal door operation; preventing damage, injury or death due to an inoperable sensing edge system.

2.2.6 Surface Finishing

Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Noticeable variations in the same metal component are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

- a. Front Slat: Finish color to match exterior finish as indicated.
- b. Back Slat: Finish color White.
- c. Bottom Bar: Extruded aluminum, mill finish.
- d. Guides: Gray polyester powder coating.
- e. Hood: Finish color Gray.
- f. Plain Steel: Powder coated Gray.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Install overhead coiling door assembly, anchors and inserts for guides, brackets, motors, switches, hardware, and other accessories in accordance with approved detail drawings and manufacturer's written instructions. Upon completion of installation, ensure doors are free from all distortion.

Install overhead coiling doors, motors, hoods, and operators at the mounting locations as indicated for each door in the contract documents and as required by the manufacturer.

Install overhead coiling doors, switches, and controls along accessible

routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility and as required by the manufacturer.

3.1.1.1 Field Painted Finish

Ensure field painted steel doors and frames are in accordance with Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS and manufacturer's written instructions. Protect weather stripping from paint. Ensure finishes are free of scratches or other blemishes.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

3.2.1 Acceptance Provisions

After installation, adjust hardware and moving parts. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer to provide smooth operating functions for ease movement, free of warping, twisting, or distortion of the door assembly.

Adjust seals to provide weather-tight fit around entire perimeter.

Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service and checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

Test the door opening and closing operation when activated by controls or alarm-connected fire-release system. Adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment. Reset door-closing mechanism after successful test.

Test and make final adjustment of new doors at no additional cost to the Government.

3.2.1.1 Maintenance and Adjustment

Not more than 90 calendar days after completion and acceptance of the project, examine, lubricate, test, and re-adjust doors as required for proper operation.

3.2.1.2 Cleaning

Clean doors in accordance with manufacturer's approved instructions.

3.3 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

3.3.1 Warranty

Furnish a written guarantee that the helical spring and counterbalance mechanism are free from defects in material and workmanship for not less than 2 years after completion and acceptance of the project.

Warrant that upon notification by the Government, any defects in material, workmanship, and door operation are immediately correct within the same time period covered by the guarantee, at no cost to the Government.

3.3.2 Operation And Maintenance

Submit six copies of the Operation and Maintenance Manuals 30 calendar days prior to testing the Overhead Coiling Door Assemblies. Update and resubmit data for final approval no later than 30 calendar days prior to

contract completion.

Submit Operation and Maintenance Manuals for Overhead Coiling Door Assemblies, including the following items:

Materials

Devices

Manual Door Operators

Electric Door Operators

Hood

Counterbalancing Mechanism

Painting

Procedures

Manufacture's Brochures

Parts Lists

Provide operation and maintenance manuals which are consistent with manufacturer's standard brochures, schematics, printed instructions, operating procedures, and safety precautions. Provide test data that is legible and of good quality.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 34 01

FORCED ENTRY RESISTANT COMPONENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 500-D (2018) Laboratory Methods of Testing
Dampers for Rating

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA DAF45 (2003; Reaffirmed 2009) Designation System
for Aluminum Finishes

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M (2015; Errata 1 2015; Errata 2 2016)
Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASM INTERNATIONAL (ASM)

ASM STFA (2001; 6th Ed) The Surface Treatment and
Finishing of Aluminum and Its Alloys (2
Vol.)

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A123/A123M (2017) Standard Specification for Zinc
(Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and
Steel Products

ASTM A653/A653M (2019) Standard Specification for Steel
Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or
Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by
the Hot-Dip Process

ASTM D3951 (2015) Commercial Packaging

ASTM E90 (2009; R2016) Standard Test Method for
Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound
Transmission Loss of Building Partitions
and Elements

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.1 (2016) Butts and Hinges

ANSI/BHMA A156.5 (2014) Cylinder and Input Devices for Locks

ANSI/BHMA A156.8	(2015) Door Controls - Overhead Stops and Holders
ANSI/BHMA A156.13	(2017) Mortise Locks & Latches Series 1000
ANSI/BHMA A156.16	(2018) Auxiliary Hardware
ANSI/BHMA A156.18	(2016) Materials and Finishes
ANSI/BHMA A156.115	(2016) Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Steel Frames

GLASS ASSOCIATION OF NORTH AMERICA (GANA)

GANA Glazing Manual	(2008) Glazing Manual
---------------------	-----------------------

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM HMMA 801	(2012) Glossary of Terms for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
NAAMM HMMA 802	(2007) Manufacturing of Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
NAAMM HMMA 810	(2009) Hollow Metal Doors
NAAMM HMMA 820	(2008) Hollow Metal Frames
NAAMM HMMA 830	(2002) Hardware Selection for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 80	(2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
NFPA 80A	(2017) Recommended Practice for Protection of Buildings from Exterior Fire Exposures

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 10B	(2008; Reprint Feb 2015) Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
--------	--

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation; G

SD-03 Product Data

Forced Entry Resistant Components

Installation

Components

SD-07 Certificates

Forced Entry Resistant Components; G

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Qualify welding procedures, welders, and welding operators in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Forced entry resistant components shall be certified as resistant to the forced entry test standards indicated herein. The test results and certification thereof shall be approved by the Contracting Officer before delivery of the component to the job site.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver Components to the job site with the manufacturer's name, and model number clearly marked thereon. Components shall be delivered, stored, and handled so as not to be damaged or deformed and shall be in accordance with ASTM D3951. Components shall be handled carefully to prevent damage to the faces, edges, corners, ends, and glazing where applicable. Abraded, scarred, or rusty areas shall be cleaned, repaired, or replaced immediately upon detection of the damage. Replace damaged components that cannot be restored. Components and equipment shall be stored in a dry location on platforms or pallets that are ventilated adequately, free of dust, water, and other contaminants, and stored in a manner which permits easy access for inspection and handling. Submit lists including schedule of components to be incorporated in the work with manufacturer's model or catalog numbers, specification and drawing reference numbers, warranty information, threat level designated, fire ratings, sound transmission coefficient ratings, insulation "U" value, and number of items provided. Listing of similar products that have been satisfactorily in use for two years or more, including name of purchasers, locations of installations, dates of installations, and service organizations.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

When testing of a previously untested component is specified, allow sufficient lead time so that testing will not delay construction. The test results and component shall be approved by the Contracting Officer before delivery of the component to the job site.

1.6 WARRANTY

Manufacturer's warranty for 5 years shall be furnished for glazing materials. Warranty shall provide for replacement and installation of glazing if delamination, discoloration, or cracking or crazing occurs.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

2.1.1 General Requirements

Components covered in this specification are designed to resist forced entry attacks with increasing severity levels of hand, power, and thermal tools and weapons and explosives. The components include forced entry resistant personnel door/frame assemblies and louvers. Each type of forced entry resistant component shall be a complete assembly produced by a single manufacturer. Movable and operable components shall operate smoothly and freely. Items for exterior installation shall be designed to resist water and vapor penetration or entrapment. Submit manufacturer's descriptive data, installation instructions, and certificate and test report showing compliance with the specified forced entry test standards as specified in this specification and each component's respective specification. Following approval of manufacturer's descriptive data, submit a schedule listing the items and components to be furnished. Manufacturer's certificate shall be submitted indicating that compliance with the installation instructions and drawings will provide the specified degree of forced entry resistance.

2.1.2 Other Submittal Requirements

The following shall be submitted:

- a. Manufacturer's descriptive data and finish samples.
- b. The forced entry resistant door lock functions, for selection by the Contracting Officer.
- c. Airflow calculations for louvers.
- d. Manufacturer's certificates attesting that components conform to the requirements on drawings and in specifications.
- e. Testing reports from independent testing laboratories indicating conformance to regulatory requirements.
- f. Certificate, in lieu of a label, for fire rated doors.
- g. Certificate indicating compliance with the requirements for doors of the type and fire rating class.
- h. Manufacturer certification that compliance with the installation instructions and/or drawings will provide the specified degree of forced entry resistance.

2.2 COMPONENTS

Each type of forced entry resistant component shall be the standard product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and shall duplicate items that have been tested and approved in accordance with the forced entry test standards specified in this specification and each component's respective specification.

2.3 FORCED ENTRY RESISTANT PERSONNEL DOOR AND FRAME ASSEMBLIES

Doors and frames shall be factory fabricated assemblies of indicated sizes. Doors shall be of steel, hardened steel, or be reinforced internally with steel shapes and clad with aluminum. Interior composition and reinforcement shall be determined by the manufacturer. Rubber silencers shall be installed on door frames. Exterior doors shall have top edges closed flush and sealed against water penetration, be insulated, and provided with weatherstripping and thresholds. Locks and hinges shall be the same or equal in performance and number as the hardware used on the tested door. Lock and hardware shall be provided by the manufacturer as a complete assembly. Frames shall be furnished by the door fabricator, with anchorage to wall construction completely specified as to number of anchors, anchor size, material, and length.

2.3.1 Fire Rated Doors

Provide fire rated doors at locations indicated. Door assemblies shall comply with the forced entry test standard specified and shall bear the listing identification label of the Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. or a nationally recognized testing laboratory that is qualified to perform tests of fire door assemblies in accordance with [UL 10B](#), and that has a listing service for the tested assemblies. Door assemblies include door, hardware, frame, closers, and glazing. A certificate indicating that the units were inspected in accordance with [NFPA 80](#) and [NFPA 80A](#) may be furnished in lieu of label. For oversized doors, a certificate from Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. or a nationally recognized testing laboratory may be furnished in lieu of label. The certificate shall state that oversized doors are manufactured in compliance with the requirements for doors of the type and fire rating class. Manufacturer's descriptive data shall be submitted.

2.3.2 Sound Rated Doors

Provide sound rated doors at locations indicated. Door assemblies shall comply with the forced entry test standard specified and shall consist of door, hardware, frame, threshold, and adjustable gaskets. The assembly shall have a laboratory Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating as indicated when tested in accordance with [ASTM E90](#). Submit manufacturer's descriptive data, test report, and certification of the test report showing compliance with the specified requirements.

2.3.3 Door and Frame Fabrication

The subsurfaces shall be flat, parallel, and plumb after fabrication. Doors shall be reinforced and fully insulated in accordance with manufacturer's design. Door frames shall be anchored as specified by the door manufacturer. Coordinate the door manufacturer's requirements for welding to wall reinforcement or casting frame embedments into wall before wall is placed. Steel door frames shall be mitered or coped and welded at the corners with welds ground smooth. Where structural channel frames are used the size, weight, stops, welding, and anchorage into surrounding construction shall be specified and tested along with the door as an assembly. Any necessary reinforcements in the door and the frame shall be made in the factory. Door and frame shall be drilled and tapped as required for the specified hardware. Frame channels shall be mitered or coped and welded at corners with full penetration groove welds. Exposed welds shall be dressed smooth. Hollow metal doors and frames shall be manufactured in accordance with [NAAMM HMMA 801](#), [NAAMM HMMA 802](#),

NAAMM HMMA 810, and NAAMM HMMA 820 as a standard of quality, and shall meet the specified forced entry testing standard.

2.3.4 Preparation for Hardware

Prepare doors and frames for hardware in accordance with NAAMM HMMA 830. Surface applied hardware shall be drilled and tapped in the field.

2.3.5 Hardware

Hardware for forced entry resistant door assemblies shall be provided by the door assembly manufacturer to ensure a complete forced entry resistant assembly. Where test standard requires hardware to be tested with the door assembly, locks and hinges shall be included in the labeling and/or test certification. Locks and hinges shall be the same or equal in performance, quality, grade, and quantity as used on the successfully tested door assembly in accordance with the specified forced entry testing standard. Provide certification that the locks, latches, and hinges provide the same degree of forced entry resistance as required by the specified forced entry testing standard. Keying shall be as specified in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE.

2.3.5.1 Locks and Latchsets

The door manufacturer shall submit available lock functions for selection of function by the Contracting Officer. Mortise lock and latchsets shall be, as a minimum, series 1000, operational Grade 1, Security Grade 1 or 1A, and shall conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.13. Strikes for mortise locks and latches (including deadbolt locks), as a minimum, shall conform to ANSI/BHMA A156.115 except strikes shall be rectangular (without curved lip). Mortise-type locks and latches for doors 1-3/4 inches thick and over shall have adjustable bevel fronts or otherwise conform to the shape of the door. Mortise locks shall have armored fronts. Mortise locks and latches shall have full escutcheon, through-bolted, extruded stainless steel trim. Lock finish shall be as indicated in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.18.

2.3.5.2 Hinges

Steel doors and frames required to resist the "very low" or "low" threat severity level that are up to and including 7 feet 0 inches high shall, as a minimum, be equipped with three Grade 1 hinges in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.1, minimum size 5 inches high, heavy, double, or triple weight as required for weight of door. For each additional 12 inches of door height beyond 7 feet 0 inches, provide a minimum of one more hinge. Hinges shall be full mortise, half mortise, full surface, or half surface design as recommended by the manufacturer for frame and door design and shall be tamperproof unless mounted on the protected side of the door. Hinges shall have pins as recommended by the manufacturer and be equipped with a safety stud. Spot welding of hinge pin will not be acceptable. Provide hinge manufacturer's certification that the hinge supplied meets applicable test requirements for ANSI/BHMA A156.1 type number of hinge specified and that the hinge is suitable for the size and weight of the door assembly on which it will be utilized. Continuous extra heavy-duty piano-type hinge sized to carry the weight of the door without sagging is permitted. If continuous piano-type hinges are provided with the door, independent laboratory reports covering both the door weight capacity and a 2,500,000 cycle testing to match the ANSI/BHMA A156.1 Grade 1 requirements shall be furnished by the Contractor. Interior door hinges

shall be furnished in prime coated steel. Exterior door hinges shall be furnished in nonferrous metal or stainless steel.

2.3.5.3 Electric Strikes

Where required, provide electric strikes conforming to [ANSI/BHMA A156.5](#) Grade 1. Furnish strike boxes with deadbolt and latch strikes for Grade 1. Strikes shall be as indicated in Section [08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE](#).

2.3.5.4 Door Closers

Closers shall be as indicated in Section [08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE](#) in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.18](#).

2.3.5.5 Door Stops and Holders

Door stops and holders shall be extra heavy duty, conforming to [ANSI/BHMA A156.8](#), Type C08511 overhead surface mounted type or [ANSI/BHMA A156.16](#), Type L11251 for floor mounted installation or [ANSI/BHMA A156.16](#), Type L11271 for wall mounted installation.

2.3.6 Frame Anchors

Provide jamb and head anchors with door/frame assembly as specified by the manufacturer and forced entry resistant to the same degree as the component. Coordinate concrete work with component manufacturers when the manufacturer specifies frame anchors to be embedded into a concrete or concrete masonry unit surface during construction.

2.3.7 Weatherstripping

Provide head and jambs of exterior doors with compression-type neoprene bulb or closed-cell neoprene adjustable type weatherstripping. Door stops shall be weatherstripped with a surface-mounted sponge neoprene strip in bronze housing not less than [0.070 inch](#) thick installed to make contact with the door. Install weatherstripping in conformance with the manufacturer's directions after completion of finish painting.

2.4 FORCED ENTRY RESISTANT LOUVERS

Fabricate louvers and frames from steel shapes to the opening dimensions indicated. The free area of the total [square feet](#) of the louver shall be a minimum of 15 percent and maximum of 17 percent for channel style louvers. Louver submitted shall have been tested in accordance with [AMCA 500-D](#) airflow test; minimum airflow shall be 705 feet/minute for channel style. Submit airflow calculations and test data showing compliance.

2.4.1 Horizontal and Vertical Security Bar Assembly

Provide security bars where indicated. Security bars to be spaced a maximum of 6 inches apart in the horizontal and vertical direction with a total span of not more than 36 inches without an intermediate support bar. Bars to be minimum 1/2-inch diameter. Plug weld bar ends to hot-rolled steel frame assembly as recommended by manufacturer. Bolt assembled frame to louver with spin lock nut at maximum spacing of 12 inches.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

Provide accessories for the installation of components into the surrounding structure. Anchorage shall be forced entry resistant to the same degree as the component. Installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended instructions. Materials, parts, bolts, anchors, supports, braces, fasteners, and connections necessary for completion of the work.

2.6 LABELING

Forced entry resistant components shall be plainly and permanently labeled as to the applicable forced entry test standard and level within the test standard under which the component was tested and approved. Label shall be visible only from the protected side after component installation and shall include the following information: (1) manufacturer's name or identifying symbol; (2) model number, control number, or equivalent; (3) date of manufacture with the week, month or quarter, and year (this may be abbreviated or be in a traceable code such as the lot number); (4) correct mounting position (by removable label); and (5) forced entry resistant rating by indicating the test standard, level within the test standard (if any), and minutes of attack time withstood (if variable in the standard).

2.7 SHOP/FACTORY FINISHING

Unless otherwise specified, all factory or manufactured components shall be shop finished as indicated below.

2.7.1 Ferrous Metal

Surfaces of ferrous metal, except galvanized and stainless steel surfaces, shall be cleaned and factory primed for painting. Finish painting shall be in accordance with Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS. Prior to shop painting, clean surfaces with solvents to remove grease and oil and with power wire-brushing or sandblasting to remove loose rust, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances. Surfaces of items to be embedded in concrete shall not be shop painted.

2.7.2 Galvanizing

Items specified to be galvanized shall be hot-dip processed after fabrication. Galvanizing shall be in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A653/A653M.

2.7.3 Aluminum

Unless otherwise specified, aluminum items shall be standard mill finish. When anodic coatings are specified, coatings shall conform to ASM STFA, with treatment to a coating thickness not less than that specified for protective and decorative type finish in AA DAF45. Items to be anodized shall receive a polished satin finish pretreatment and a clear lacquer overcoat conforming to the above-referenced standard.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

Field verify dimensions of rough openings for components and that surfaces of openings are level, plumb, and provide required clearances. Components

shall be examined for racking, twisting, and other malformation and corrected prior to installation. Replace damaged components that cannot be corrected. Protect surrounding work prior to installation of forced entry resistant components. Surrounding work, which is damaged as a result of the installation of forced entry resistant components, shall be repaired in an approved manner prior to acceptance. Protect glazed units from damage during adjacent work.

3.2 FABRICATION

Components shall be constructed, assembled, welded, and equipped with all hardware and accessories required to complete the assembly in the shop of a competent fabricator.

3.3 FASTENERS

Fasteners exposed to view shall match in color and finish and shall harmonize with the material to which fasteners are applied. Holes for bolts and screws shall be drilled or neatly punched. Poor matching of holes shall be cause for rejection of the work. Fasteners shall be concealed where practicable. Unless otherwise specified, fasteners shall conform to Section 05 50 13 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS.

3.4 CORROSION PROTECTION - DISSIMILAR MATERIALS

Contact surfaces between dissimilar metals and aluminum surfaces in contact with concrete, masonry, pressure-treated wood, or absorptive materials subject to wetting shall be given a protective coating in accordance with Section 09 90 00 PAINTS AND COATINGS.

3.5 INSTALLATION

The finished work shall be free from defects. Install components plumb and level and secure rigidly in place. Install components in accordance with approved manufacturer's recommended instructions. Test operable parts of components for smooth operation in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Coordinate frame embedments into the construction where required by the component manufacturer. Replace or repair materials which incur damage as a result of adjacent finish work as specified above. Window assemblies, which are not specified as factory glazed, shall have glazing installed in accordance with GANA Glazing Manual and the manufacturer's recommended instructions. Field glazing shall occur only after concrete, masonry, ceiling, electrical, mechanical, plumbing and adjacent finish work has been completed. Properly install forced entry resistant door assemblies so that operating clearances and bearing surfaces conform to the manufacturer's instructions. Secure the bottom of door frames to the floor slab in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Weatherstripping and thresholds shall be installed at exterior door openings to provide a weathertight installation. Submit Drawings showing (1) anchorage of components and appurtenances into the actual surrounding construction, (2) clearances for operation, and (3) hardware location and installation details. Submit complete drawings for forced entry resistant prefabricated guardhouses. Submit a copy of installation instructions and recommended cleaning and maintenance instructions.

3.6 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

The manufacturer shall provide the services of a manufacturer's

representative who is experienced in the installation, adjustment, and operation of the component specified. At the request of the Contracting Officer, the representative shall supervise the installation, adjustment, and operation (if operable) of the component.

3.7 ADJUSTING/CLEANING

Make adjustments to assure smooth operation. Units shall be weathertight when closed and locked. Clean components in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Use only cleanser recommended by the manufacturer to clean polycarbonate, plastic, and applied hardcoats.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 34 73

SOUND CONTROL DOOR ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A568/A568M	(2017a) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, Structural, and High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled, General Requirements for
ASTM A1008/A1008M	(2016) Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable
ASTM A1011/A1011M	(2018a) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength
ASTM D1056	(2014) Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded Rubber
ASTM D6386	(2016) Standard Practice for Preparation of Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coated Iron and Steel Product and Hardware Surfaces for Painting
ASTM E90	(2009; R2016) Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements
ASTM E1289	(2008; R 2016) Standard Specification for Reference Specimen for Sound Transmission Loss

WOODWORK INSTITUTE (WI)

NAAWS 3.1	(2017; 2018 Errata Edition) North American Architectural Woodwork Standards
-----------	---

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation;

submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors; G

Wood Sound Retardant Doors; G

Door Frames; G

SD-03 Product Data

Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors; G

Wood Sound Retardant Doors; G

Door Frames; G

Door Hardware; G

Thresholds

SD-06 Test Reports

Acoustical Tests

SD-07 Certificates

Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors; G

Wood Sound Retardant Doors; G

Door Frames

Door Hardware

Thresholds

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

Ensure work within this section is designed and furnished by one manufacturer, who has been engaged in the manufacture of Sound Retardant Wood Swinging Door and Hollow Metal Door systems for at least five years prior to the start of this work.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Ship all doors in the manufacturer's undamaged individual cartons, securely bundled and wrapped with moisture-resistant covers and stored in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions in a dry, clean, and ventilated area.

Deliver and store wood doors in the building following the installation of concrete, terrazzo, plaster, or other wet materials, and only after the building has dried out and has a roof.

Store all materials on planks in a dry location. Store doors and frames vertically with minimum 1/4 inch airspace between. Store doors on the edge to eliminate any potential damage to the door bottom seal. Cover all material to protect from damage but in a manner to allow proper air circulation.

Maintain relative humidity in the building between 30 and 65 percent. Maintain the ambient temperature at 60 degrees F minimum at the time of installation of wood doors.

Perform final adjustment of seals when temperatures and humidity conditions replicate the interior conditions that will exist when the building is occupied.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide sound retardant door assemblies of the thickness, width, and height indicated, complete with perimeter seals, seal housings, gasketing, automatic door bottoms, thresholds, and door frames as required to conform to the specified STC per ASTM E90 and ASTM E1289.

Submit fabrication drawings for Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors, Wood Sound Retardant Doors, and Door Frames.

Submit certificates showing conformance with the referenced standards in this section, and manufacturer's catalog data including STC ratings for the following items: Hollow metal sound retardant doors; wood sound retardant doors; door frames; door hardware; vision panels; and thresholds.

Provide assemblies that are complete with metal frame, wood door(s), sealing system, and Cam-lift hinges.

2.1.1 Design Requirements

2.1.1.1 Door Design

Provide sound Retardant Wood Swinging Doors that are a 1-3/4-inch thickness construction with sizes as indicated on drawings. Provide internal sound retardant core and perimeter door edge construction per manufacturer's standard for the specified STC rating. No lead or asbestos is permitted in door construction to achieve STC performance. Provide faces of premium grade natural select.

2.1.1.2 Frame Design

Provide sound Retardant Metal Frames conforming to ASTM A1008/A1008M, not less than 0.0747-inch thick, and free from pitting, scale, stretcher strains, fluting, and surface defects with integral trim and shipped with temporary spreader. Knockdown frames are not acceptable.

Provide frames with 2-inch faces, profiles and dimensions as indicated, with mitered reinforced corners, welded the full depth of frame and trim, with exposed surfaces ground smooth and flush. Close contact edges to hairline joints.

2.1.2 Performance Requirements

2.1.2.1 STC (Sound Transmission Classification) Rating

Provide doors with an STC 46 and 53.

2.2 FABRICATION

2.2.1 Hollow Metal Sound Retardant Doors

Conform to [ASTM A1008/A1008M](#) for door construction utilizing steel facing sheets. Conform stretcher level flatness to [ASTM A568/A568M](#); not less than [0.0598-inch](#) thick; free from pitting, scale, and surface defects; separated by a core construction designed to meet the required STC; and tested and rated in accordance with [ASTM E90](#).

Provide doors that have flush seamless face sheets and vertical edges, with continuous welded and smooth joints. Provide edges that are flush or rabbeted as required for perimeter seals.

Provide door surfaces that are visually flat and free from warp, waviness, and other surface irregularities and defects. Maximum allowable warp or twist-can not exceed [1/8-inch](#) when measured with a [7-foot](#) straightedge along the diagonal and not exceed [1/16-inch](#) when measured with a [7-foot](#) straightedge in the width or in any position along the length of the door.

Provide hardware reinforcement that is steel drilled, tapped to template requirements and welded in place. Provide minimum thicknesses as follows:

- a. Butts, [0.1494-inch](#)
- b. Lock strike, [0.1196-inch](#)
- c. Surface applied hardware [0.0747-inch](#)

Provide doors, including sound retardant type, to bear the UL 3/4-hour C label fire rating and the specified STC.

Shop paint exposed door surfaces, including surfaces that are galvanized.

Shop paint concealed exterior door surfaces except galvanized surfaces.

Thoroughly clean all mill scale, rust, oil, grease, dirt, and other foreign materials from surfaces before the application of the shop coat of paint.

After cleaning, provide galvanized surfaces free of paint in accordance with [ASTM D6386](#), Method A, B, C, or D.

Apply to clean prepared dry surfaces one shop coat of rust inhibitive metallic oxide or synthetic resin primer by brush, dipping, or other approved method to provide a continuous minimum dry film thickness (dft) of [0.9 mil](#).

2.2.2 Wood Sound Retardant Doors

Construct doors with wood veneer facings separated by a core construction designed to meet the required STC. Test, rate, and label in accordance with [ASTM E90](#).

Comply with the [NAAWS 3.1](#), "Guide Specifications and Quality Certification Program," for premium grade constructions and to the requirements specified.

Perform beveling, prefitting, machining, mortising, and routing for hardware, perimeter seals, and door bottom cutouts at the mill.

Furnish premium grade door facings with standard thickness face veneers conforming to [NAAWS 3.1](#), Type 1 for stain and transparent job site-applied finish.

Provide face veneers as follows:

Face Veneer Species:	Remarks
Walnut	Medium Tone

2.2.3 Finishes Factory Finish

Provide doors finished at the factory by the door manufacturer with wood laminate veneer.

Seal edges, cutouts, trim, and wood accessories, and apply two coats of finish compatible with the door face finish. Touch-up finishes that are scratched or marred, or where exposed fastener holes are filled, in accordance with the door manufacturer's instructions. Match color and sheen of factory finish using materials compatible for field application.

2.3 COMPONENTS

2.3.1 Frames

Construct frames for Sound Retardant Wood Swinging Doors from formed sheet steel. Provide sheet steel that is commercial quality, level, cold rolled steel conforming to [ASTM A1008/A1008M](#) or hot rolled, pickled and oiled steel conforming to [ASTM A1011/A1011M](#).

2.3.2 Hardware Reinforcements

Factory mortise, reinforce, drill and tap frames for all mortise hardware as required by hardware manufacturer's template. Provide necessary reinforcement plates as required for surface mounted hardware; installer to perform all field drilling and tapping. Provide dust cover boxes on all frame mortises. Provide minimum thicknesses as follows:

- a. Butts, [3/16-inch](#)
- b. Lock strike, [0.1196-inch](#)
- c. Surface applied hardware [0.0747-inch](#)

2.3.3 Anchors

Locate frame anchors near the top and bottom of doors and at intermediate points [and 24-inches](#) on center. Provide a minimum of three anchors per jamb.

Provide floor anchor clips at each jamb with 2-inch vertical adjustments on increments not exceeding 1/16-inch.

2.3.4 Door Hardware

Provide the following STC related hardware with the door; mortise butt hinges, perimeter seals, door bottoms, and thresholds.

Include on Installation drawings a finish hardware schedule for each door and a hollow metal door frame schedule for each door indicating profile, dimensions, hardware reinforcement, and frame anchorage. Also indicate perimeter seals, door-bottom devices and other hardware items that are assembled in the shop.

Refer to Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE for remaining hardware requirements.

2.3.5 Perimeter Intumescent Seals and Gasketing

Provide a closed-cell, expanded cellular rubber Seal material conforming to ASTM D1056, Type S, Grade SBE-42 or SCE-42 for heads, jambs.

Install seals in formed steel or extruded aluminum shapes designed to receive and hold seals and to provide concealed adjustable attachment to door frames. Provide concealed adjustment screws that are not more than 12-inches on center and provide at least 3/8-inch adjustment.

Provide door bottoms that are assemblies of closed-cell neoprene seals, seal housings, and automatic operating devices, mounted on the doors as indicated. Design devices to seal the spaces between the doors and the finished floors or thresholds when closed and to retract immediately when doors are opened, with a sill clearance of approximately 1/4-inch.

2.3.6 Thresholds

Provide metal thresholds where indicated. Provide thresholds that are extruded aluminum, 6063-T5 alloy, mill finish, not less than 1/8-inch thick, with integral seal grooves formed to the indicated section.

2.4 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

2.4.1 Sound Transmission Classification

Provide Test reports prepared by a nationally recognized, independent laboratory for Acoustical Tests indicating that the sound transmission classification (STC) of the proposed door, based on tests at 16 third-octave band frequencies from 125 to 4,000 hertz, is no less than the specified STC when tested in accordance with ASTM E90, and that the door tested is hung in substantially the type of wall and frame as indicated and is fully operable with hardware and perimeter seals installed.

2.4.2 Guarantee

Provide written guarantee that each door delivered to the project is equal in construction, sound transmission classification (STC), where applicable, with appropriate labeling and markings, to that of the sample door tested. Clearly state in written guarantee that each door assembly, when installed in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions, has an in-place STC within 3 decibels of the specimen tested. Submit the

following test data and Certificates with the written Guarantee:

Acoustical Tests

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Upon receipt of material, thoroughly inspect all frames, doors and accessories. Verify quantities and tag numbers according to the packing list provided. Report all discrepancies, deficiencies and/or damages immediately to Contracting Officer.

Prior to installation check all doors and frames for correct size and swing. Verify that frames are plumb, square and aligned without twist in accordance with tolerances published by NAAMM/HMMA and SDI.

3.1.1 Frame Painting and Cleaning

Clean thoroughly all surfaces of all mill scale, rust, oil, grease, dirt, and other foreign materials before the application of the shop coat of paint.

Apply one shop coat of rust inhibitive metallic oxide or synthetic resin primer applied to clean, dry, and prepared surfaces by brush, dipping, or other approved method to provide a continuous minimum dry film thickness of 0.9 mil.

3.2 INSTALLATION

3.2.1 Frame

Install frames plumb and true with not more than 1/32-inch deviation in vertical alignment in 8 feet. Anchor to the wall in accordance with the printed instructions of the manufacturer. Spot grout frames in dry wall partitions with mortar at the jamb anchor clips; fill the space between metal frame and stud partition solidly with fiberglass or mineral wool insulation.

3.2.2 Door

Install and adjust all doors, hardware, and seals in accordance with the approved drawings, hardware schedules, and the printed instructions of the door manufacturer.

Install and adjust perimeter seals to provide positive compression contact with the entire sealing surface with no gaps, openings, or breaks. Hinges or hardware which distort or pinch the perimeter seal during operation of the door will be rejected.

Install door bottom devices to seal the space between the door bottoms and the finished floor and the space between the seal and seal housing.

Field apply perimeter seal housings with mitered corners and with flush, aligned hairline joints.

Install components to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate with gypsum board wall construction for anchor placement. Set frames plumb, square, level and at correct elevation. Adjust operable parts for

correct clearances and function. Install and adjust perimeter and bottom
acoustic seals.

-- End of Section --

SECTION 08 41 13

ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA DAF45 (2003; Reaffirmed 2009) Designation System
for Aluminum Finishes

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

AAMA 800 (2016) Voluntary Specifications and Test
Methods for Sealants

AAMA 1503 (2009) Voluntary Test Method for Thermal
Transmittance and Condensation Resistance
of Windows, Doors and Glazed Wall Sections

AAMA 2605 (2017a) Voluntary Specification,
Performance Requirements and Test
Procedures for Superior Performing Organic
Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

ASCE 7 (2017) Minimum Design Loads for Buildings
and Other Structures

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B221 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

ASTM E283 (2004; R 2012) Determining the Rate of Air
Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain
Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure
Differences Across the Specimen

ASTM E330/E330M (2014) Structural Performance of Exterior
Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain
Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure
Difference

ASTM E783 (2002; R 2018) Standard Test Method for
Field Measurement of Air Leakage Through
Installed Exterior Windows and Doors

ASTM E1424 (1991; R 2016) Standard Test Method for

Determining the Rate of Air Leakage
Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls,
and Doors Under Specified Pressure and
Temperature Differences Across the Specimen

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.4 (2013) Door Controls - Closers

ANSI/BHMA A156.10 (2017) Power Operated Pedestrian Doors

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC (2018) International Building Code

U.S. GENERAL SERVICES ADMINISTRATION (GSA)

FS TT-P-645 (Rev C) Primer, Paint, Zinc-Molybdate,
Alkyd Type

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance to Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Sample Warranty; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation Drawings; G

Fabrication Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Finish; G

Recycled Content of Aluminum Material; S

SD-06 Test Reports

Deflection; S

Air Infiltration; S

Condensation Resistance and Thermal Transmittance; S

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Instructions

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Manufacturer's Product Warranty

1.3 QUALITY CONTROL

1.3.1 Qualifications

1.3.1.1 Installer Qualifications

Provide documentation of the installer's experience, as determined by the Contractor, in performing the work specified in this section.

Ensure that the installers are specialized in work similar to that required for this project, and that they are acceptable to product manufacturer.

1.3.1.2 Manufacturer Qualifications

Ensure that manufacturers meet the requirements specified in this section and project drawings.

Ensure that the manufacturer is capable of providing field service representation during construction, approving acceptable installers and approving application methods.

1.3.2 Single-Source Responsibility

Use a single source manufacturer with sole responsibility for providing design, structural engineering, and custom fabrication for door portal systems and for supplying components, materials, and products. Do not use products provided from numerous sources for assembly at the site. Ensure that the following work items and components are fabricated or supplied by a single source are:

- a. Door assemblies to be installed in door portals as specified in Section 08 11 16 ALUMINUM DOORS AND FRAMES.
- b. Glazed walls to be constructed around door portals as specified in this Section.
- c. Door operating hardware to be installed on or within door portals as specified in Section 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE.
- d. Glass as specified in Section 08 81 00 GLAZING.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.4.1 Ordering

To avoid construction delays, comply with the manufacturer's lead-time requirements and instructions for ordering.

1.4.2 Packing, Shipping, Handling and Unloading

Deliver materials in the manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

1.4.3 Storage and Protection

Store materials in a way that protects them from exposure to harmful

weather conditions. Avoid damaging the storefront material and components during handling. Protect storefront material against damage from elements, construction activities, and other hazards before, during, and after storefront installation.

Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that become firmly bonded when exposed to sunlight. Do not leave coating residue on surfaces.

1.5 PROJECT / SITE CONDITIONS

1.5.1 Field Measurements

Verify actual measurements or openings by taking field measurements before fabrication; record these measurements on shop drawings. To avoid construction delays, coordinate field measurements, and fabrication schedule with construction progress.

1.6 WARRANTY

Provide a written manufacturer's warranty, executed by a company official, warranting against defects in materials and products for 2 years from the date of shipment. Warrant that the door corner construction is for the life of the project. Provide a written installer's warranty, warranting work to be free from defective materials, defective workmanship, and glass breakage as a result of defective design, and agreeing to replace components that fail within 2 years.

The warranty states the following:

- a. Watertight and airtight system installation is completed within specified tolerances.
- b. The completed installation remains free of rattles, wind whistles and noise caused by thermal movement and wind pressure.
- c. System is structurally sound and free from distortion.
- d. Glass and glazing gaskets will not break or "pop" from frames as a result of design, movement caused by expansion or contraction, or structural loading.
- e. Glazing sealants and gaskets remain free of abnormal deterioration or dislocation as a result of sunlight, weather, or oxidation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide single-glazed frameless glass wall with 1-inch by 1-inch aluminum track that accommodates tempered glazing as specified in 08 81 00 GLAZING.

2.1.1 Design Requirements for Aluminum (Entrances and Components)

Provide a door portal system designed to withstand the following loads without breakage, loss, failure of seals, product deterioration, or other defects.

- a. Dead and Live Loads: Determined by ASCE 7 and calculated in accordance with applicable codes.

- b. Seismic Loads: Design and install the system to comply with the seismic requirements for the project location in accordance with Section 1613 of the International Building Code, **ICC IBC**.
- c. Wind Loads: Design and install the system so that the effects of wind load acting inward and outward normal to the plane of the wall are in accordance with **ASTM E330/E330M**.
- d. Thermal Loads And Movement:
 - (1) Ambient Temperature Range: **120 degrees F**
 - (2) Material Surfaces Range: **180 degrees F**
- e. Water and Air Resistance: Provide weatherstripping, exterior gaskets, sealants, and other accessories to resist water and air penetration.

2.1.1.1 Material Standard

ASTM B221; 6063-T5 alloy and tempered.

2.1.1.2 Recycled Content

Provide aluminum framed entrances and storefronts that have a minimum of 20 percent recycled content based upon the aluminum billet used in the original material. Provide data indicating percentage of **recycled content of aluminum material**.

2.1.1.3 Sealants

Provide either ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM) elastomeric extrusions or thermoplastic elastomer glazing gaskets. Structural silicone sealant is required.

Internal Sealants: Provide sealants that according to the manufacturer will remain permanently elastic, tacky, non-drying, non-migrating, and weather tight.

2.1.1.4 Thermal Barrier

Use a rigid, structural thermal barrier to separate all exterior aluminum from interior aluminum. For purposes of this specification, a structural thermal barrier is defined as a system that transfers shear during bending and, therefore, promotes composite action between the exterior and interior extrusions. Do not use a nonstructural thermal barrier. Ensure that the thermal barrier provides a structural connection between the two sides of the door.

2.2 FABRICATION

Provide the following information when submitting **fabrication drawings** for custom fabrications:

- a. Indicate elevations, detailed design, dimensions, member profiles, joint locations, arrangement of units, and member connections.
- b. Show the following items:

- (1) Details of special shapes.
 - (2) Reinforcing.
 - (3) Anchorage system.
 - (4) Interfacing with building construction.
 - (5) Provisions for expansion and contraction.
- c. Indicate typical glazing details, locations of various types and thickness of glass, and internal sealant requirements as recommended by the sealant manufacturer.
 - d. Clearly indicate locations of exposed fasteners and joints.
 - e. Clearly show where and how the manufacturer's system deviates from Contract drawings and these specifications.

2.2.1 Storefront Systems

Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Avanti Systems, Inc.; Solare™ acoustic, single-glazed partition system or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. DORMA USA, Inc.
- b. Nana Wall Systems, Inc.
- c. Vistawall Architectural Products
- d. EFCO Corporation
- e. Kawneer Company, Inc.
- f. YKK AP America, Inc.

Provide door corner construction consisting of mechanical clip fastening, SIGMA deep penetration plug welds and 1 1/8 inch long fillet welds inside and outside all four corners. Provide a hook-in type exterior glazing stop with EPDM glazing gaskets reinforced with non-stretchable cord. Provide an interior glazing stop that is mechanically fastened to the door member and that incorporates a silicone-compatible spacer used with silicone sealant.

Accurately fit and secure joints and corners. Make joints hairline in appearance. Remove burrs and smooth edges. Prepare components with internal reinforcement for door hardware. Arrange fasteners and attachments so that they are concealed from view.

Separate dissimilar metals with protective coating or pre-formed separators to prevent contact and corrosion.

2.2.2 Shop Assembly

Fabricate and assemble units with joints only at the intersection of aluminum members with hairline joints; rigidly secure these units, and seal them in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

2.2.2.1 Welding

Conceal welds on aluminum members in accordance with AWS recommendations or methods recommended by the manufacturer. Members showing welding bloom or discoloration on finish or material distortion will be rejected by the

Contacting Officer.

2.2.3 Finish

Before fabrication, clean the units and give them a AA-M-10-C22-A41 clear (natural) anodized finish in accordance with the requirements of the AA DAF45. The finish thickness is A41, 0.4 mil or greater.

a. Organic Coating (high-performance exterior coating):

- (1) Comply with requirements of AAMA 2605.
- (2) Clean surfaces and pretreat them with a conversion coating before applying 0.3 mil dry-film thickness of epoxy or acrylic primer according to the recommendations of the finish coat manufacturer.
- (3) Apply a finish coat of 70 percent minimum fluoropolymer resin fused to primed surfaces at the temperature recommended by the manufacturer and at a minimum dry film thickness of 1.0 mil.
- (4) Use a 2-, 3-, or 4-coat system as required for the color selected.

2.2.4 Fabrication Tolerance

Fabricate and assemble units with joints only at intersection of aluminum members with hairline joints; rigidly secure these units, and seal them in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Fabricate aluminum entrances in accordance with the entrance manufacturer's prescribed tolerances.

2.2.4.1 Material Cuts

Square to 1/32 inch off square, over largest dimension; proportionate amount of 1/32 inch on the two dimensions.

2.2.4.2 Maximum Offset at Consecutive Members

1/64 inch in alignment between two consecutive members in line, end to end.

2.2.4.3 Maximum Offset at Glazing Pocket Corners

1/64 inch between framing members at glazing pocket corners.

2.2.4.4 Joints

Between adjacent members in same assembly: Joints are hairline and square to the adjacent member.

2.2.4.5 Variation

In squaring diagonals for doors and fabricated assemblies: 1/16 inch.

2.2.4.6 Flatness

For doors and fabricated assemblies: plus/minus 1/16 inch of neutral plane.

2.3 MATERIALS

2.3.1 Sealants

Refer to Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS. Ensure that all sealants conform to AAMA 800.

2.3.2 Glass

Refer to Section 08 81 00 GLAZING.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

2.4.1 Fasteners

Provide stainless steel fasteners in areas where the fasteners are exposed.

Use non-corrosive and compatible fasteners with components being fastened. Do not use exposed fasteners, except where unavoidable for application of hardware.

In areas where fasteners are not exposed, use aluminum, non-magnetic stainless steel, or other materials warranted by the manufacturer.

For exposed locations, provide countersunk Phillips head screws when items with a matching finish are fastened. For concealed locations, provide the manufacturer's standard fasteners.

Provide nuts or washers that have been designed with a means to prevent disengagement; do not deform fastener threads.

2.4.2 Perimeter Anchors

When steel anchors are used, provide insulation between steel material and aluminum material to prevent galvanic action.

2.4.2.1 Inserts and Anchorage Devices

Provide manufacturer's standard formed or fabricated assemblies, steel or aluminum, of shapes, plates, bars, or tubes. Shop-coat steel assemblies after fabrication with an alkyd zinc chromate primer complying with FS TT-P-645.

2.4.3 Standard Entrance Hardware

2.4.3.1 Offset Pivots

Provide the manufacturer's standard top and bottom pivots with one intermediate offset pivot.

2.4.3.2 Closer

Provide a surface closer in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.4.

2.4.3.3 Security Lock or Dead Lock

Provide A/R MS 1850A lock with two A/R 1871 cylinder operated flush bolts.

2.4.3.4 Cylinder(s)/Thumb-turn

Provide the manufacturer's recommended standard.

2.4.3.5 Cylinder Guard

Provide the manufacturer's recommended standard.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

3.1.1 Site Verification of Conditions

Verify that the condition of substrate previously installed under other sections is acceptable for product installation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Verify that openings are sized to receive the storefront system and that the sill plate is level in accordance with the manufacturer's acceptable tolerances.

3.2 PREPARATION

Field-verify dimensions before fabricating components for the door portal assembly.

Coordinate requirements for locations of blockouts for anchorage of door portal columns and other embedded components with Section 03 30 00 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

Coordinate the erection of door portal with installation of surrounding glass wall and door assemblies. Ensure that the door portals can provide support and anchorage for assembly components.

3.2.1 Adjacent Surfaces Protection

Protect adjacent work areas and finish surfaces from damage during product installation.

3.2.2 Aluminum Surface Protection

Protect aluminum surfaces from contact with lime, mortar, cement, acids, and other harmful contaminants.

3.3 INSTALLATION

Submit [installation drawings](#) for review and approval.

Install the entrance system in accordance with the [manufacturer's instructions](#) and the AAMA storefront and entrance guide specifications manual. Attach the entrance system to the structure, allowing it to be adjusted to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten the system to the building structure. Align the assembly so that it is plumb and level, and free of warp and twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances aligning with adjacent work.

Set thresholds in a bed of mastic and secure the thresholds. Protect

aluminum members in contact with masonry, steel, concrete, or dissimilar materials using nylon pads or a bituminous coating. Shim and brace the aluminum system before anchoring the system to the structure. Verify that weep holes are open, and the metal joints are sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Seal metal-to-metal joints using a sealant recommended by the system manufacturer.

3.3.1 Tolerances

Ensure that tolerances for wall thickness and other cross-sectional dimensions of entrance members are nominal and in compliance with Aluminum Standards and Data, published by the Aluminum Association.

3.3.2 Adjusting

Adjust operating hardware for smooth operation, and as recommended by the manufacturer.

3.3.3 Related Products Installation Requirements

3.3.3.1 Sealants (Perimeter)

Refer to Section 07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS.

3.3.3.2 Glass

Refer to Section 08 81 00 GLAZING.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4.1 Air Infiltration

Test air infiltration in accordance with ASTM E783

Submit certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics as follows:

- a. For single-acting offset pivot, butt hung, or continuous geared hinge entrances in the closed and locked position, test the specimen in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.10, and ASTM E283 at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf for pairs of doors; ensure that maximum infiltration for a pair of 7 foot by 8 foot entrance doors and frame is 1.2 cfm/square foot.
- b. Ensure the maximum allowable infiltration for a completed storefront system does not exceed 0.06 cfm/square foot when tested in accordance with ASTM E1424 at a differential static pressure of 6.24 psf.

3.4.2 Wind Loads

Provide a completed storefront system capable of withstanding wind pressure loads, normal to an interior wall plane for pressure acting in either direction.

3.4.3 Deflection

Submit certified test reports showing that the maximum allowable deflection in a member when tested in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M with allowable stress is L/175 or 3/4 inches maximum.

3.4.4 Condensation Resistance and Thermal Transmittance

Submit certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics as follows:

a. U-Value Requirements:

- (1) Perform test in accordance with the AAMA 1503 procedure and on the configuration specified therein.

b. CRF Class Requirements:

- (1) Perform a test in accordance with AAMA 1503.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

3.5.1 Protection

Protect the installed product's finish surfaces from damage during construction. Protect the aluminum storefront system from damage from grinding and polishing compounds, plaster, lime, acid, cement, or other harmful contaminants.

3.5.2 Cleaning

Repair or replace damaged installed products. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions before acceptance remove excess mastic, mastic smears, and other foreign materials. Remove construction debris from the project site and legally dispose of this debris.

3.6 WARRANTY

Submit three signed copies of the manufacturer's product warranty for the entrance system as follows:

- a. Warranty Period: Five years from Date of Substantial Completion of the project, provided that the Limited Warranty begins no later than six months from the date of shipment by the manufacturer. In addition, support welded door corner construction with a limited lifetime warranty for the life of the door under normal use.

Ensure that the Warranty's language is identical to the "As Approved" version of the sample warranty submitted to and returned from the Contracting Officer.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 71 00

DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E283 (2004; R 2012) Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen

ASTM F883 (2013) Padlocks

BUILDERS HARDWARE MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (BHMA)

ANSI/BHMA A156.1 (2016) Butts and Hinges

ANSI/BHMA A156.3 (2014) Exit Devices

ANSI/BHMA A156.4 (2013) Door Controls - Closers

ANSI/BHMA A156.5 (2014) Cylinder and Input Devices for Locks

ANSI/BHMA A156.6 (2015) Architectural Door Trim

ANSI/BHMA A156.7 (2016) Template Hinge Dimensions

ANSI/BHMA A156.8 (2015) Door Controls - Overhead Stops and Holders

ANSI/BHMA A156.10 (2017) Power Operated Pedestrian Doors

ANSI/BHMA A156.13 (2017) Mortise Locks & Latches Series 1000

ANSI/BHMA A156.14 (2013) Sliding and Folding Door Hardware

ANSI/BHMA A156.15 (2015) Release Devices Closer Holder, Electromagnetic and Electromechanical

ANSI/BHMA A156.16 (2018) Auxiliary Hardware

ANSI/BHMA A156.18 (2016) Materials and Finishes

ANSI/BHMA A156.19 (2013) Power Assist & Low Energy Power Operated Doors

ANSI/BHMA A156.21 (2014) Thresholds

ANSI/BHMA A156.22	(2017) Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems
ANSI/BHMA A156.23	(2010) Electromagnetic Locks
ANSI/BHMA A156.24	(2012) Delayed Egress Locking Systems
ANSI/BHMA A156.25	(2013) Electrified Locking Devices
ANSI/BHMA A156.26	(2012) Continuous Hinges
ANSI/BHMA A156.27	(2011) Power and Manual Operated Revolving Pedestrian Doors
ANSI/BHMA A156.31	(2013) Electric Strikes and Frame Mounted Actuators

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2020; ERTA 20-1 2020; ERTA 20-2 2020; TIA 20-1; TIA 20-2; TIA 20-3; TIA 20-4) National Electrical Code
NFPA 72	(2019; TIA 19-1; ERTA 2019) National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
NFPA 80	(2016; TIA 16-1) Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
NFPA 101	(2018; TIA 18-1; TIA 18-2; TIA 18-3) Life Safety Code
NFPA 252	(2017) Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

STEEL DOOR INSTITUTE (SDI/DOOR)

SDI/DOOR A250.8	(2003; R2008) Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames
-----------------	--

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

36 CFR 1191	Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines
-------------	--

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL Bld Mat Dir	(updated continuously online) Building Materials Directory
----------------	--

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Manufacturer's Detail Drawings; G

Verification of Existing Conditions; G

Hardware Schedule; G

Keying System; G

SD-03 Product Data

Hardware Items; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Hardware Schedule Items, Data Package 1; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Key Bitting

1.3 SHOP DRAWINGS

Submit [manufacturer's detail drawings](#) indicating all hardware assembly components and interface with adjacent construction. Indicate power components and wiring coordination for electrified hardware. Base shop drawings on verified field measurements and include [verification of existing conditions](#).

1.4 PRODUCT DATA

Indicate fire-ratings at applicable components. Provide documentation of ABA/ADA accessibility compliance of applicable components, as required by [36 CFR 1191](#) Appendix D - Technical.

1.5 [HARDWARE SCHEDULE](#)

Prepare and submit hardware schedule in the following form:

Hardware Item	Quantity	Size	Reference Publication Type No.	Finish	Mfr Name and Catalog No.	Key Control Symbols	UL Mark (If fire-rated and listed)	BHMA Finish Designation

In addition, submit hardware schedule data package 1 in accordance with Section [01 78 23](#) OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA.

1.6 KEY BITTING CHART REQUIREMENTS

1.6.1 Requirements

Submit [key bitting](#) charts to the Contracting Officer prior to completion of the work. Include:

- a. Complete listing of all keys (e.g. AA1 and AA2).
- b. Complete listing of all key cuts (AA1-123456, AA2-123458).
- c. Tabulation showing which key fits which door.
- d. Copy of floor plan showing doors and door numbers.
- e. Listing of 20 percent more key cuts than are presently required in each master system.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.7.1 Hardware Manufacturers and Modifications

Provide, as far as feasible, locks, hinges, and closers of one lock, hinge, or closer manufacturer's make. Modify hardware as necessary to provide features indicated or specified.

1.7.2 Key Shop Drawings Coordination Meeting

Prior to the submission of the key shop drawing, the Contracting Officer, Contractor, Door Hardware Subcontractor, using Activity and Base Locksmith must meet to discuss and coordinate key requirements for the facility.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver hardware in original individual containers, complete with necessary appurtenances including fasteners and instructions. Mark each individual container with item number as shown on hardware schedule. Deliver permanent keys and removable cores to Contracting Officer, either directly or by certified mail. Deliver construction master keys with locks.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TEMPLATE HARDWARE

Hardware applied to metal or to prefinished doors must be manufactured using a template. Provide templates to door and frame manufacturers in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.7](#) for template hinges. Coordinate hardware items to prevent interference with other hardware.

2.2 HARDWARE FOR FIRE DOORS AND EXIT DOORS

Provide all hardware necessary to meet the requirements of [NFPA 72](#) for door alarms, [NFPA 80](#) for fire doors, [NFPA 101](#) for exit doors, [NFPA 252](#) for fire tests of door assemblies, ABA/ADA accessibility requirements, and all other requirements indicated, even if such hardware is not specifically mentioned in paragraph [HARDWARE SCHEDULE](#). Provide Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. labels for such hardware in accordance with [UL Bld Mat Dir](#) or equivalent labels in accordance with another

testing laboratory approved in writing by the Contracting Officer.

2.3 **HARDWARE ITEMS**

Clearly and permanently mark with the manufacturer's name or trademark, hinges, pivots, locks, latches, exit devices, bolts and closers where the identifying mark is visible after the item is installed. For closers with covers, the name or trademark may be beneath the cover. Coordinate electrified door hardware components with corresponding components specified in Division 28 ELECTRONIC SECURITY SYSTEMS (ESS).

2.3.1 Hinges

Provide in accordance with **ANSI/BHMA A156.1**. Provide hinges that are **4-1/2 by 4-1/2 inch** unless otherwise indicated. Construct loose pin hinges for interior doors and reverse-bevel exterior doors so that pins are non-removable when door is closed. Provide concealed ball bearing hinges.

2.3.2 Continuous Hinges

Where continuous hinges are required, provide in accordance with **ANSI/BHMA A156.26**.

2.3.3 Locks and Latches

At exterior locations provide locksets of full stainless steel type 302 or 304 construction including fronts, strike, escutcheons, knobs, bolts and all interior working parts. Marine Grade I, fully non-ferrous.

2.3.3.1 Mortise Locks and Latches

Provide in accordance with **ANSI/BHMA A156.13**, Series 1000, Operational Grade 1, Security Grade 2. Provide mortise locks with escutcheons not less than **7 by 2-1/4 inch** with a bushing at least **1/4 inch** long. Cut escutcheons to fit cylinders and provide trim items with straight, beveled, or smoothly rounded sides, corners, and edges.

2.3.3.2 Combination Locks

Key pharmacy door locks separately from building master key system. Heavy-duty, mechanical combination lockset with five push buttons, standard sized knobs, **3/4 inch** deadlocking latch, **2-3/4 inch** backset. Locks to operate by pressing two or more of the buttons in unison or individually in the proper sequence. Inside knob operates the latch. Provide a keyed cylinder on the interior to permit setting the combination. Provide a keyed removable core cylinder on the exterior to permit bypassing the combination. Provide a thumb turn on the interior to activate passage set function so that outside knob operates latch without using the combination.

2.3.4 Exit Devices

Provide in accordance with **ANSI/BHMA A156.3**, Grade 1. Provide adjustable strikes for rim type and vertical rod devices. Provide open back strikes for pairs of doors with mortise and vertical rod devices. Provide "T" style stainless steel touch bars in lieu of conventional crossbars and arms. Provide forged escutcheons not less than **7 by 2-1/4 inch**.

2.3.5 Cylinders and Cores

Provide cylinders for new locks, including locks provided under other sections of this specification. Provide fully compatible cylinders of Grade 1 products from products of one manufacturer with interchangeable cores that are removable by a special control key. Factory set the cores with seven pin tumblers using the COREMAX keyway. Submit a core code sheet with the cores. Provide master keyed cores in one system for this project. Provide construction interchangeable cores.

2.3.6 Push Button Mechanisms

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.

2.3.7 Electrified Hardware

Comply with the requirements of NFPA 70 for wiring of electrified hardware.

2.3.7.1 Electric Strikes and Frame Mounted Actuators

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.31, Grade 1. Provide electric strikes and actuators as required to meet operational requirements. Provide electric strikes that remain maintained during power failure. Provide battery backup for continued operation during power failure. Provide strikes and actuators with a minimum opening force of 2300 pounds.

Provide facility interface devices that use direct current (dc) power to energize the solenoids. Provide electric strikes and actuators that incorporate end-of-line resistors to facilitate line supervision by the system. If not incorporated into the electric strike or local controller, provide metal oxide resistors (MOVs) to protect the controller from reverse current surges.

2.3.7.1.1 Solenoid

Provide actuating solenoid for strikes and actuators that are rated for continuous duty, cannot dissipate more than 12 Watts and must operate on 12 or 24 Volts dc. Inrush current cannot exceed 1 ampere and the holding current cannot be greater than 500 milliamperes. Actuating solenoid must move from fully secure to fully open positions in less than 500 milliseconds.

2.3.7.1.2 Signal Switches

Provide strikes and actuators with signal switches to indicate to the system when the bolt is not engaged or the strike mechanism is unlocked. Signal switches must report a forced entry to the system.

2.3.7.1.3 Tamper Resistance

Provide strike guards that prevent tampering with the latch bolt of the locking hardware or the latch bolt keeper of the electric strike. Strike guards to bolt through the door using tamper resistant screws. Provide strike guards made of 1/8 inch thick brass and that are 11-1/14 inch high by 1-5/8 inch wide, with a minimum 5/32 inch wide offset.

2.3.7.1.4 Coordination

Provide electric strikes and actuators of a size, weight and profile

compatible with each specified door frame. Field verify installation clearances prior to procurement.

2.3.7.1.5 Mounting Method

Provide electric strikes and actuators suitable for use with single and double doors, with mortise or rim type hardware specified, and for right or left hand mounting as specified. In double door installations, locate the lock in the active leaf and monitor the fixed leaf.

2.3.7.2 Electrified Mortise Locks

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.25](#), Grade 1. Provide electrified mortise locks that remain maintained during power failure. Provide facility interface devices that use dc power to energize solenoids. Provide solenoids, resistors, and signal switches in accordance with paragraph ELECTRIC STRIKES AND FRAME MOUNTED ACTUATORS.

2.3.7.2.1 Power Transfer Hinges

Provide power transfer hinges with each electrified lock that route power and monitoring signals from the lockset to the door frame. Coordinate power transfer hinges with door frames.

2.3.7.3 Power Operated Pedestrian Door Hardware

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.10](#), Grade 1.

2.3.7.4 Release Devices

In accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.15](#), Grade 1.

2.3.7.4.1 Release Devices

Provide wall-mounted Electromagnetic release devices connected to smoke detecting devices.

2.3.7.5 Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.19](#), Grade 1.

2.3.7.6 Electromagnetic Locks

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.23](#), Grade 1. Provide electromagnetic locks that do not contain any moving parts and depend solely upon electromagnetism to secure a portal by generating at least [1200 pounds](#) of holding force. The lock must interface with the local processors without external, internal or functional alteration of the local processor. The electromagnetic lock must incorporate an end of line resistor to facilitate line supervision by the system. Provide metal-oxide resistors (MOVs) to protect controllers from reverse current surges, if not incorporated into the electromagnetic lock or local controller.

2.3.7.6.1 Armature

Provide electromagnetic locks with internal circuitry to eliminate residual magnetism and inductive kickback. Provide actuating armature that operates on 12 or 24 Volts dc and cannot dissipate more than 12

Watts. Holding current must be less than 500 milliamperes. Actuating armature must take less than 300 milliseconds to change the status of the lock from fully secure to fully open or fully open to fully secure.

2.3.7.6.2 Tamper Resistance

Provide lock mechanism encased in hardened guard barriers to deter forced entry.

2.3.7.6.3 Mounting Method

Provide electromagnetic lock suitable for use with single and double door with mortise or rim type hardware and compatible with right or left hand mounting.

2.3.7.7 Delayed Egress Locking System

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.24](#), Grade 1.

2.3.7.8 Power and Manual Operated Revolving Pedestrian Doors

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.27](#), Grade 1.

2.3.8 Keying System

Provide a grand master keying system. Provide key cabinet as specified.

2.3.9 Lock Trim

Provide cast or forged construction and commercial plain design for lock trim.

2.3.9.1 Lever Handles

Provide lever handles where indicated in the Hardware Schedule. Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.3](#) for mortise locks of lever handles for exit devices. Provide lever handle locks with a breakaway feature (such as a weakened spindle or a shear key) to prevent irreparable damage to the lock when force in excess of that specified in [ANSI/BHMA A156.13](#) is applied to the lever handle. Provide lever handles return to within [1/2 inch](#) of the door face. Lever and concealed cylinder escutcheon similar to Best #14N.

2.3.10 Keys

Furnish one file key, one duplicate key, and one working key for each key change and for each master and grand master keying system. Furnish one additional working key for each lock of each keyed-alike group. Stamp each key with appropriate key control symbol and "U.S. property - do not duplicate." Do not place room number on keys.

2.3.11 Door Bolts

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.16](#). Provide dustproof strikes for bottom bolts, except at doors having metal thresholds. Provide automatic latching flush bolts in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.3](#), Type 25.

2.3.12 Closers

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.4, Series C02000, Grade 1, with PT 4C with 1-1/2 inch minimum piston bore. Provide with brackets, arms, mounting devices, fasteners, full size covers and other features necessary for the particular application. Size closers in accordance with manufacturer's printed recommendations, or provide multi-size closers, Sizes 1 through 6, and list sizes in the Hardware Schedule. Provide manufacturer's 10 year warranty.

Use stainless steel inside bracketed or door mounted closers on exterior doors. On interior doors use closers of 302 or 304 stainless steel or non-ferrous materials. On surface-mounted closers use or apply rust inhibiting finish on all ferrous parts. Also apply this finish on concealed closers.

2.3.12.1 Identification Marking

Engrave each closer with manufacturer's name or trademark, date of manufacture, and manufacturer's size designation in locations that will be visible after installation.

2.3.13 Overhead Holders

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.8.

2.3.14 Door Protection Plates

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.6.

2.3.14.1 Sizes of Armor, Mop and Kick Plates

2 inch less than door width for single doors; 1 inch less than door width for pairs of doors. Provide 8 inch kick plates for flush doors. Provide 4 inch mop plates.

2.3.15 Door Stops and Silencers

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.16. Silencers Type L03011. Provide three silencers for each single door, two for each pair.

2.3.16 Padlocks

Provide in accordance with ASTM F883.

2.3.17 Thresholds

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.21. Use J35100, with vinyl or silicone rubber insert in face of stop, for exterior doors opening out, unless specified otherwise.

2.3.18 Weatherstripping Gasketing

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.22. Provide the type and function designation where specified in paragraph HARDWARE SCHEDULE. Provide a set to include head and jamb seals, and for pairs of doors, astragals. Air leakage of weatherstripped doors not to exceed 0.5 cubic feet per minute of air per square foot of door area when tested in accordance with ASTM E283. Provide weatherstripping with one of the

following:

2.3.18.1 Extruded Aluminum Retainers

Extruded aluminum retainers not less than 0.050 inch wall thickness with vinyl, neoprene, silicone rubber, or polyurethane inserts. Provide clear (natural) bronze anodized aluminum.

2.3.19 Soundproofing Gasketing

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.22. Provide adjustable doorstops at heads, jambs and automatic door bottoms in accordance with the hardware set, of extruded aluminum, clear anodized, surface applied, with vinyl fin seals between plunger and housing. Provide doorstops with solid neoprene tube, silicone rubber, or closed cell sponge gasket. Provide door bottoms with adjustable operating rod and silicone rubber or closed cell sponge neoprene gasket. Provide doorstops that are mitered at corners. Provide type and function designation where specified in paragraph HARDWARE SETS.

2.3.20 Rain Drips

2.3.20.1 Door Rain Drips

Approximately 1-1/2 inch high by 5/8 inch projection. Align bottom with bottom edge of door.

2.3.21 Auxiliary Hardware (Other than locks)

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.

2.3.22 Sliding and Folding Door Hardware

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.14, Grade 1. Finishes to match other hardware specified herein.

2.3.23 Special Tools

Provide special tools, such as spanner and socket wrenches and dogging keys, as required to service and adjust hardware items.

2.4 FASTENERS

Provide fasteners of type, quality, size, and quantity appropriate to the specific application. Fastener finish to match hardware. Provide stainless steel or nonferrous metal fasteners in locations exposed to weather. Verify metals in contact with one another are compatible and will avoid galvanic corrosion when exposed to weather.

2.5 FINISHES

Provide in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.18. Provide hardware in BHMA 630 finish (satin stainless steel), unless specified otherwise. Provide items not manufactured in stainless steel in BHMA 626 finish (satin chromium plated) over brass or bronze, except aluminum paint prime coat finish for surface door closers, and except BHMA 652 finish (satin chromium plated) for steel hinges. Provide hinges for exterior doors in stainless steel with BHMA 630 finish. Furnish exit devices in BHMA 626 finish in lieu of BHMA 630 finish. Match exposed parts of concealed

closers to lock and door trim. Match hardware finish for aluminum doors to the doors.

2.6 KEY CABINET AND CONTROL SYSTEM

Provide in accordance with [ANSI/BHMA A156.5](#). Type required to yield a capacity (number of hooks) 50 percent greater than the number of key changes used for door locks.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Provide hardware in accordance with manufacturers' printed installation instructions. Fasten hardware to wood surfaces with full-threaded wood screws or sheet metal screws. Provide machine screws set in expansion shields for fastening hardware to solid concrete and masonry surfaces. Provide toggle bolts where required for fastening to hollow core construction. Provide through bolts where necessary for satisfactory installation.

3.1.1 Weatherstripping Installation

Provide full contact, weathertight seals that allow operation of doors without binding the weatherstripping.

3.1.1.1 Stop Applied Weatherstripping

Fasten in place with color matched sheet metal screws not more than [9 inch](#) on center after doors and frames have been finish painted.

3.1.2 Lightproofing and Soundproofing Installation

Provide as specified for stop applied weatherstripping.

3.1.3 Threshold Installation

Extend thresholds the full width of the opening and notch end for jamb stops. Set thresholds in a full bed of sealant and anchor to floor with cadmium-plated, countersunk, steel screws in expansion sleeves. For aluminum thresholds placed on top of concrete surfaces, coat the underside surfaces that are in contact with the concrete with fluid applied waterproofing as a separation measure prior to placement.

3.2 FIRE DOORS AND EXIT DOORS

Provide hardware in accordance with [NFPA 72](#) for door alarms, [NFPA 80](#) for fire doors, [NFPA 101](#) for exit doors, and [NFPA 252](#) for fire tests of door assemblies.

3.3 HARDWARE LOCATIONS

Provide in accordance with [SDI/DOOR A250.8](#), unless indicated or specified otherwise.

- a. Kick and Armor Plates: Push side of single-acting doors. Both sides of double-acting doors.
- b. Mop Plates: Bottom flush with bottom of door.

3.4 KEY CABINET AND CONTROL SYSTEM

Locate where directed. Tag one set of file keys and one set of duplicate keys. Place other keys in appropriately marked envelopes, or tag each key. Provide complete instructions for setup and use of key control system. On tags and envelopes, indicate door and room numbers or master or grand master key.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

After installation, protect hardware from paint, stains, blemishes, and other damage until acceptance of work. Submit notice of testing 15 days before scheduled, so that testing can be witnessed by the Contracting Officer. Adjust hinges, locks, latches, bolts, holders, closers, and other items to operate properly. Demonstrate that permanent keys operate respective locks, and give keys to the Contracting Officer. Correct, repair, and finish, errors in cutting and fitting and damage to adjoining work.

3.6 HARDWARE SETS

List of Manufacturers

BE	Best Access Systems	Locks, Cylinders
DM	Dorma USA	Door Position Switches
KN	Knox Box	Key Storage Box
NA	National Guard	Gaskets, Thresholds
PR	Precision	Exit Devices
ST	Stanley	Hinges, Closers
TK	Telkee	Key Cabinet
TR	Trimco	Flat Goods, Door Stops

Finish Codes

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
625	Bright Chromium Plated
626/652	Satin Chromium Plated
630	Satin Stainless Steel
689	Painted Aluminum
BLK	Black
GREY	Grey

Option List

<u>Code</u>	<u>Description</u>
M5	Galvanized Steel Chain (Best)
VIN	Occupancy Indicator (Best)
CD	Cylinder Dogging (Precision)
LD	Less Dogging (Precision)
LBR	Less Bottom Rod (Precision)
FL	Fire Exit Hardware (Precision)
CS	Counter Sinking of Kick and Mop Plates (Trimco)
B4E	Beveled 4 Edges - Kick Plates (Trimco)
SSMS/EA	Stainless Machine Screws/Expansion Anchors (NGP)
SMS-TEKS	Self-Drilling Sheet Metal Screws (NGP)

Miscellaneous Hardware: Supply the following in addition to specified items:

12	Spare Cores	1CX-7 PATD	626	BE
4	Door Closers	QDC111 Tri Packed	689	ST
1	Key Cabinet	AWC-150S		TK
1	Knox Box	3200	BLK	KN
	Locate Knox Box as directed			

SET #1 - Exterior, Monitored

Doors: C101A, C101B

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD	628	ST
1	Exit Device	2303 CD DS	630AM	PR
2	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
1	Flush Pull	1111C	630AM	TR
1	Door Closer	QDC114	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR
1	Door Position Switch	HSS		MA
1	Weatherstrip	700 ES		NA
1	Threshold	896 S ADJ	628	NA
1	Sweep	C627	628	NA

SET #2 - Always Locked

Doors: 105

6	Hinges	CB1900R 4 1/2 x 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Lockset	45H-7D14N PATD	630AM	BE
2	Flush Bolt	3917-12	626	TR
1	Dustproof Strike	3911	630	TR
2	Wall Bumper	1270WV	630	TR
2	Door Silencers	1229A		TR

SET #3 - All Glass, Card Reader Entry, Free Egress

Doors: 106, 107, 108, 109

1	Concealed Glass Pivot	VISUR	626	DO
1	Set BTB Locking Pulls	TG 138 L B2B	626	DO
1	Wall Bumper	1270CVSV	626	TR
1	Cormax Core	1CX-7 PATD	626	BE

SET #4 - Privacy

Doors: 110, 111

3	Hinges	CB1900R 4 1/2 x 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Privacy Set	45H-0L14N VIN	630AM	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC111	689	ST
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4"	630	TR
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CVSV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	2525 B		NA

SET #5 - Gate

Doors: 000

1	Padlock	41B-722T PATD M1	606	BE
---	---------	------------------	-----	----

NOTE: Balance by chain link gate manufacturer.

SET #6 - Existing, Reverse Swing

Doors: EX01

2	Exit Device	FL 2208 X 4908D LBR	630AM	PR
2	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
2	Magnetic Holder	2100 RS	630	AB
2	Door Closer	QDC111	689	ST
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR

NOTE: Reuse existing hinges.

SET #7 - Overhead Door

Doors: 120B, 130E, 130H

1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
1	Padlock	41B-722T PATD M1	606	BE
2	Door Contact	HSS X BRACKETS		MA

NOTE: Cylinder for motor switch. Padlock for track rail lock.

SET #8 - Card Reader Entry, Free Egress

Doors: 122, 127, 128, 129, 134, 135, 136, 137

3	Hinges	CB1900R 4 1/2 x 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Electro-mech Lock	45HW-7DEU14N PATD DS RQE	630AM	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC111 DA	689	ST
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CVSV	626	TR
1	Terminal Interface Enclosure	TIE1000		IA
1	Card Reader	BY SECURITY		BY
1	Door Position Switch	HSS		MA
1	Power Transfer	PT1000	689	AB
1	Gasketing	2525 B		NA
1	Auto Door Bottom	4447 S		NA

NOTE: Provide concealed overhead stop 4000 series at door #135.

SET #9 - Wellness

Doors: 124

3	Hinges	CB179 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Lockset	45H-7AB14N PATD	630AM	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC112	689	ST
1	Kick Plate	K0050 10" x 2" LDW B4E CS	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270WV	630	TR
1	Gasketing	2525 C		NA
1	Auto Door Bottom	4447 S		NA

SET #10 - Janitor/Storage

Doors: 125

3	Hinges	CB1900R 4 1/2 x 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Lockset	45H-7R14N PATD	630AM	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC111 DA	689	ST
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CVSV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	2525 B		NA

SET #11 - Card Reader Entry, Free Egress

Doors: 126

3	Hinges	CB1900R 4 1/2 x 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Electro-mech Lock	45HW-7DEU14N PATD DS RQE	630AM	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC111 RA	689	ST
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CVSV	626	TR
1	Door Position Switch	HSS		MA
1	Terminal Interface Enclosure	TIE1000		IA
1	Card Reader	BY SECURITY		BY
1	Gasketing	2525 B		NA
1	Auto Door Bottom	4447 S		NA

SET #12 - Card Reader Entry, Free Egress, X10

Doors: 120A, EX02, 130A, 130B

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD	628	ST
1	Set Auto Flush Bolts	3820 X 3810	630	TR
1	Electro-mech Lock	45HW-7DEU14N PATD DS RQE	630AM	BE
1	Spin Dial Lock	X-10 X COMPONENTS		KA
1	Coordinator	3090 SERIES X FILLER	600	TR
2	Door Closer	QDC111	689	ST
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR
2	Door Position Switch	HSS		MA
1	Power Transfer	PT1000	689	AB
1	Terminal Interface Enclosure	TIE1000		IA
1	Card Reader	BY SECURITY		BY
1	Gasketing	2525 B		NA
1	Astragal	158 SA		NA
1	Weatherstrip	700 ES		NA
2	Auto Door Bottom	4448 S		NA
1	Mortise Astragal	AS REQUIRED		NA

SET #13 - Exterior, Pair, Monitored, Simulator

Doors: 130D, 130J

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD	628	ST
1	Dustproof Strike	3911	630	TR
1	Set Auto Flush Bolts	3820 X 3810	630	TR
1	Deadlock	48H-7M PATD	626	BE
1	Flush Pull	1111C	630AM	TR
2	Door Closer	QDC114	689	ST
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 34"	630	TR
2	Door Position Switch	HSS		MA
1	Weatherstrip	700 ES		NA
1	Astragal	158 SA		NA
2	Door Sweep	C627 A		NA
1	Threshold	896 S ADJ	628	NA

SET #14 - Lockable Either Side

Doors: 130K

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD	628	ST
1	Dustproof Strike	3911	630	TR
1	Set Auto Flush Bolts	3820 X 3810	630	TR
1	Lockset	45H-7G14N PATD	630AM	BE
1	Coordinator	3090 SERIES X FILLER X BRACKETS	600	TR
2	Door Closer	QDC113	689	ST
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR
1	Gasketing	2525 B		NA
2	Auto Door Bottom	4448 S		NA

NOTE: Astragal by door manufacturer.

SET #15 - Restroom

Doors: 131, 132

3	Hinges	CB1900R 4 1/2 x 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Passage Set	45H-0N14N	630AM	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC112	689	ST
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4"	630	TR
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CVSV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	2525 B		NA

SET #16 - Exterior, Monitored, Electrical

Doors: 138

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD	628	ST
1	Dustproof Strike	3911	630	TR
1	Set Auto Flush Bolts	3820 X 3810	630	TR
1	Exit Device	2303 CD DS	630AM	PR
2	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
1	Flush Pull	1111C	630AM	TR
2	Door Closer	QDC114	689	ST
2	Door Position Switch	HSS		MA
1	Weatherstrip	700 ES		NA
1	Astragal	158 SA		NA
2	Door Sweep	C627 A		NA
1	Threshold	896 S ADJ	628	NA

SET #17 - Exterior, Mechanical

Doors: 139

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD	628	ST
1	Dustproof Strike	3911	630	TR
1	Set Auto Flush Bolts	3820 X 3810	630	TR
1	Deadlock	48H-7R PATD	626	BE
2	Flush Pull	1111C	630AM	TR
2	Door Closer	QDC114 DA	689	ST
2	Door Position Switch	2757		MA
1	Weatherstrip	700 ES		NA
1	Astragal	158 SA		NA
1	Door Sweep	C627 A		NA
1	Threshold	896 S ADJ	628	NA

SET #18 - Monitored, Exterior, Egress

Doors: C101E, C101C

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD	628	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822	689	PR
2	Exit Device	2101 CD DS	630AM	PR
2	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Flush Pull	1111C	630AM	TR
2	Door Closer	QDC114	689	ST
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR
2	Door Position Switch	HSS		MA
2	Weatherstrip	700 ES		NA
2	Door Sweep	C627 A		NA
1	Threshold	896 S ADJ	628	NA

SET #19 - Card Reader Entry, Free Egress, X10

Doors: C101D

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD	628	ST
1	Exit Device	FL TS 2801 DS	630AM	PR
1	Exit Device	ELR FL TS 2808 X 4908D DS	630AM	PR
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
2	Door Closer	QDC113	689	ST
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR
2	Door Position Switch	HSS		MA
2	Power Transfer	PT1000	689	AB
1	Terminal Interface Enclosure	TIE1000		IA
1	Power Supply	ELR151		PR
1	Card Reader	BY SECURITY		BY
1	Gasketing	2525 B		NA
2	Auto Door Bottom	4448 S		NA

SET #20

Doors: 121, 123

3	Hinges	CB1900R 4 1/2 x 4 1/2	652	ST
1	Lockset	45H-7R14N PATD	630AM	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC111	689	ST
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8"	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CVSV	626	TR
1	Door Position Switch	HSS		MA
1	Gasketing	2525 B		NA
1	Auto Door Bottom	4447 S		NA

Opening List

<u>Opening</u>	<u>Hdw Set</u>	
120A	12	
EX02	12	
C101E	18	
101		
105	2	
106	3	
107	3	
108	3	
109	3	
110	4	
111	4	
000	5	
EX01	6	
120B	7	
121	20	
122	8	
123	20	
124	9	
125	10	
126	11	
127	8	
128	8	
129	8	
130A	12	
130B	12	
130C	13	
130D	13	
130E	7	
130F		
130G		
130H	7	
130J	13	
130K	14	
131	15	
132	15	
134	8	
135	8	
136	8	
137	8	
138	16	
139	17	
C101A	1	
C101B	1	
C101C	18	
C101D	19	60

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 81 00

GLAZING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| AAMA 800 | (2016) Voluntary Specifications and Test Methods for Sealants |
| AAMA GDSG-1 | (1987) Glass Design for Sloped Glazing |
| AAMA TIR A7 | (2011) Sloped Glazing Guidelines |

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

- | | |
|------------|---|
| ANSI Z97.1 | (2015) Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test |
|------------|---|

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

- | | |
|------------|--|
| ASTM C509 | (2006; R 2015) Elastomeric Cellular Preformed Gasket and Sealing Material |
| ASTM C864 | (2005; R 2015) Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers |
| ASTM C920 | (2018) Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants |
| ASTM C1021 | (2008; R 2014) Standard Practice for Laboratories Engaged in Testing of Building Sealants |
| ASTM C1036 | (2016) Standard Specification for Flat Glass |
| ASTM C1048 | (2018) Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass |
| ASTM C1087 | (2016) Standard Test Method for Determining Compatibility of Liquid-Applied Sealants with Accessories Used in Structural Glazing Systems |
| ASTM C1184 | (2014) Standard Specification for Structural Silicone Sealants |

ASTM C1281	(2016) Standard Specification for Preformed Tape Sealants for Glazing Applications
ASTM D395	(2016; E 2017) Standard Test Methods for Rubber Property - Compression Set
ASTM D2287	(2012) Nonrigid Vinyl Chloride Polymer and Copolymer Molding and Extrusion Compounds
ASTM E1300	(2016) Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings

GLASS ASSOCIATION OF NORTH AMERICA (GANA)

GANA Glazing Manual	(2008) Glazing Manual
GANA Sealant Manual	(2008) Sealant Manual
GANA Standards Manual	(2008) Engineering Standards Manual

INSULATING GLASS MANUFACTURERS ALLIANCE (IGMA)

IGMA TB-3001	(2001) Guidelines for Sloped Glazing
IGMA TM-3000	(1990; R 2016) North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial & Residential Use

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

16 CFR 1201	Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials
-------------	--

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals with an "S" are for inclusion in the Sustainability eNotebook, in conformance with Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REPORTING. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Installation; G

Drawings showing complete details of proposed setting methods, mullion details, edge blocking, size of openings, frame details, materials, and types and thickness of glass.

SD-03 Product Data

Tempered Glass

Glazing Accessories

Manufacturer's descriptive product data, handling and storage

recommendations, installation instructions, and cleaning instructions.

Sealants

Joint Backer

SD-04 Samples

Tempered Glass

Glazing Compound

Glazing Tape

Sealing Tapes

SD-07 Certificates

Tempered Glass

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Setting and Sealing Materials

Glass Setting

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Fabricate and install watertight and airtight glazing systems to withstand thermal movement and wind loading without glass breakage, gasket failure, deterioration of [glazing accessories](#), or defects in the work. Glazed panels must comply with the safety standards, in accordance with [ANSI Z97.1](#), and comply with indicated wind/snow loading in accordance with [ASTM E1300](#). Sloped glazing must comply with [AAMA GDSG-1](#) and [AAMA TIR A7](#), and [IGMA TB-3001](#).

1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

Submit two [12 by 12 inch](#) samples of each glass specified.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Deliver products to the site in unopened containers, labeled plainly with manufacturers' names and brands. Store glass and setting materials in safe, enclosed dry locations and do not unpack until needed for [installation](#). Handle and install materials in a manner that will protect them from damage.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Provide ventilation to prevent condensation of moisture on glazing work during installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GLASS

[ASTM C1036](#), unless specified otherwise. In doors and sidelights, provide

safety glazing material conforming to 16 CFR 1201.

2.1.1 Clear Glass

For interior glazing, single-glazed frameless partition system should be used with 3/8 inch thick glass.

Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality q5 (B). Provide for glazing openings not indicated or specified otherwise.

2.1.2 Tempered Glass

ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated), Type I, Class 1 (transparent), Quality q3, 1 inch thick, 90 percent light transmittance, conforming to ASTM C1048 and GANA Standards Manual. Color must be clear. Provide at all interior locations.

2.2 SETTING AND SEALING MATERIALS

Provide as specified in the GANA Glazing Manual, IGMA TM-3000, IGMA TB-3001, and manufacturer's recommendations, unless specified otherwise herein. Do not use metal sash putty, nonskinning compounds, nonresilient preformed sealers, or impregnated preformed gaskets. Materials exposed to view and unpainted must be gray or neutral color. Sealant testing must be performed by a testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021.

Submit glass manufacturer's recommendations for setting and sealing materials and for installation of each type of glazing material specified.

2.2.1 Sealants

Provide elastomeric and structural sealants.

2.2.1.1 Elastomeric Sealant

ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 12.5, Use G. Use for channel or stop glazing metal sash. Sealants must be chemically compatible with setting blocks, edge blocks, and sealing tapes. Color of sealant must be white.

2.2.1.2 Structural Sealant

ASTM C1184, Type S.

2.2.2 Joint Backer

Joint backer must have a diameter size at least 25 percent larger than joint width; type and material as recommended in writing by glass and sealant manufacturer.

2.2.3 Glazing Tapes

2.2.3.1 Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes

Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:

- a. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
- b. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
- c. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

2.2.3.2 Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes

Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:

- a. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
- b. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.2.4 Sealing Tapes

Preformed, semisolid, PVC-based material of proper size and compressibility for the particular condition, complying with ASTM D2287. Use only where glazing rabbet is designed for tape and tape is recommended by the glass or sealant manufacturer. Provide spacer shims for use with compressible tapes. Tapes must be chemically compatible with the product being set.

2.2.5 Setting Blocks and Edge Blocks

Closed-cell neoprene setting blocks must be dense extruded type conforming to ASTM C509 and ASTM D395, Method B, Shore A durometer between 70 and 90. Edge blocking must be Shore A durometer of 50 (plus or minus 5). Provide silicone setting blocks when blocks are in contact with silicone sealant. Profiles, lengths and locations must be as required and recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Block color must be black.

2.2.6 Glazing Gaskets

Glazing gaskets must be extruded with continuous integral locking projection designed to engage into metal glass holding members to provide a watertight seal during dynamic loading, building movements and thermal movements. Glazing gaskets for a single glazed opening must be continuous one-piece units with factory-fabricated injection-molded corners free of flashing and burrs. Glazing gaskets must be in lengths or units recommended by manufacturer to ensure against pull-back at corners. Provide glazing gasket profiles as recommended by the manufacturer for the intended application.

2.2.6.1 Fixed Glazing Gaskets

Fixed glazing gaskets must be closed-cell (sponge) smooth extruded compression gaskets of cured elastomeric virgin neoprene compounds conforming to ASTM C509, Type 2, Option 1.

2.2.6.2 Wedge Glazing Gaskets

Wedge glazing gaskets must be high-quality extrusions of cured elastomeric virgin neoprene compounds, ozone resistant, conforming to ASTM C864,

Option 1, Shore A durometer between 65 and 75.

2.2.6.3 Aluminum Framing Glazing Gaskets

Glazing gaskets for aluminum framing must be permanent, elastic, non-shrinking, non-migrating, watertight and weathertight.

2.2.7 Accessories

Provide as required for a complete installation, including glazing points, clips, shims, angles, beads, and spacer strips. Provide noncorroding metal accessories. Provide primer-sealers and cleaners as recommended by the glass and sealant manufacturers. Use [ASTM C1087](#) to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to surface.

2.3 APPROVED MANUFACTURERS

- a. Vitro Architectural Glass
- b. TriStar Glass
- c. AGC Glass
- d. nvision Glass

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Preparation, unless otherwise specified or approved, must conform to applicable recommendations in the [GANA Glazing Manual](#), [GANA Sealant Manual](#), [IGMA TB-3001](#), [IGMA TM-3000](#), and manufacturer's recommendations. Determine the sizes to provide the required edge clearances by measuring the actual opening to receive the glass. Grind smooth in the shop glass edges that will be exposed in finish work. Leave labels in place until the installation is approved, except remove applied labels on heat-absorbing glass and on insulating glass units as soon as glass is installed. Securely fix movable items or keep in a closed and locked position until [glazing compound](#) has thoroughly set.

3.2 GLASS SETTING

Shop glaze or field glaze items to be glazed using glass of the quality and thickness specified or indicated. Glazing, unless otherwise specified or approved, must conform to applicable recommendations in the [GANA Glazing Manual](#), [GANA Sealant Manual](#), [IGMA TB-3001](#), [IGMA TM-3000](#), and manufacturer's recommendations. Aluminum windows may be glazed in conformance with one of the glazing methods described in the standards under which they are produced, except that face puttying with no bedding will not be permitted. Handle and install glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Use beads or stops which are furnished with items to be glazed to secure the glass in place. Verify products are properly installed, connected, and adjusted.

3.2.1 Sheet Glass

Cut and set with the visible lines or waves horizontal.

3.3 CLEANING

Clean glass surfaces and remove labels, paint spots, putty, and other

defacement as required to prevent staining. Glass must be clean at the time the work is accepted.

3.4 PROTECTION

Protect glass work immediately after installation. Identify glazed openings with suitable warning tapes, cloth or paper flags, attached with non-staining adhesives. Protect reflective glass with a protective material to eliminate any contamination of the reflective coating. Place protective material far enough away from the coated glass to allow air to circulate to reduce heat buildup and moisture accumulation on the glass. Upon removal, separate protective materials for reuse or recycling. Remove and replace glass units which are broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or otherwise damaged during construction activities with new units.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 91 00

METAL WALL LOUVERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION INTERNATIONAL, INC. (AMCA)

AMCA 500-L (2015) Laboratory Methods of Testing
Louvers for Rating

AMCA 511 (2010) Certified Ratings Program for Air
Control Devices

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA DAF45 (2003; Reaffirmed 2009) Designation System
for Aluminum Finishes

AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA)

AAMA 611 (2014) Voluntary Specification for
Anodized Architectural Aluminum

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B221 (2014) Standard Specification for Aluminum
and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods,
Wire, Profiles, and Tubes

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" designation; submittals not having a "G" designation are for information only. When used, a designation following the "G" designation identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Wall louvers

SD-03 Product Data

Metal Wall Louvers

SD-04 Samples

Wall louvers; G

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

Deliver materials to the site in an undamaged condition. Carefully store materials off the ground to provide proper ventilation, drainage, and protection against dampness. Louvers shall be free from nicks, scratches, and blemishes. Replace defective or damaged materials with new.

1.4 DETAIL DRAWINGS

Show all information necessary for fabrication and installation of [wall louvers](#). Indicate materials, sizes, thicknesses, fastenings, and profiles.

1.5 COLOR SAMPLES

Colors of finishes for [wall louvers](#) shall closely approximate colors indicated. Where color is not indicated, submit the manufacturer's standard colors to the Contracting Officer for selection.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Extruded Aluminum

[ASTM B221](#), alloy 6063-T5 or -T52.

2.2 METAL WALL LOUVERS

Weather and wind driven rain resistant type, with bird screens and made to withstand a wind load of not less than [30 pounds per square foot](#). Wall louvers must bear the AMCA certified ratings program seal for air performance and water penetration in accordance with [AMCA 500-L](#) and [AMCA 511](#). The rating must show a water penetration of [0.20 or less ounce per square foot](#) of free area at a free velocity of [800 feet](#) per minute.

2.2.1 Performance Requirements

- a. Maximum Face Velocity: 500 ft/min.
- b. Maximum Pressure Drop: 0.05 inches W.C.
- c. Free Area: Not less than 47 percent.

2.2.2 Extruded Aluminum Louvers

Fabricated of extruded 6063-T5 or -T52 aluminum with a wall thickness of not less than [0.081 inch](#).

2.2.3 Mullions and Mullion Covers

Same material and finish as louvers. Provide mullions for all louvers more than [5 feet](#) in width at not more than [5 feet](#) on centers. Provide mullions covers on both faces of joints between louvers.

2.2.4 Screens and Frames

Provide 1/2-inch square mesh, 14 gage or 16 gage aluminum or 1/4-inch square mesh, 16 gage aluminum insect screening. Mount screens in removable, rewirable frames of same material and finish as the louvers.

Provide single sheet 1-inch insulated blankoff panel as provided by manufacturer.

Provide horizontal and vertical security bar assembly. Refer to Section 08 34 01 Forced Entry Resistant Components.

2.3 FASTENERS AND ACCESSORIES

Provide stainless steel screws and fasteners for aluminum louvers. Provide other accessories as required for complete and proper installation.

2.4 FINISHES

2.4.1 Aluminum

Exposed aluminum surfaces shall be factory finished with an anodic coating. Color shall be as indicated. Louvers shall have the same finish.

2.4.1.1 Anodic Coating

Clean exposed aluminum surfaces and provide an anodized finish conforming to AA DAF45 and AAMA 611. Finish shall be:

- a. Architectural Class I (0.7 mil or thicker), designation AA-M10-C22-A44, electrolytically deposited color as indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Wall Louvers

Install using stops or moldings, flanges, strap anchors, or jamb fasteners as appropriate for the wall construction and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.2 PROTECTION FROM CONTACT OF DISSIMILAR MATERIALS

3.2.1 Aluminum

Where aluminum contacts metal other than zinc, paint the dissimilar metal with a primer and two coats of aluminum paint.

-- End of Section --

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK